

UL 60065

ISBN 0-7629-0849-1

Audio, Video and Similar Electronic Apparatus – Safety Requirements

*UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL*

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL)
333 Pfingsten Road
Northbrook, IL 60062-2096

UL Standard for Safety for Audio, Video and Similar Electronic Apparatus – Safety Requirements, UL 60065

Seventh Edition, Dated June 30, 2003

Revisions: This Standard contains revisions through and including March 20, 2006.

Summary of Topics

These editorial revisions to ANSI/UL 60065 replace all references to UL 1020, the Standard for Thermal Cutoffs for Use in Electrical Appliances and Components, with reference to UL 60691, the Standard for Thermal-Links – Requirements and Application Guide. UL 1020 was withdrawn and superseded by UL 60691.

UL Standards for Safety are developed and maintained in the Standard Generalized Markup Language (SGML). SGML -- an international standard (ISO 8879-1986) -- is a descriptive markup language that describes a document's structure and purpose, rather than its physical appearance on a page. Due to formatting differences resulting from the use of UL's new electronic publishing system, please note that additional pages (on which no requirements have been changed) may be included in revision pages due to relocation of existing text and reformatting of the Standard.

Text that has been changed in any manner is marked with a vertical line in the margin. Changes in requirements are marked with a vertical line in the margin and are followed by an effective date note indicating the date of publication or the date on which the changed requirement becomes effective.

The following table lists the future effective dates with the corresponding item

Future Effective Date	References
May 18, 2007	14.10.1, 14.10.6, Table 21

The revisions dated March 20, 2006 include a reprinted title page (page1) for this Standard.

The revisions dated March 20, 2006 editorially replace all references to UL 1020 with the reference to UL 60691.

As indicated on the title page (page 1), this UL Standard for Safety is an American National Standard. Attention is directed to the note on the title page of this Standard outlining the procedures to be followed to retain the approved text of this ANSI/UL Standard.

The UL Foreword is no longer located within the UL Standard. For information concerning the use and application of the requirements contained in this Standard, the current version of the UL Foreword is located on ULStandardsInfoNet at: <http://ulstandardsinfonet.ul.com/ulforeword.html>

The master for this Standard at UL's Northbrook Office is the official document insofar as it relates to a UL service and the compliance of a product with respect to the requirements for that product and service, or if there are questions regarding the accuracy of this Standard.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

UL's Standards for Safety are copyrighted by UL. Neither a printed copy of a Standard, nor the distribution diskette for a Standard-on-Diskette and the file for the Standard on the distribution diskette should be altered in any way. All of UL's Standards and all copyrights, ownerships, and rights regarding those Standards shall remain the sole and exclusive property of UL.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form by any means, electronic, mechanical photocopying, recording, or otherwise without prior permission of UL.

Revisions of UL Standards for Safety are issued from time to time. A UL Standard for Safety is current only if it incorporates the most recently adopted revisions.

UL provides this Standard "as is" without warranty of any kind, either expressed or implied, including but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for any purpose.

In no event will UL be liable for any special, incidental, consequential, indirect or similar damages, including loss of profits, lost savings, loss of data, or any other damages arising out of the use of or the inability to use this Standard, even if UL or an authorized UL representative has been advised of the possibility of such damage. In no event shall UL's liability for any damage ever exceed the price paid for this Standard, regardless of the form of the claim.

UL will attempt to answer support requests concerning electronic versions of its Standards. However, this support service is offered on a reasonable efforts basis only, and UL may not be able to resolve every support request. UL supports the electronic versions of its Standards only if they are used under the conditions and operating systems for which it is intended. UL's support policies may change from time-to-time without notification.

UL reserves the right to change the format, presentation, file types and formats, delivery methods and formats, and the like of both its printed and electronic Standards without prior notice.

Purchasers of the electronic versions of UL's Standards for Safety agree to defend, indemnify, and hold UL harmless from and against any loss, expense, liability, damage, claim, or judgement (including reasonable attorney's fees) resulting from any error or deviation introduced while purchaser is storing an electronic Standard on the purchaser's computer system.

If a single-user version electronic Standard was purchased, one copy of this Standard may be stored on the hard disk of a single personal computer, or on a single LAN file-server or the permanent storage device of a multiple-user computer in such a manner that this Standard may only be accessed by one user at a time and for which there is no possibility of multiple concurrent access.

If a multiple-user version electronic Standard was purchased, one copy of the Standard may be stored on a single LAN file-server, or on the permanent storage device of a multiple-user computer, or on an Intranet server. The number of concurrent users shall not exceed the number of users authorized.

Electronic Standards are intended for on-line use, such as for viewing the requirements of a Standard, conducting a word search, and the like. Only one copy of the Standard may be printed from each single-user version of an electronic Standard. Only one copy of the Standard may be printed for each authorized user of a multiple-user version of an electronic Standard. Because of differences in the computer/software/printer setup used by UL and those of electronic Standards purchasers, the printed copy obtained by a purchaser may not look exactly like the on-line screen view or the printed Standard.

An employee of an organization purchasing a UL Standard can make a copy of the page or pages being viewed for their own fair and/or practical internal use.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

The requirements in this Standard are now in effect, except for those paragraphs, sections, tables, figures, and/or other elements of the Standard having future effective dates as indicated in the note following the affected item. The prior text for requirements that have been revised and that have a future effective date are located after the Standard, and are preceded by a "SUPERSEDED REQUIREMENTS" notice.

New product submittals made prior to a specified future effective date will be judged under all of the requirements in this Standard including those requirements with a specified future effective date, unless the applicant specifically requests that the product be judged under the current requirements. However, if the applicant elects this option, it should be noted that compliance with all the requirements in this Standard will be required as a condition of continued Listing, Recognition, and Follow-Up Services after the effective date, and understanding of this should be signified in writing.

Copyright © 2006 Underwriters Laboratories Inc.

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

This Standard consists of pages dated as shown in the following checklist:

Page	Date
1	March 20, 2006
2-3	January 24, 2006
4	November 18, 2005
5	January 24, 2006
6-6B	November 18, 2005
7	June 30, 2003
8-9	April 16, 2004
10-11	November 18, 2005
12-15	June 30, 2003
16	November 18, 2005
17-18	March 20, 2006
19-20	November 18, 2005
21-22B	March 20, 2006
23-24B	November 18, 2005
25-27	June 30, 2003
28	November 18, 2005
29-31	June 30, 2003
32-32B	November 18, 2005
33-35	June 30, 2003
36-36B	November 18, 2005
37-38	June 30, 2003
39-42	November 18, 2005
42A	January 24, 2006
42B	November 18, 2005
43	June 30, 2003
44-44B	January 24, 2006
45-46	June 30, 2003
47-48B	November 18, 2005
49-52	June 30, 2003
53	January 24, 2006
54	November 18, 2005
55-56	January 24, 2006
56A-56B	November 18, 2005
57-58	June 30, 2003
59	November 18, 2005
60	June 30, 2003
61	November 18, 2005
62-64	June 30, 2003
65-68B	November 18, 2005
69-81	June 30, 2003
82	November 18, 2005
83-84	June 30, 2003
85-88B	November 18, 2005
89-93	June 30, 2003
94-97	November 18, 2005
98-99	June 30, 2003
100-100B	November 18, 2005
101	June 30, 2003
102	November 18, 2005

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

103-107 June 30, 2003
 108 November 18, 2005
 109 April 16, 2004
 110 November 18, 2005
 111-112 June 30, 2003
 113-114B March 20, 2006
 115 June 30, 2003
 116-118 November 18, 2005
 119-121 June 30, 2003
 122-128B November 18, 2005
 129-132 June 30, 2003
 133 November 18, 2005
 134-136 June 30, 2003
 137 November 18, 2005
 138-140 June 30, 2003
 141-142 November 18, 2005
 143 June 30, 2003
 144-148B November 18, 2005
 149 June 30, 2003
 150-151 November 18, 2005
 152-163 June 30, 2003
 164-170 November 18, 2005
 171 January 24, 2006
 172 November 18, 2005
 173-174B January 24, 2006
 175 November 18, 2005
 176 January 24, 2006
 176A-176B November 18, 2005
 177-178 June 30, 2003
 179 November 18, 2005
 180-201 June 30, 2003
 202 January 24, 2006
 203 June 30, 2003
 204-204F November 18, 2005
 205-210 June 30, 2003
 211-212 November 18, 2005
 213-215 June 30, 2003
 216 November 18, 2005
 217-227 June 30, 2003
 228 January 24, 2006
 229 March 20, 2006
 230-245 June 30, 2003
 246 April 16, 2004
 247-248 November 18, 2005
 249 June 30, 2003
 250-259 November 18, 2005
 260 June 30, 2003
 261-262 November 18, 2005
 263 June 30, 2003
 264 November 18, 2005
 265 June 30, 2003
 266-268 November 18, 2005
 269-270 June 30, 2003

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
 NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
 DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

271-272 November 18, 2005
SR1-SR2 November 18, 2005

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

JUNE 30, 2003
(Title Page Reprinted: March 20, 2006)



ANSI/UL 60065-2006

1

UL 60065

**Standard for Audio, Video and Similar Electronic Apparatus – Safety
Requirements**

Prior to this seventh edition, the requirements for the products covered by this standard were included in the Standard for Audio/Video and Musical Instrument Apparatus for Household, Commercial, and Similar General Use, UL 6500, First and Second Editions. This Standard UL 60065 is a new edition of UL 6500. The standard number and edition number have been changed to correspond with the equivalent IEC 60065 standard. No first through sixth editions of UL 60065 will be published.

Seventh Edition

June 30, 2003

The most recent designation of ANSI/UL 60065 as an American National Standard (ANSI) occurred on January 24, 2006.

This ANSI/UL Standard for Safety, which consists of the Seventh Edition with revisions through March 20, 2006, is under continuous maintenance, whereby each revision is ANSI approved upon publication. Comments or proposals for revisions on any part of the Standard may be submitted to UL at any time. Proposals should be submitted via a Proposal Request in UL's On-Line Collaborative Standards Development System (CSDS) at <http://csds.ul.com>.

An effective date included as a note immediately following certain requirements is one established by Underwriters Laboratories Inc.

Revisions of this Standard will be made by issuing revised or additional pages bearing their date of issue. A UL Standard is current only if it incorporates the most recently adopted revisions, all of which are itemized on the transmittal notice that accompanies the latest set of revised requirements.

ISBN 0-7629-0849-1

COPYRIGHT © 2003, 2006 UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES INC.

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

No Text on This Page

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

CONTENTS

UL PREFACE7

NATIONAL DIFFERENCES9

FOREWORD10

INTRODUCTION12

1 General15

 1.1 Scope15

 1.2 Normative references17

2 Definitions22

 2.1 Definitions in alphabetical order22

 2.2 Types of apparatus24

 2.3 Ratings and electrical values25

 2.4 Supply and external connections26

 2.5 Signals, sources, loads29

 2.6 Protection against electric shock, insulations29

 2.7 Components31

 2.8 Miscellaneous32

3 General requirements34

4 General test conditions34

 4.1 Conduct of tests34

 4.2 Normal operating conditions36

 4.3 Fault conditions39

5 Marking and instructions42

 5.1 Identification and supply ratings42A

 5.2 TERMINALS44A

 5.4 Instructions46

6 Hazardous radiations48A

 6.1 Ionizing radiation48A

 6.2 Laser radiation50

7 Heating under normal operating conditions52

 7.1 General52

 7.2 Heat resistance of insulating material56

8 Constructional requirements with regard to the protection against electric shock56

 8.17 Requirements for insulated winding wires for use without interleaved insulation62

 8.18 Endurance test for wound components with insulated winding wires without additional interleaved insulation63

 8.19 Disconnection from the MAINS65

 8.22 Test specifications of non-separable thin sheet material65

9 Electric shock hazard under normal operating conditions66

 9.1 Testing on the outside66

 9.2 Removal of protective covers70

10 Insulation requirements70

 10.1 Surge test70

 10.2 Humidity treatment71

 10.3 Insulation resistance and dielectric strength72

11 Fault conditions74

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

11.1	Electric shock hazard	74
11.2	Heating	75
12	Mechanical strength	78
12.1	Complete apparatus	78
12.2	Fixing of actuating elements	83
12.3	REMOTE CONTROL devices held in hand	83
12.4	Drawers	84
12.5	Antenna coaxial sockets mounted on the apparatus	84
12.6	Telescoping or rod antennas	85
12.7	<u>Wall or ceiling mounting means</u>	85
12.8	<u>Adhesives</u>	86
13	CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES	86
13.1	General	86
13.2	Determination of OPERATING VOLTAGE	87
13.3	CLEARANCES	88
13.4	CREEPAGE DISTANCES	94
13.5	PRINTED BOARDS	96
13.6	Jointed insulation	97
13.7	Enclosed and sealed parts	98
14	Components	99
14.1	Resistors	100
14.2	Capacitors and RC-units	101
14.3	Inductors and windings	103
14.4	High voltage components and assemblies	108
14.5	Protective devices	111
14.6	Switches	116
14.7	SAFETY INTERLOCKS	121
14.8	Voltage setting devices and the like	121
14.9	Motors	121
14.10	Batteries	122
14.11	Optocouplers	124
14.12	Surge suppression varistors	124
15	TERMINALS	125
15.1	Plugs and sockets	125
15.2	Provisions for protective earthing	128
15.3	TERMINALS for external flexible cords and for permanent connection to the MAINS supply	128A
15.4	Devices forming a part of the MAINS plug	131
16	External flexible cords	133
17	Electrical connections and mechanical fixings	138
18	Mechanical strength of picture tubes and protection against the effects of implosion	141
18.1	General	141
18.2	Intrinsically protected picture tubes, including those having integral protective screens	142
18.3	Non-intrinsically protected picture tubes	144
19	Stability and mechanical hazards	144
19.5.1	Fragmentation test	147
19.6	Wall or ceiling <u>or equipment rack</u> mounting means	147
20	Resistance to fire	147
20.1	Electrical components and mechanical parts	148
20.2	FIRE ENCLOSURE	151
	Figures	153

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Annex A (normative) Additional requirements for apparatus with ~~protection against splashing water for outdoor use and wet locations~~

A.5 ~~Marking and instructions~~¹⁾174A
 A.9.1.1.1 General175
 A.10 Insulation requirements175

Annex B DU(normative) Apparatus to be connected to the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS

Annex C (normative) Band-pass filter for wide-band noise measurement(Extract from IEC 60268-1)

Annex D DR(normative) Measuring network for TOUCH CURRENTS

Annex E (normative) Measurement of CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES

Annex F (normative) Table of electrochemical potentials

Annex G DU (normative) Flammability test methods

Annex H (normative) Insulated winding wires for use without interleaved insulation(see 8.17)

H.2 Type tests193
 H.3 Testing during manufacture195

Annex J (normative) Alternative method for determining minimum CLEARANCES

J.1 Summary of the procedure for determining minimum CLEARANCES196
 J.2 Determination of MAINS transient voltage197
 J.3 Determination of TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK TRANSIENT VOLTAGE197
 J.4 Determination of REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE198
 J.5 Measurement of transient levels199
 J.6 Determination of minimum CLEARANCES200

Annex K (normative) Impulse test generators(see 13.3.4 and annex J, J.5)

Annex L DU (normative) Additional requirements for electronic flash apparatus for photographic purposes

L.1 General¹⁾204
 L.4 General test conditions204A
 L.5 Markings and instructions204A
 L.7 Heating under normal operating conditions204B
 L.9 Electric shock hazard under normal operating conditions204B

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
 NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
 DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

L.10 Insulation requirements204B
L.11 Fault conditions204B
L.12 Mechanical strength204B
L.14 Components204C
L.20 Resistance to fire204D

Annex M (informative) Examples of requirements for quality control programmes

M.1 Reduced CLEARANCES(see 13.3)204E
--	-------

Annex N (informative) ROUTINE TESTS

N.1 Tests during the production process206
N.2 Tests at the end of the production process208

Annex P (informative) Bibliography

Annex Q DU (normative) Safety requirements for video apparatus for use in health care facilities

Annex R DU (normative) Safety requirements for undercabinet apparatus

Annex S DU (normative) Safety requirements for in-wall mounted apparatus

Annex T DU (normative) Safety requirements for apparatus with projection lamps

Annex U DU (normative) Safety requirements for permanently connected apparatus

Annex V DU (normative) Safety requirements for carts, stands, and similar apparatus for use with specific apparatus covered by this standard

V.19 Mechanical stability237
---------------------------------	------

Annex W DU (informative) A 0.02-ohm shunt for use in the peak inrush-current measurement described in 14.6.6.1

Annex X DU (normative) Manufacturing and production-line tests and verifications

Annex Y DC (normative) Standards for components

Annex Z DE(informative) Index

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

No Text on This Page

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

UL PREFACE

This UL Standard is based on IEC Publication 60065: Seventh Edition, Audio, video and similar electronic apparatus – Safety requirements. IEC publication 60065 is copyrighted by the IEC.

The text, figures and tables of IEC Publication Audio, video and similar electronic apparatus – Safety requirements, 60065, copyright 2001, are used in this Standard with the consent of the IEC and the American National Standards Institute (ANSI). The IEC copyrighted material has been reproduced with permission from ANSI. ANSI should be contacted regarding the reproduction of any portion of the IEC material. The IEC Foreword and Introduction are not a part of the requirements of this Standard but are included for information purposes only. Copies of IEC Publication 60065 may be purchased from ANSI, 11 West 42nd Street, New York, New York, 10036, (212) 642-4900.

Note – Although the intended primary application of this Standard is stated in its Scope, it is important to note that it remains the responsibility of the users of the Standard to judge its suitability for their particular purpose.

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

This page intentionally left blank.

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

NATIONAL DIFFERENCES

GENERAL

National Differences from the text of International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) Publication IEC 60065, Audio, video and similar electronic apparatus – Safety requirements, copyright 2001, are indicated by notations next to the clause, sub-clause, Table, Figure or Annex number.

There are four types of National Differences in this Standard as noted below.

DU – These are National Differences which are either (1) based on **basic safety principles and requirements**, elimination of which would compromise safety for U.S. consumers and users of products, or (2) based on **safety practices**, where the IEC requirements may be acceptable, but adopting the IEC requirements would require considerable retesting or redesign on the manufacturer's part.

DC – These are National Differences based on the **component standards** and will not be deleted until a particular component standard is harmonized with the IEC component standard.

DE – These are National Differences based on **editorial comments or corrections**.

DR – These are National Differences based on the **national regulatory requirements**.

National Differences have been incorporated into the body of the standard. If National Differences necessitate the deletion of the IEC 60065 text, the IEC 60065 text has been retained but has been ~~lined-out~~. Text added as a result of National Differences has been underlined. Text added as the UL Preface and UL Foreword is not underlined.

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

INTERNATIONAL ELECTROTECHNICAL COMMISSION

AUDIO, VIDEO AND SIMILAR ELECTRONIC APPARATUS – SAFETY REQUIREMENTS

FOREWORD

- 1) The IEC (International Electrotechnical Commission) is a worldwide organization for standardization comprising all national electrotechnical committees (IEC National Committees). The object of the IEC is to promote international co-operation on all questions concerning standardization in the electrical and electronic fields. To this end and in addition to other activities, the IEC publishes International Standards. Their preparation is entrusted to technical committees; any IEC National Committee interested in the subject dealt with may participate in this preparatory work. International, governmental and non-governmental organizations liaising with the IEC also participate in this preparation. The IEC collaborates closely with the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) in accordance with conditions determined by agreement between the two organizations.
- 2) The formal decisions or agreements of the IEC on technical matters express, as nearly as possible, an international consensus of opinion on the relevant subjects since each technical committee has representation from all interested National Committees.
- 3) The documents produced have the form of recommendations for international use and are published in the form of standards, technical specifications, technical reports or guides and they are accepted by the National Committees in that sense.
- 4) In order to promote international unification, IEC National Committees undertake to apply IEC International Standards transparently to the maximum extent possible in their national and regional standards. Any divergence between the IEC Standard and the corresponding national or regional standard shall be clearly indicated in the latter.
- 5) The IEC provides no marking procedure to indicate its approval and cannot be rendered responsible for any equipment declared to be in conformity with one of its standards.
- 6) Attention is drawn to the possibility that some of the elements of this International Standard may be the subject of patent rights. The IEC shall not be held responsible for identifying any or all such patent rights.

International Standard IEC 60065 has been prepared by IEC technical committee 92: Safety of audio, video and similar electronic equipment.

This seventh edition cancels and replaces the sixth edition published in 1998. This edition constitutes a technical revision.

It has the status of a group safety publication in accordance with IEC Guide 104.

The text of this standard is based on the following documents:

FDIS	Report on voting
92/85/FDIS	92/89/RVD

Amendment 1 has been prepared by IEC technical committee 108: Safety of electronic equipment within the field of audio/video, information technology and communication technology.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

The text of Amendment 1 is based on the following documents:

FDIS	Report on voting
108/136/FDIS	108/148A/RVD

Full information on the voting for the approval of this standard and amendment can be found in the report of voting indicated in the above tables.

This publication has been drafted in accordance with the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 3.

In this standard, the following print types are used:

- requirements proper: roman type
- *test specifications: italic type*
- NOTES: smaller roman type

For terms defined in clause 2, SMALL CAPITALS are used.

DE Annexes A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, J, and K, Q, R, S, T, U, V, X and Y form an integral part of this standard.

DE Annexes M, and N, P, W and Z are for information only.

The committee has decided that the contents of this amendment and the base publication will remain unchanged until the maintenance result date indicated on the IEC web site under "<http://webstore.iec.ch>" in the data related to the specific publication. At this date, the publication will be

- reconfirmed;
- withdrawn;
- replaced by a revised edition, or
- amended.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

INTRODUCTION

Principles of safety

General

This introduction is intended to provide an appreciation of the principles on which the requirements of this standard are based. Such an understanding is essential in order that safe apparatus can be designed and manufactured.

The requirements of this standard are intended to provide protection to persons as well as to the surroundings of the apparatus.

Attention is drawn to the principle that the requirements, which are standardized, are the minimum considered necessary to establish a satisfactory level of safety.

Further development in techniques and technologies may entail the need for future modification of this standard.

NOTE The expression "protection to the surroundings of the apparatus" implies that this protection should also include protection of the natural environment in which the apparatus is intended to be used, taking into account the life cycle of the apparatus, i.e. manufacturing, use, maintenance, disposal and possible end-of-life recycling of parts of the apparatus.

Hazards

The application of this standard is intended to prevent injury or damage due to the following hazards:

- electric shock;
- excessive temperatures;
- radiation;
- implosion;
- mechanical hazards;
- fire.

Electric shock

Electric shock is due to current passing through the human body. Currents of the order of a milliampere can cause a reaction in persons in good health and may cause secondary risks due to involuntary reaction. Higher currents can have more damaging effects. Voltages below certain limits are generally regarded as not dangerous under specified conditions. In order to provide protection against the possibility of higher voltages appearing on parts which may be touched or handled, such parts are either earthed or adequately insulated.

For parts which can be touched, two levels of protection are normally provided to prevent electric shock caused by a fault. Thus a single fault and any consequential faults will not create a hazard. The provision of additional protective measures, such as supplementary insulation or protective earthing, is not

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

considered a substitute for, or a relief from, properly designed basic insulation.

Cause

Contact with parts normally at hazardous voltage

Breakdown of insulation between parts normally at hazardous voltage and accessible parts.

Breakdown of insulation between parts normally at hazardous voltage and circuits normally at non-hazardous voltages, thereby putting accessible parts and terminals at hazardous voltage.

Touch current from parts at hazardous voltage through the human body. (Touch current can include current due to RFI filter components connected between mains supply circuits and accessible parts or terminals.)

Prevention

Prevent access to parts at hazardous voltage by fixed or locked covers, interlocks, etc. Discharge capacitors at hazardous voltages.

Either use double or reinforced insulation between parts normally at hazardous voltages and accessible parts so that breakdown is not likely to occur, or connect accessible conductive parts to protective earth so that the voltage which can develop is limited to a safe value. The insulations shall have adequate mechanical and electrical strength.

Segregate hazardous and non-hazardous voltage circuits either by double or reinforced insulation so that breakdown is not likely to occur, or by a protective earthed screen, or connect the circuit normally at non-hazardous voltage to protective earth, so that the voltage which can develop is limited to a safe value.

Limit touch current to a safe value or provide a protective earthing connection to the accessible parts.

Excessive temperatures

Requirements are included to prevent injury due to excessive temperatures of accessible parts, to prevent damaging of insulation due to excessive internal temperatures, and to prevent mechanical instability due to excessive temperatures developed inside the apparatus.

Radiation

Requirements are included to prevent injury due to excessive energy levels of ionizing and laser radiation, for example by limiting the radiation to non-hazardous values.

Implosion

Requirements are included to prevent injury due to implosion of picture tubes.

Mechanical hazards

Requirements are included to ensure that the apparatus and its parts have adequate mechanical strength and stability, to avoid the presence of sharp edges and to provide guarding or interlocking of dangerous moving parts.

Fire

A fire can result from:

- overloads;
- component failure;

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

- insulation breakdown;
- bad connections;
- arcing.

Requirements are included to prevent any fire which originates within the apparatus from spreading beyond the immediate vicinity of the source of the fire or from causing damage to the surroundings of the apparatus.

The following preventive measures are recommended:

- the use of suitable components and sub-assemblies;
- the avoidance of excessive temperatures which might cause ignition under normal or fault conditions;
- the use of measures to eliminate potential ignition sources such as inadequate contacts, bad connections, interruptions;
- the limitation of the quantity of combustible material used;
- the control of the position of combustible materials in relation to potential ignition sources;
- the use of materials with high resistance to fire in the vicinity of potential ignition sources;
- the use of encapsulation or barriers to limit the spread of fire within the apparatus;
- the use of suitable fire retardant materials for the enclosure.

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

AUDIO, VIDEO AND SIMILAR ELECTRONIC APPARATUS – SAFETY REQUIREMENTS

1 General

1.1 Scope

1.1.1 DU This International Safety Standard applies to electronic apparatus designed to be fed from the MAINS, from a SUPPLY APPARATUS, from batteries or from REMOTE POWER FEEDING and intended for reception, generation, recording or reproduction respectively of audio, video and associated signals. It also applies to apparatus designed to be used exclusively in combination with the above-mentioned apparatus.

This standard primarily concerns apparatus intended for household and similar general use. ~~but It also covers COMMERCIAL APPARATUS and PROFESSIONAL APPARATUS~~ which may also be used in places of public assembly such as schools, theatres, places of worship and the workplace. ~~PROFESSIONAL APPARATUS intended for use as described above is also covered unless falling specifically within the scope of other standards may be evaluated to requirements in this standard, or to the requirements in UL 1419.~~

This standard concerns only safety aspects of the above apparatus; it does not concern other matters, such as style or performance.

This standard applies to the above-mentioned apparatus, if designed to be connected to the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK or similar network, for example by means of an integrated modem.

Some examples of apparatus within the scope of this standard are:

- receiving apparatus and amplifiers for sound and/or vision;
- independent LOAD TRANSDUCERS and SOURCE TRANSDUCERS;
- SUPPLY APPARATUS intended to supply other apparatus covered by the scope of this standard;
- ELECTRONIC MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS, and electronic accessories such as rhythm generators, tone generators, music tuners and the like for use with electronic or non-electronic musical instruments;
- audio and/or video educational apparatus;
- video projectors;

NOTE 1 Film projectors, slide projectors, overhead projectors are covered by IEC 60335-2-56 [5]¹⁾ UL 122

- video cameras and video monitors;
- household video games and flipper games;

¹ Figures in square brackets refer to the bibliography.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

NOTE 2 Video and flipper games for commercial use are covered by ~~IEC 60335-2-82 [6]~~ UL 22

- juke boxes;
- household electronic gaming and scoring machines;

NOTE 3 Electronic gaming and scoring machines for commercial use are covered by ~~IEC 60335-2-82 [6]~~ UL 22

- teletext equipment;
- record and optical disc players;
- tape and optical disc recorders;
- antenna signal converters and amplifiers;
- satellite receiver antenna positioners;

NOTE 3A UHF and VHF antenna rotators are covered by UL 150

- Citizen's Band apparatus;
- apparatus for IMAGERY;
- electronic light effect apparatus;
- apparatus for use in alarm systems;

NOTE 3B Includes cameras, stop motion recorders and the like used in alarm systems. This Standard does not cover the investigation of the actual alarm system.

- intercommunication apparatus, using low voltage MAINS as the transmission medium;
- cable head-end receivers;
- multimedia apparatus;

NOTE 4 The requirements of ~~IEC 60950~~ UL 60950 may also be used to meet the requirements for safety of multi media apparatus (see also IEC Guide 112 [16])

- professional general use amplifiers, record or disc players, tape players, recorders, and public address systems;
- professional sound/video systems.

NOTE 5 The requirements of UL 1419 may also be used to meet the requirements for safety of PROFESSIONAL APPARATUS.

- electronic flash apparatus for photographic purposes (~~see Annex L~~) are covered by UL 122

MAINS connected apparatus covered by this standard is intended for installation in compliance with the National Electrical Code, ANSI/NFPA 70.

1.1.1 revised November 18, 2005

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

1.1.2 This standard applies to apparatus with a RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE not exceeding

- 250 V a.c. single phase or d.c. supply;
- 433 V a.c. in the case of apparatus for connection to a supply other than single-phase.

1.1.3 DU This standard applies to apparatus for use at altitudes not exceeding 2 000 m above sea level, primarily in dry locations and in regions with moderate or tropical climates.

For apparatus with ~~protection against splashing water~~ intended for outdoor use, additional requirements are given in annex A.

For apparatus to be connected to TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS, additional requirements are given in annex B.

For apparatus intended to be used in vehicles, ships or aircraft, or at altitudes exceeding 2 000 m above sea level, additional requirements may be necessary.

NOTE See table A.2 of IEC 60664-1.

Requirements, additional to those specified in this standard, may be necessary for apparatus intended for special conditions of use.

1.1.4 For apparatus designed to be fed from the MAINS, this standard applies to apparatus intended to be connected to a MAINS supply with transient overvoltages not exceeding overvoltage category II according to IEC 60664-1.

For apparatus subject to transient overvoltages exceeding those for overvoltage category II, additional protection may be necessary in the MAINS supply of the apparatus.

1.1.5 DU Certain apparatus covered by the requirements in this standard are also required to comply with applicable requirements in other appropriate standards because of their intended end use applications or environmental conditions.

1.2 DC Normative references

1.2 revised March 20, 2006

The following normative documents contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of this International Standard. For dated references, subsequent amendments to, or revisions of, any of these publications do not apply. However, parties to agreements based on this International Standard are encouraged to investigate the possibility of applying the most recent editions of the normative documents indicated below. For undated references, the latest edition of the normative document referred to applies. Members of IEC and ISO maintain registers of currently valid International Standards.

ASTM D495, Standard Test for High-Voltage, Low-Current, Arc Resistance of Solid Electrical Insulating Material

IEC 60027 (all parts), *Letter symbols to be used in electrical technology*

IEC 60038:1983, *IEC standard voltages*
Amendment 1 (1994) Amendment 2 (1997)

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

- IEC 60068-2-6:1995, *Environmental testing – Part 2: Tests – Test Fc: Vibration (sinusoidal)*
- IEC 60068-2-32:1975, *Environmental testing – Part 2: Tests – Test Ed: Free fall (Procedure 2)*
- IEC 60068-2-75:1997, *Environmental testing – Part 2-75: Tests – Test Eh: Hammer tests*
- IEC 60068-2-78:2001, *Environmental testing – Part 2: Tests – Test Cab: Damp heat, steady state*
- IEC 60085:2004, *Thermal evaluation and classification of electrical insulation*
- ~~IEC 60086-4:2000, *Primary batteries – Part 4: Safety of lithium batteries*~~
- ~~IEC 60112:2003, *Method for determining the comparative and the proof tracking indices of solid insulating materials under moist conditions*~~
- IEC 60127-6 (all parts), *Miniature fuses*
- IEC 60167:1964, *Methods of test for the determination of the insulation resistance of solid insulating materials*
- IEC 60216 (all parts), *Guide for the determination of thermal endurance properties of electrical insulating materials*
- IEC 60227-2 (all parts), *Polyvinyl chloride insulated cables of rated voltages up to and including 450/750 V*
- ~~IEC 60245 (all parts), *Rubber insulated cables – Rated voltages up to and including 450/750 V*~~
- ~~IEC 60249-2 (all specifications), *Base materials for printed circuits – Part 2: Specifications*~~
- IEC 60268-1:1985, *Sound system equipment – Part 1: General*
- IEC 60317 (all parts), *Specifications for particular types of winding wires*
- IEC 60320 (all parts), *Appliance couplers for household and similar general purposes*
- IEC 60335-1:2004, *Household and similar electrical appliances – Safety – Part 1: General requirements*
- IEC 60384-1:1999, *Fixed capacitors for use in electronic equipment – Part 1: Generic specification*
- IEC 60384-14:1993, *Fixed capacitors for use in electronic equipment – Part 14: Sectional specification: Fixed capacitors for electromagnetic interference suppression and connection to the supply mains Amendment 1 (1995)*
- IEC 60417 (all parts), *Graphical symbols for use on equipment*
- IEC 60454 (all parts), *Specifications for pressure-sensitive adhesive tapes for electrical purposes*
- IEC 60529:2001, *Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP Code) Amendment 1 (1999)*

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

IEC 60664-1:1992, *Insulation coordination for equipment within low-voltage systems – Part 1: Principles, requirements and tests*

Amendment 1 (2000) Amendment 2 (2002)

IEC 60664-3:2003, *Insulation coordination for equipment within low-voltage systems – Part 3: Use of coatings to achieve insulation coordination of printed board assemblies*

IEC 60691:2002, *Thermal links – Requirements and application guide*

IEC 60695-2-2:1991, *Fire hazard testing – Part 2: Test methods – Section 2: Needle flame test*

IEC 60695-11-10:1999, *Fire hazard testing – Part 11-10: Test flames – 50 W horizontal and vertical flame test methods Amendment 1 (2003)*

IEC 60707:1999, *Flammability of solid non-metallic materials when exposed to flame sources – List of test methods*

IEC 60730 (all parts), *Automatic electrical controls for household and similar use*

IEC 60825-1:1993, *Safety of laser products – Part 1: Equipment classification, requirements and user's guide¹⁾ Amendment 1 (1997) Amendment 2 (2001)*

IEC 60851-3:1996, *Methods of test for winding wires – Part 3: Mechanical properties*
Amendment 1 (1997)

IEC 60851-5:1996, *Methods of test for winding wires – Part 5: Electrical properties*
Amendment 1 (1997) Amendment 2 (2004)

IEC 60851-6:1996, *Methods of test for winding wires – Part 6: Thermal properties*

IEC 60884 (all parts), *Plugs and socket-outlets for household and similar purposes*

IEC 60885-1:1987, *Electrical test methods for electric cables – Part 1: Electrical tests for cables, cords and wires for voltages up to and including 450/750 V*

IEC 60906 (all parts), *IEC system of plugs and socket-outlets for household and similar purposes*

IEC 60950:1999, *Safety of information technology equipment*

IEC 60990:1999, *Methods of measurements of touch current and protective conductor current*

IEC 60998-2-2:2002, *Connecting devices for low voltage circuits for household and similar purposes – Part 2-2: Particular requirements for connecting devices as separate entities with screwless-type clamping units*

IEC 60999-1:1999, *Connecting devices – Electrical copper conductors – Safety requirements for screw-type and screwless-type clamping units – Part 1: General requirements and particular requirements for clamping units for conductors from 0,2 mm² up to 35 mm² (included)*

IEC 61032:1997, *Protection of persons and equipment by enclosures – Probes for verification*

IEC 61051-2:1991, *Varistors for use in electronic equipment – Part 2: Sectional specification for surge suppression varistors*

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

- IEC 61058-1:2000, *Switches for appliances — Part 1: General requirements*
- IEC/TR2 61149:1995, *Guide for safe handling and operation of mobile radio equipment*
- IEC 61260:1995, *Electroacoustics – Octave-band and fractional-octave-band filters*
- IEC 61293:1994, *Marking of electrical equipment with ratings related to electrical supply – Safety requirements*
- IEC 61558-1:1997, *Safety of power transformers, power supply units and similar – Part 1: General requirements and tests¹⁾ Amendment 1 (1998)*
- IEC 61558-2-17:1997, *Safety of power transformers, power supply units and similar – Part 2-17: Particular requirements for transformers for switch mode power supplies*
- IEC 61965:2003, *Mechanical safety of cathode ray tubes*
- IEC 62151:2000, *Safety of equipment electrically connected to a telecommunication network*
- IEC Guide 104:1997, *The preparation of safety publications and the use of basic safety publications and group safety publications*
- ISO 261:1973, *ISO general purpose metric screw threads – General plan*
- ISO 262:1973, *ISO general-purpose metric screw threads – Selected sizes for screws, bolts and nuts*
- ISO 306:1994, *Plastics – Thermoplastic materials – Determination of Vicat softening temperature (VST)*
- ISO 7000:1989, *Graphical symbols for use on equipment – Index and synopsis*
- ITU-T Recommendation K17:1988, *Tests on power-fed repeaters using solid-state devices in order to check the arrangements for protection from external interference*
- ITU-T Recommendation K21:1996, *Resistibility of telecommunication equipment installed in customer's premises to overvoltages and overcurrents*
- UL 94 . Tests for Flammability of Plastic Materials for Parts in Devices and Appliances
- UL 101 . Leakage Current for Appliances
- UL 122 . Photographic Equipment
- UL 150 . Antenna Rotators
- UL 224 . Extruded Insulating Tubing
- UL 248-14 . Low Voltage Fuses – Part 14: Supplemental Fuses
- UL 508 . Industrial Control Equipment
- UL 510 . Polyvinyl Chloride, Polyethylene, and Rubber Insulating Tape

¹⁾ There exists a consolidated edition 1.1 (1998) that includes edition 1.0 and its amendment 1.

UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL

UL 746A , Polymeric Materials – Short Term Property Evaluations

UL 746B , Polymeric Materials – Long Term Property Evaluations

UL 746C , Polymeric Materials – Use in Electrical Equipment Evaluations

UL 746D , Polymeric Materials – Fabricated Parts

UL 796 , Printed-Wiring Boards

UL 817 , Cord Sets and Power-Supply Cords

UL 873 , Temperature-Indicating and -Regulating Equipment

UL 935 , Fluorescent-Lamp Ballasts

UL 1054 , Special-Use Switches

UL 1069 , Hospital Signaling and Nurse-Call Equipment

UL 1310 , Class 2 Power Units

UL 1414 , Capacitors and Suppressors for Radio- and Television-Type Appliances

UL 1416 , Overcurrent and Overtemperature Protectors for Radio- and Television-Type Appliances

UL 1417 , Special Fuses for Radio- and Television-Type Appliances

UL 1418 , Cathode Ray Tubes

UL 1434 , Thermistor-Type Devices

UL 1441 , Coated Electrical Sleeving

UL 1446 , Systems of Insulating Materials – General

UL 1449 , Transient Voltage Surge Suppressors

UL 1577 , Optical Isolators

UL 1598 , High Intensity Discharge Lighting Fixtures

UL 1950 , Information Technology Equipment

UL 2054 , Household and Commercial Batteries

UL 2089 , Vehicle Battery Adapters

UL 2111 , Overheating Protection for Motors

UL 2601-1 , Medical Electrical Equipment, Part 1: General Requirements for Safety

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

UL 8730-2-9 , Automatic Electrical Controls for Household and Similar Use; Part 2: Particular Requirements for Temperature Sensing Controls

UL 60691 , Thermal-Links – Requirements and Application Guide

UL 60730-2-9 , Automatic Electrical Controls for Household and Similar Use; Part 2: Particular Requirements for Temperature Sensing Controls

UL 60950 , Safety of Information Technology Equipment

UL 61058-1 , Switches for Appliances

UL 61965 , Mechanical Safety for Cathode Ray Tubes

UL Subject 2353 , Special Transformer Winding Wire

2 Definitions

For the purpose of this International Standard, the following definitions apply.

2.1 DU Definitions in alphabetical order

	Subclause
ACCESSIBLE	2.8.3
<u>ACCESSORY</u>	<u>2.8.13</u>
AUDIO AMPLIFIER	2.2.1
AVAILABLE POWER	2.3.7
BASIC INSULATION	2.6.3
BY HAND	2.8.4
CLASS I	2.6.1
CLASS II	2.6.2
CLEARANCE	2.6.11
<u>COMMERCIAL APPARATUS</u>	<u>2.2.12</u>
CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS	2.4.4
CONDUCTIVE PATTERN	2.7.13
CREEPAGE DISTANCE	2.6.12
DIRECTLY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS	2.4.3
DOUBLE INSULATION	2.6.4
ELECTRONIC MUSICAL INSTRUMENT	2.2.2
FIRE ENCLOSURE	2.8.10
<u>FUNCTIONAL INSULATION</u>	<u>2.6.13</u>
HAZARDOUS LIVE	2.6.10
IMAGERY	2.2.8
INSTRUCTED PERSON	2.8.6
ISOLATING TRANSFORMER	2.7.1
LASER	2.2.7
LASER SYSTEM	2.2.6
LOAD TRANSDUCER	2.5.4
MAINS	2.4.1
MAINS SWITCH	2.7.11
<u>MAJOR ENCLOSURE PART</u>	<u>2.8.12</u>
MANUALLY OPERATED MECHANICAL SWITCH	2.7.10
MICRO-DISCONNECTION	2.7.7
NOISE SIGNAL	2.5.2
NON-CLIPPED OUTPUT POWER	2.3.4

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

OPERATING VOLTAGE 2.3.2
PERMANENTLY CONNECTED APPARATUS 2.4.2

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

No Text on This Page

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

PINK NOISE	2.5.1
PORTABLE APPARATUS	2.2.10
POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE	2.8.11
PRINTED BOARD	2.7.12
PROFESSIONAL APPARATUS	2.2.12 <u>2.2.13</u>
PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL	2.4.6
PROTECTIVE SCREENING	2.6.8
PROTECTIVE SEPARATION	2.6.7
PTC THERMISTOR	2.7.8
RATED CURRENT CONSUMPTION	2.3.6
RATED LOAD IMPEDANCE	2.3.5
RATED POWER CONSUMPTION	2.3.10
RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE	2.3.1
REINFORCED INSULATION	2.6.6
REMOTE CONTROL	2.2.9
REMOTE POWER FEEDING	2.4.8
REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE	2.3.8
RIPPLE FREE	2.3.3
ROUTINE TEST	2.8.2
SAFETY INTERLOCK	2.7.9
SEPARATING TRANSFORMER	2.7.2
SKILLED PERSON	2.8.5
SOURCE TRANSDUCER	2.5.3
SPECIAL BATTERY	2.7.14
SPECIAL SUPPLY APPARATUS	2.2.5
STAND-BY	2.8.8
<u>STATIONARY APPARATUS</u>	<u>2.2.10.1</u>
SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION	2.6.5
SUPPLY APPARATUS	2.2.3
SUPPLY APPARATUS FOR GENERAL USE	2.2.4
TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK	2.4.7
TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK TRANSIENT VOLTAGE	2.3.9
TERMINAL	2.4.5
THERMAL CUT-OUT	2.7.4
THERMAL LINK	2.7.5
THERMAL RELEASE	2.7.3
TNV CIRCUIT	2.4.9
TNV-0 CIRCUIT	2.4.10
TNV-1 CIRCUIT	2.4.11
TNV-2 CIRCUIT	2.4.12
TNV-3 CIRCUIT	2.4.13
TOUCH CURRENT	2.6.9
TRANSPORTABLE APPARATUS	2.2.11
TRIP-FREE	2.7.6
TYPE TEST	2.8.1
USER	2.8.7
WOOD-BASED MATERIAL	2.8.9

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

2.2 Types of apparatus

2.2.1

AUDIO AMPLIFIER

either an independent audio signal amplifying apparatus or the audio signal amplifying part of an apparatus to which this standard applies

2.2.2

ELECTRONIC MUSICAL INSTRUMENT

electronic apparatus such as an electronic organ, electronic piano or music synthesiser that produces music under the control of the USER

2.2.3

SUPPLY APPARATUS

apparatus which takes power from the MAINS and from which one or more other apparatus are fed

2.2.4

SUPPLY APPARATUS FOR GENERAL USE

SUPPLY APPARATUS which can be used without special measures not only for the supply of apparatus within the scope of this standard, but also for the supply of other appliances or devices, for example pocket-calculators

2.2.5

SPECIAL SUPPLY APPARATUS

SUPPLY APPARATUS which is designed to be used only for the supply of specified apparatus within the scope of this standard

2.2.6

LASER SYSTEM

LASER in combination with an appropriate laser energy source with or without additional incorporated components (see 3.44 of IEC 60825-1)

2.2.7

LASER

device which can be made to produce or amplify electromagnetic radiation in the wavelength range from 180 nm to 1 mm primarily by the process of controlled stimulated emission (see 3.36 of IEC 60825-1)

NOTE Devices to which this definition does not apply are Light Emitting Diodes (LEDs) used for displays, infrared remote controls, infrared audio/visual signal transmission and optocouplers.

2.2.8

IMAGERY

processing, editing, manipulation and/or storing of video signals

2.2.9

REMOTE CONTROL

controlling of an apparatus from a distance, for example mechanically, electrically, acoustically or by means of radiation

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

2.2.10 DU

PORTABLE APPARATUS

specific apparatus designed to be carried easily, the mass of which does not exceed 18 kg a product that complies with one or more of the following:

- it is provided with a carrying handle or similar carrying means and has a mass less than or equal to 18 kilograms. For the purpose of this definition, rackmounted product handles are not considered to be carrying handles.
- it has no carrying handles or other similar carrying means and has a mass less than or equal to 1 kilogram when weighed without batteries and is likely to be moved frequently.
- any product that might be held in one hand during any phase of normal operation regardless of mass.

Lightweight products such as preamplifiers, tuners, tape decks, decoders, or noise reduction units that depend upon connection to other products to be functional and by virtue of this are not frequently moved from one location to another are not considered to be portable.

2.2.10.1 DU

STATIONARY APPARATUS

a cord and plug connected apparatus that is intended to be fastened in place or located in a dedicated space

2.4.14 relocated as 2.2.10.1 November 18, 2005

2.2.11

TRANSPORTABLE APPARATUS

apparatus, the mass of which exceeds 18 kg, specifically designed to be moved frequently from place to place

NOTE Examples of TRANSPORTABLE APPARATUS are musical instruments and their associated amplifiers.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

No Text on This Page

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

2.2.12 DU

~~PROFESSIONAL APPARATUS~~ COMMERCIAL APPARATUS

apparatus for use in trades, professions or industries and which is not intended for sale to the general public

NOTE The designation should be specified by the manufacturer.

2.2.13 DU

PROFESSIONAL APPARATUS

video and audio apparatus operated and maintained by trained personnel under the conditions of controlled access

2.3 Ratings and electrical values

2.3.1

RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE

supply voltage or voltage range (for three-phase supply, the line-to-line voltage) for which the manufacturer has designed the apparatus

2.3.2

OPERATING VOLTAGE

highest voltage, non-repetitive transients being disregarded, to which the insulation under consideration is, or can be subjected when the apparatus is operating at its RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE under normal operating conditions

2.3.3

RIPPLE FREE

d.c. voltage with a r.m.s. value of a ripple content of not more than 10 % of the d.c. component. The maximum peak voltage does not exceed 140 V for a nominal 120 V ripple free d.c. system, and does not exceed 70 V for a nominal 60 V ripple free d.c. system

2.3.4

NON-CLIPPED OUTPUT POWER

sine-wave power dissipated in the RATED LOAD IMPEDANCE, measured at 1 000 Hz at the onset of clipping on either one, or both peaks.

In cases where an amplifier is not intended for operation at 1 000 Hz, a test frequency at the peak response shall be used

2.3.5

RATED LOAD IMPEDANCE

resistance, specified by the manufacturer, by which an output circuit should be terminated

2.3.6

RATED CURRENT CONSUMPTION

current consumption of an apparatus operating at its RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE under normal operating conditions

2.3.7

AVAILABLE POWER

maximum power which can be drawn from the supplying circuit through a resistive load whose value is chosen to maximise the power for more than 2 min when the circuit supplied is disconnected (see figure 1)

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

2.3.8

REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE

peak voltage that the insulation under consideration is required to withstand

2.3.9

TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK TRANSIENT VOLTAGE

highest peak voltage expected at the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK connection point of the apparatus, arising from external transients on the network

2.3.10

RATED POWER CONSUMPTION

power in watts consumed in an apparatus operating at its RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE under normal operating conditions

2.4 Supply and external connections**2.4.1**

MAINS

power source with a nominal voltage of more than 35 V (peak) a.c or d.c. which is not used solely to supply apparatus specified in 1.1.1

2.4.2

PERMANENTLY CONNECTED APPARATUS

apparatus which is intended for connection to the MAINS by a connection which cannot be loosened BY HAND

2.4.3

DIRECTLY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS

electrical connection with the MAINS in such a way that a connection to either pole of the MAINS causes in that connection a permanent current equal to or greater than 9 A, protective devices in the apparatus being not short-circuited

NOTE A current of 9 A is chosen as the minimum breaking current of a 6 A fuse.

2.4.4

CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS

electrical connection with the MAINS in such a way that a connection through a resistance of 2 000 Ω to either pole of the MAINS causes in that resistance a permanent current greater than 0,7 mA (peak), the apparatus not being connected to earth

2.4.5

TERMINAL

part of an apparatus by which connection is made to external conductors or other apparatus. It may contain several contacts

2.4.6

PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL

TERMINAL to which parts are connected which are required to be connected to earth for safety reasons

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

2.4.7

TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK

metallically-terminated transmission medium intended for communication between apparatus that may be located in separate buildings, excluding

- the MAINS systems for supply, transmission and distribution of electrical power, if used as a telecommunication transmission medium;
- television distribution systems using cable

NOTE 1 The term TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK is defined in terms of its functionality, not its electrical characteristics. A TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK is not itself defined as being a TNV CIRCUIT. Only the circuits in apparatus are so classified.

NOTE 2 A TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK may be

- publicly or privately owned;
- subject to transient overvoltages due to atmospheric discharges and faults in power distribution systems;
- subject to permanent longitudinal (common mode) voltages induced from nearby power lines or electric traction lines.

NOTE 3 Examples of TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS are:

- a public switched telephone network;
- a public data network;
- an ISDN network;
- a private network with electrical interface characteristics similar to the above.

2.4.8

REMOTE POWER FEEDING

supply of power to apparatus via a cable network, for example a TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK or a cable distribution network for antenna signals

2.4.9

TNV CIRCUIT

circuit which is in the apparatus and to which the ACCESSIBLE area of contact is limited (except for a TNV-0 CIRCUIT) and that is so designed and protected that, under normal operating and fault conditions, the voltages do not exceed specified limiting values

A TNV CIRCUIT is considered to be a circuit which is not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS.

NOTE 1 The specified limiting values of voltages under normal operating and fault conditions are given in annex B. For requirements regarding accessibility of TNV CIRCUITS, see 4.2.2 of IEC 62151.

TNV CIRCUITS are classified as TNV-0, TNV-1, TNV-2 and TNV-3 CIRCUITS as defined in 2.4.10, 2.4.11, 2.4.12, and 2.4.13 respectively.

NOTE 2 The voltage relationships between TNV CIRCUITS are shown in the table below.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Table 1 – Voltage ranges of TNV circuits

Overvoltages from TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS possible?	Voltage ranges	
	Within TNV-0 CIRCUIT limits	Exceeding TNV-0 CIRCUIT limits but within TNV CIRCUIT limits
Yes	TNV-1 CIRCUIT	TNV-3 CIRCUIT
No	TNV-0 CIRCUIT	TNV-2 CIRCUIT

2.4.10

TNV-0 CIRCUIT

TNV CIRCUIT:

whose voltages do not exceed a safe value under normal operating conditions and under fault conditions; and

which is not subject to overvoltages from TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS

NOTE The limiting values of voltages under normal operating and fault conditions are specified in 9.1.1.1 a) and 11.1 respectively.

2.4.11

TNV-1 CIRCUIT

TNV CIRCUIT:

whose voltages do not exceed the limits for a TNV-0 CIRCUIT under normal operating conditions; and

on which overvoltages from TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS are possible

2.4.12

TNV-2 CIRCUIT

TNV CIRCUIT:

whose voltages exceed the limits for a TNV-0 CIRCUIT under normal operating conditions; and

which is not subject to overvoltages from TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS

2.4.13

TNV-3 CIRCUIT

TNV CIRCUIT:

whose voltages exceed the limits for a TNV-0 CIRCUIT under normal operating conditions; and

on which overvoltages from TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS are possible

2.4.14 Relocated as 2.2.10.1 November 18, 2005

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

2.5 Signals, sources, loads

2.5.1

PINK NOISE

NOISE SIGNAL whose energy per unit bandwidth ($\Delta W/\Delta f$) is inversely proportional to frequency

2.5.2

NOISE SIGNAL

stationary random signal having normal probability distribution of instantaneous values. Unless otherwise stated, the mean value is zero

2.5.3

SOURCE TRANSDUCER

apparatus intended to convert the energy of a non electrical signal to electrical energy

NOTE Examples are microphone, image sensor, magnetic reproducing head, laser pick-up.

2.5.4

LOAD TRANSDUCER

apparatus intended to convert the energy of an electrical signal into another form of energy

NOTE Examples are loudspeaker, picture tube, liquid crystal display, magnetic recording head.

2.6 Protection against electric shock, insulations

2.6.1

CLASS I

design in which protection against electric shock does not rely on BASIC INSULATION only, but which includes an additional safety precaution in such a way that means are provided for the connection of ACCESSIBLE conductive parts to the protective (earthing) conductor in the fixed wiring of the installation, in such a way that ACCESSIBLE conductive parts cannot become HAZARDOUS LIVE in the event of a failure of the BASIC INSULATION

NOTE Such a design may have parts of CLASS II.

2.6.2

CLASS II

design in which protection against electric shock does not rely on BASIC INSULATION only, but in which additional safety precautions, such as DOUBLE INSULATION OR REINFORCED INSULATION, are provided, there being no provision for protective earthing or reliance upon installation conditions

2.6.3

BASIC INSULATION

insulation applied to HAZARDOUS LIVE parts to provide basic protection against electric shock

NOTE BASIC INSULATION does not necessarily include insulation used exclusively for functional purposes.

2.6.4

DOUBLE INSULATION

insulation comprising both BASIC INSULATION and SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

2.6.5

SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION

independent insulation applied in addition to BASIC INSULATION in order to reduce the risk of electric shock in the event of a failure of the BASIC INSULATION

2.6.6

REINFORCED INSULATION

single insulation applied to HAZARDOUS LIVE parts which provides a degree of protection against electric shock equivalent to DOUBLE INSULATION

NOTE REINFORCED INSULATION may comprise several layers which cannot be tested singly as BASIC INSULATION OR SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION.

2.6.7

PROTECTIVE SEPARATION

separation between circuits by means of basic and supplementary protection (BASIC INSULATION plus SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION or plus PROTECTIVE SCREENING) or by an equivalent protective provision, for example REINFORCED INSULATION

2.6.8

PROTECTIVE SCREENING

separation from HAZARDOUS LIVE parts by means of an interposed conductive screen, connected to the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL

2.6.9

TOUCH CURRENT

electric current through a human body when it touches one or more ACCESSIBLE parts [IEV 195-05-21, modified]

2.6.10

HAZARDOUS LIVE

electrical condition of an object from which a hazardous TOUCH CURRENT (electric shock) could be drawn (see 9.1.1)

2.6.11

CLEARANCE

shortest distance in air between two conductive parts

2.6.12

CREEPAGE DISTANCE

shortest distance along the surface of an insulating material between two conductive parts

2.6.13 DUFUNCTIONAL INSULATION

functional insulation is insulation that is not relied upon as BASIC, SUPPLEMENTARY, DOUBLE, OR REINFORCED INSULATION

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

2.7 Components

2.7.1

ISOLATING TRANSFORMER

transformer with PROTECTIVE SEPARATION between the input and output windings

2.7.2

SEPARATING TRANSFORMER

transformer, the input windings of which are separated from the output windings by at least BASIC INSULATION

NOTE Such transformers may have parts meeting the requirements of ISOLATING TRANSFORMERS.

2.7.3

THERMAL RELEASE

device which prevents the maintenance of excessively high temperatures in certain parts of the apparatus by disconnecting these parts from their supply

NOTE PTC THERMISTORS (see 2.7.8) are not THERMAL RELEASES in the sense of this definition.

2.7.4

THERMAL CUT-OUT

THERMAL RELEASE with reset which has no provision for temperature setting by the USER

NOTE A THERMAL CUT-OUT may be of the automatic or of the manual reset type.

2.7.5

THERMAL LINK

THERMAL RELEASE without reset, which operates only once and then requires partial or complete replacement

2.7.6

TRIP-FREE

automatic action, with a reset actuating member, so designed that the automatic action is independent of manipulation or position of the reset mechanism

2.7.7

MICRO-DISCONNECTION

adequate contact separation so as to ensure functional security

NOTE There is a requirement for the dielectric strength of the contact gap but no dimensional requirement.

2.7.8

PTC THERMISTOR

thermally sensitive semiconductor resistor, which shows a step-like increase in its resistance when the increasing temperature reaches a specific value. The change of temperature is obtained either by the flow of current through the thermosensitive element, or by a change in the ambient temperature, or by a combination of both

2.7.9

SAFETY INTERLOCK

means either of preventing access to a hazardous area until the hazard is removed or of automatically removing the hazardous condition when access is gained

UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL

2.7.10

MANUALLY OPERATED MECHANICAL SWITCH

device operated BY HAND, not incorporating semiconductors, and situated anywhere in the circuit of the apparatus, which can interrupt the intended function, such as sound and/or vision, by moving contacts

NOTE Examples of MANUALLY OPERATED MECHANICAL SWITCHES are single-pole or all-pole MAINS SWITCHES, functional switches and switching systems which, for example, can be a combination of relays and switches controlling the relays.

2.7.11

MAINS SWITCH

MANUALLY OPERATED MECHANICAL SWITCH which interrupts either one pole or all poles of the MAINS, except the protective earthing conductor

2.7.12

PRINTED BOARD

base material cut to size, containing all needed holes and bearing at least one CONDUCTIVE PATTERN

2.7.13

CONDUCTIVE PATTERN

configuration formed by electrically conductive material of a PRINTED BOARD

2.7.14

SPECIAL BATTERY

rechargeable battery or group of rechargeable batteries, identified by battery manufacturer's name and catalogue number, provided with the apparatus or recommended by the manufacturer

2.8 Miscellaneous**2.8.1**

TYPE TEST

test of one or more specimens made on a certain design to show that the design meets all requirements of this standard

2.8.2

ROUTINE TEST

test to which each specimen is subjected during or after manufacture to ascertain whether it complies with certain criteria

2.8.3 DU

ACCESSIBLE

possibility of touching by the test finger according to IEC 61032, ~~test probe B~~ the articulated finger probe as shown in figure 18.

NOTE Any ACCESSIBLE area of a non-conductive part is considered as being covered with a conductive layer (see figure 3 as an example).

2.8.3 revised November 18, 2005

2.8.4

BY HAND

operation that does not require the use of any object such as a tool, coin, etc.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

2.8.5

SKILLED PERSON

person with relevant education and experience to enable him or her to avoid dangers and to prevent risks which electricity may create

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

No Text on This Page

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

2.8.6

INSTRUCTED PERSON

person adequately advised or supervised by SKILLED PERSONS to enable him or her to avoid dangers and to prevent risks which electricity may create

2.8.7

USER

any person, other than a SKILLED PERSON OR AN INSTRUCTED PERSON, who may come into contact with the apparatus

2.8.8

STAND-BY

operating condition where the main functions, such as sound and/or vision, are switched-off and where the apparatus is only partly in operation. In this condition, permanent functions, such as a clock, are maintained and it allows the apparatus to be brought into full operation, for example by REMOTE CONTROL or automatically

2.8.9

WOOD-BASED MATERIAL

material in which the main ingredient is machined natural wood, coupled with a binder

NOTE Examples of WOOD-BASED MATERIAL are materials incorporating ground or chipped wood, such as hard fibre board or chip board.

2.8.10

FIRE ENCLOSURE

part of the apparatus intended to minimize the spread of fire or flames from within

2.8.11

POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE

possible fault which can start a fire if the open-circuit voltage measured across an interruption or faulty contact exceeds a value of 50 V (peak) a.c. or d.c. and the product of the peak value of this voltage and the measured r.m.s. current under normal operating conditions exceeds 15 VA.

Such a faulty contact or interruption in an electrical connection includes those which may occur in CONDUCTIVE PATTERNS ON PRINTED BOARDS

NOTE An electronic protection circuit may be used to prevent such a fault from becoming a POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE.

2.8.12 DUMAJOR ENCLOSURE PART

a part that forms more than 50 % of the area of any surface of an enclosure that is required to comply with the requirements to reduce the risk of fire, electric shock, or injury to persons

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

2.8.13 DU

ACCESSORY

a part intended for use with an apparatus when it is packed with the apparatus, when it is referenced by the manufacturer's name and catalog number in an apparatus marking, or when the apparatus manufacturer's literature indicates or implies use of the accessory by manufacturer's name and catalog number with the apparatus

3 General requirements

3.1 The apparatus shall be so designed and constructed as to present no danger when used for its intended purpose, either in normal operating conditions or under fault conditions, particularly providing protection against

- hazardous currents passing through the human body (electric shock);
- excessive temperatures;
- hazardous radiations;
- effects of implosion and explosion;
- mechanical instability;
- injury by mechanical parts;
- start and spread of fire.

In general, compliance is checked under normal operating conditions and under fault conditions, as specified in 4.2 and 4.3, by carrying out all the relevant tests specified.

3.2 Apparatus designed to be fed from the MAINS shall be constructed according to the requirements of CLASS I, OF CLASS II apparatus.

4 General test conditions

4.1 Conduct of tests

4.1.1 DE Tests according to this standard are TYPE TESTS.

NOTE—~~FOR ROUTINE TEST, recommendations are given in annex N.~~

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

4.1.2 *The sample or samples under test shall be representative of the apparatus the USER would receive, or shall be the actual apparatus ready for shipment to the USER.*

As an alternative to carrying out tests on the complete apparatus, tests may be carried out separately on circuits, components or subassemblies outside the apparatus, provided that inspection of the apparatus and circuit arrangements ensures that such testing will indicate that the assembled apparatus would conform to the requirements of this standard.

If any such test indicates a likelihood of non-compliance in the complete apparatus, the test shall be repeated in the apparatus.

If a test specified in this standard could be destructive, it is permitted to use a physical model to represent the condition to be evaluated.

NOTE 1 The tests should be carried out in the following order:

- component or material pre-selection;
- component or subassembly bench tests;
- tests where the apparatus is not energized;
- live tests
 - under normal operating conditions,
 - under abnormal operating conditions,
 - involving likely destruction.

NOTE 2 In view of the amount of resources involved in testing and in order to minimize waste, it is recommended that all parties concerned jointly consider the test programme, the test samples and the test sequence.

4.1.3 *Unless otherwise specified, the tests are carried out under normal operating conditions at:*

- *an ambient temperature between 15 °C and 35 °C, and*
- *a relative humidity of 75 % maximum.*

4.1.4 *Any position of intended use of the apparatus, normal ventilation not being impeded.*

The temperature measurements shall be carried out with the apparatus positioned in accordance with the instructions for use provided by the manufacturer, or, in the absence of instructions, the apparatus shall be positioned 5 cm behind the front edge of an open-fronted wooden test box with 1 cm free space along the sides and top and 5 cm depth behind the apparatus.

Tests on apparatus, intended to be part of an assembly not provided by the apparatus manufacturer, shall be carried out according to the instructions for use provided by the apparatus manufacturer, specifically those dealing with proper ventilation.

The apparatus shall also comply with table 3 when tested on an open bench.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

4.1.5 *The characteristics of the supply source, except those specified in 4.2.1, used during the tests shall not appreciably influence the test results.*

Examples of such characteristics are source impedance and waveform.

4.1.6 *Where relevant, a standard signal consisting of PINK NOISE, band-limited by a filter whose response conforms to that given in figure C.1 in annex C.*

NOTE If appropriate, the standard signal may be used to modulate a carrier wave.

The output measuring equipment shall indicate true r.m.s. values for crest factors up to at least 3, and the frequency response shall conform to that shown in annex C.

4.1.7 *The a.c. values given in this standard are r.m.s. values, unless specified otherwise.*

The d.c. values given in this standard are RIPPLE FREE values.

4.2 Normal operating conditions

Normal operating conditions are the most unfavourable combination of the following conditions.

4.2.1 DU *The apparatus, except battery-operated apparatus, is connected to a supply voltage of 0,9 times or 1,1 times of any RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE for which the apparatus is designed.*

NOTE In the U.S. the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE for single phase apparatus is assumed to be 120 V or 120/240 V.

For battery-operated apparatus a fully charged rechargeable battery or dry batteries in a fresh condition are used.

RATED CURRENT CONSUMPTION and RATED POWER CONSUMPTION are measured at the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE.

In case of doubt, tests may also be performed at the value of any RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE.

For apparatus having a RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE range not requiring the adjustment of a voltage setting device, the apparatus is connected to a supply voltage of 0,9 times the lower limit or 1,1 times the upper limit of any RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE range; moreover, the apparatus is connected to any nominal supply voltage within the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE range marked on the apparatus.

Any rated supply frequency marked on the apparatus is used.

Any type of supply for which the apparatus is designed to be used.

For d.c. supply any polarity is used, unless this is prevented by the construction of the apparatus.

4.2.1 revised November 18, 2005

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

4.2.2 Any position of controls which are ACCESSIBLE to the USER for adjustment BY HAND, including REMOTE CONTROLS, excluding voltage setting devices complying with 14.8 and volume controls and tone controls.

Any cable connected REMOTE CONTROL device, detachable by a connector or a similar device, is connected or not.

A cover, enclosing a LASER SYSTEM, which can be opened BY HAND, is opened fully, opened partly or closed.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

No Text on This Page

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

4.2.3 In the case of single-phase supply, any earth TERMINAL and any PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL may be connected to either pole of the isolated supply source used during the test.

In the case of a supply other than single phase, any earth TERMINAL and any PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL may be connected to the neutral or to any phase of the isolated supply source used during the test.

4.2.4 DU In addition, for an AUDIO AMPLIFIER:

a) The apparatus is operated in such a way as to deliver one-eighth of the NON-CLIPPED OUTPUT POWER but not less than 0.5 W per channel to the RATED LOAD IMPEDANCE using the standard signal described in 4.1.6 with the tone controls set to their mid position.

Where the NON-CLIPPED OUTPUT POWER cannot be obtained using the standard signal, one-eighth of the maximum attainable output power but not less than 0.5 W per channel is taken.

As an alternative, where the amplifier function is not adversely affected, a sine wave of 1 kHz or where applicable, another frequency corresponding to the geometric mean of the upper and lower -3 dB response points of the relevant part of the apparatus may be used to supply each channel.

If the maximum NON-CLIPPED OUTPUT POWER is less than 0.5 W, the apparatus is to be operated at the maximum NON-CLIPPED OUTPUT POWER.

If the result of a measurement performed with a sine wave does not comply with this standard, the measurement with PINK NOISE is decisive.

When determining whether a part or output TERMINAL contact is HAZARDOUS LIVE according to 9.1.1.1 and 11.1, the apparatus shall be operated with a sinusoidal input test signal of 1 kHz or where applicable, another frequency corresponding to the geometric mean of the upper and lower -3 dB response points of the relevant amplifier part of the apparatus, sufficient in amplitude for the apparatus to deliver the NON-CLIPPED OUTPUT POWER into its RATED LOAD IMPEDANCE. Open-circuit output voltage is determined after the load is removed.

b) The most unfavourable RATED LOAD IMPEDANCE of any output circuit is connected or not.

c) Organs or similar instruments which have a tone-generator unit are operated with any combination of two bass pedal keys, if any, and ten manual keys depressed, and all stops and tabs which can increase the output power are activated.

For AUDIO AMPLIFIERS used in an ELECTRONIC MUSICAL INSTRUMENT which does not generate a continuous tone, the standard signal described in 4.1.6 is applied to the signal input TERMINAL or to the appropriate input stage of the AUDIO AMPLIFIER.

d) Where the intended amplifier function depends on phase difference between two channels, there shall be a phase difference of 90° between the signals applied to the two channels.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

4.2.4.1 DU *An apparatus with multiple modes of operation, multiple signal input sources, or both, is to be operated using each mode of operation or signal input source separately, or in combination, according to the manufacturer's instructions to produce the maximum power input.*

4.2.5 *For apparatus incorporating motors, load conditions for the motor are chosen which may occur during intended use, including stalling BY HAND if this is possible.*

4.2.6 *An apparatus supplying power to other apparatus is loaded to give its rated power or is not loaded.*

4.2.7 *A SUPPLY APPARATUS to be used inside apparatus for which it is intended exclusively, is tested within such apparatus after installation according to the manufacturer's instruction for use.*

4.2.8 *In addition, for Citizen's Band apparatus, the RATED LOAD IMPEDANCE is connected or not to the antenna TERMINAL or, if applicable, to a telescopic antenna extended to any length. The transmitting test conditions are specified in IEC 61149.*

4.2.9 Antenna positioners

4.2.9.1 *In addition, for antenna positioners in combination with their control and SUPPLY APPARATUS:*

- *four consecutive movements from one endstop to the opposite endstop;*
- *15 min resting period.*

The movements and the resting periods are repeated as many times as necessary for the relevant tests. For temperature measurements the movements and the resting periods are repeated until a steady state of temperature has been reached but not longer than 4 h.

After the last movement period, the 15 min resting period does not apply to the temperature measurements.

4.2.9.2 *In addition, for satellite antenna positioners consisting of a power supply and control unit without a motor drive system, the power supply unit shall be loaded in accordance with the marked output rating and operated with a duty cycle of 5 min on, and 15 min off.*

4.2.10 *Apparatus designed to be supplied exclusively by a SPECIAL SUPPLY APPARATUS specified by the manufacturer of the apparatus, shall be tested together with this SPECIAL SUPPLY APPARATUS.*

The supply voltage for the SPECIAL SUPPLY APPARATUS is determined in accordance with 4.2.1.

Where a voltage setting device for the output voltage of the SPECIAL SUPPLY APPARATUS is provided, it shall be adjusted to the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE of the apparatus under test.

4.2.11 *Apparatus which can be supplied by SUPPLY APPARATUS FOR GENERAL USE shall be supplied by a test power supply according to table 2 corresponding to the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE of the apparatus under test. The values of no-load voltage given in table 2 are subject to the under- and over-voltage provisions specified in 4.2.1.*

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Table 2 DU – Test power supply

RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE V d.c	Nominal no-load voltage V d.c	Internal resistance Ω
1,5	2,25 <u>1,60</u>	0,75 <u>0,003</u>
3,0	4,50 <u>3,19</u>	1,50 <u>0,006</u>
4,5	6,75 <u>4,79</u>	2,25 <u>0,010</u>
6,0	9,00 <u>6,39</u>	3,00 <u>0,013</u>
7,5	11,25 <u>7,98</u>	3,75 <u>0,016</u>
9,0	13,50 <u>9,57</u>	4,50 <u>0,019</u>
12,0	18,00 <u>12,77</u>	6,00 <u>0,026</u>

NOTE This table provides a standardized set of supply parameters intended to represent those found in SUPPLY APPARATUS FOR GENERAL USE in the range 1,5 V to 12 V and with a rated output current of 1 A a 30 A minimum supply source with 6 percent regulation.
Supply parameters for voltages >12 V and output currents >1 A are under consideration.

4.2.12 Apparatus intended to be used with optional detachable legs or stands supplied by the manufacturer of the apparatus are tested with or without legs or stands fitted.

4.3 Fault conditions

4.3 revised November 18, 2005

For operation under fault conditions, in addition to the normal operating conditions mentioned in 4.2, each of the following conditions is applied one at a time and, associated with it, those other fault conditions which are a logical consequence.

NOTE 1 The logical consequences of a fault condition are those which occur when a fault is applied.

Circuits, or parts of a circuit supplied with an open circuit voltage not exceeding 35 V (peak) a.c. or d.c. and not generating voltages above that value, are not considered to present a fire hazard if the current which may be drawn from the supplying circuit for more than 2 min at any load, including short-circuit, is limited to not more than 0,2 A. Such supplied circuits are not subject to fault conditions testing.

An example of a test circuit to measure the voltage and the current is given in figure 1.

NOTE 2 Examination of the apparatus and all its circuit diagrams, excluding the internal circuit diagrams of integrated circuits, generally shows the fault conditions which are likely to create a hazard and which need to be applied. These are applied in sequence, in the order which is most convenient.

NOTE 3 When carrying out the examination in NOTE 2, the operating characteristics of integrated circuits are taken into consideration.

NOTE 4 The fault tests are only to be made in the wooden test box mentioned in 4.1.4, if no installation instructions are provided and there is a possibility that the test box will influence the results.

When a specified fault condition test is carried out, it can cause consequential faults which either interrupt or short-circuit a component. In case of doubt, the fault condition test shall be repeated up to two more times with replacement components in order to check that the same result is always obtained. Should this not be the case, the most unfavourable consequential fault, whether interruption or short circuit, shall be applied together with the specified fault condition.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

4.3.1 *Short-circuit across CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES, if they are less than the values specified in Clause 13 for BASIC and SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION, with the exception of insulation between parts of different polarity DIRECTLY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS.*

NOTE For CLEARANCES between parts of different polarity DIRECTLY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS reference is made to 13.1.

4.3.1 revised November 18, 2005

4.3.2 *Short-circuit across parts of insulating material, the short-circuiting of which might cause an infringement of the requirements regarding protection against electric shock hazard or overheating, with the exception of insulating parts which comply with the requirements of 10.3.*

NOTE This subclause does not imply a need to short-circuit the insulation between turns of coils.

4.3.3 *Short-circuit, or if applicable, interruption of*

- heaters of electronic tubes;
- insulation between heaters and cathodes of electronic tubes;
- spacings in electronic tubes, excluding picture tubes;
- semiconductor devices, one lead at a time interrupted or any two leads connected together one pair at a time (but see 4.3.4 d)).

NOTE If electronic tubes are so constructed that a short circuit between certain electrodes is highly improbable or even impossible, the electrodes concerned need not be short-circuited.

4.3.3 revised November 18, 2005

4.3.4 DC *Short-circuit or disconnection, whichever is more unfavourable, of resistors, capacitors, windings (for example transformers, degaussing coils), loudspeakers, optocouplers, varistors or non-linear passive components, the short-circuiting or disconnection of which might cause an infringement of the requirements regarding protection against electric shock or overheating.*

These fault conditions do not apply to

- a) resistors complying with the requirements of 14.1 and, as far as applicable, of 11.2;
- b) PTC THERMISTORS complying with IEC 60730-1, clause 15, 17, J15 and J17 or UL 1434;
- c) capacitors and RC-units complying with the requirements of 14.2, provided that the voltage at their terminations does not exceed their rated voltage and that their application is in accordance with 8.5 or 8.6;
- d) the insulation between the input and output terminations of optocouplers complying with the requirements of 14.11;
- e) windings and the insulation of transformers and other windings mentioned in 14.3 complying with the requirements of that subclause;
- f) surge suppression varistors complying with the requirements of 14.12.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

4.3.5 For apparatus containing an *AUDIO AMPLIFIER*, using the standard signal described in 4.1.6 so as to deliver the most unfavourable output power from zero up to the maximum attainable output power to the *RATED LOAD IMPEDANCE* or, if applicable, to the most unfavourable load impedance connected to the output *TERMINALS* including short-circuit and open circuit.

4.3.6 Motors are stalled.

4.3.7 Motors, relay coils or the like, intended for short-time or intermittent operation, are operated continuously if this can occur during operation of the apparatus.

4.3.8 The apparatus is connected simultaneously to alternative types of supply unless this is prevented by the construction.

4.3.9 Output *TERMINALS* of apparatus supplying power to other apparatus, except *MAINS* socket-outlets *DIRECTLY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS*, are connected to the most unfavourable load impedance, including short circuit. *MAINS* socket outlets shall be loaded with 1,1 times the highest load possible based on over-current protection and the outlet configuration except where the wiring to the socket outlet has the same cross-sectional area as the *MAINS* cord.

4.3.10 The top, sides and the back of an apparatus, if such surfaces have ventilation openings, shall be covered one at a time with a piece of card 200 g/m² density with dimensions not less than each tested surface, covering all openings.

Openings on different surfaces on the top of the apparatus (if any) are covered simultaneously by separate pieces of card.

Openings on top of the apparatus, on a surface inclined at an angle greater than 30° and smaller than 60° to the horizontal, from which an obstruction is free to slide, are excluded.

On the back and the sides of the apparatus, the card is attached to the upper edge and allowed to hang freely.

NOTE There is no test for the bottom surface.

4.3.10 revised November 18, 2005

4.3.11 If it is possible to insert *USER* replaceable batteries with reversed polarity, the apparatus is tested with one or more batteries with both intended and reversed polarity.

NOTE CAUTION, there is a danger of explosion when this test is applied.

4.3.12 For Citizen's Band apparatus, the most unfavourable load impedance, including short circuit, is connected to the antenna *TERMINAL* or to the antenna itself, for example a telescopic antenna, when no antenna *TERMINAL* is provided. The transmitting test conditions are specified in IEC 61149.

4.3.13 For apparatus to be supplied from an a.c. *MAINS* and provided with a voltage setting device to be set by the *USER*, connection to a supply voltage of 250 V a.c., with the *MAINS* voltage setting device at the most unfavourable position.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

4.3.14 Apparatus designed to be supplied by a SPECIAL SUPPLY APPARATUS with a voltage setting device for the output voltage, specified by the manufacturer of the apparatus, shall be tested by adjusting this voltage setting device to any output voltage.

During this test, 4.2.1 is applied, except that the SPECIAL SUPPLY APPARATUS is fed by its RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE.

The test need not be made if the current consumption of the apparatus under test cannot exceed 0,2 A for more than 2 min, for example by the operation of a fuse.

4.3.15 Apparatus which can be supplied by SUPPLY APPARATUS FOR GENERAL USE shall be tested by using a test power supply as specified in table 2 step by step upwards, starting with the value one step above the value specified for the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE of the apparatus under test.

This test is not applied to apparatus having a RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE equal to or higher than the maximum RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE in table 2.

During this test, 4.2.1 is applied, except that the no-load voltages have their nominal values.

The test need not be made if the current consumption of the apparatus under test cannot exceed 0,2 A for more than 2 min, for example by the operation of a fuse.

4.3.16 For apparatus with a charging circuit, recharge a fully discharged SPECIAL BATTERY with one cell short-circuited.

NOTE See also 11.2 and 14.10.3.

5 DU Marking and instructions

5 revised November 18, 2005

NOTE Additional requirements for marking and instructions are contained in 4.1.4, 4.2.7, 8.19.1, 8.19.2, 9.1.5, 14.3.1, 14.5.1.3, 14.5.2.2, 14.5.4, clause 19 and annex B.

Markings shall be permanent, comprehensible and easily discernible on the apparatus when ready for use.

The information should preferably be on the exterior of the apparatus, excluding the bottom. It is, however, permissible to have it in an area that is easily ACCESSIBLE BY HAND, for example under a lid, or on the exterior of the bottom of a PORTABLE APPARATUS or an apparatus with a mass not exceeding 7 kg, provided that the location of the marking is given in the instructions for use.

Compliance is checked by inspection and by rubbing the marking BY HAND for 15 s with a piece of cloth soaked with water and, at a different place or on a second sample, for 15 s with a piece of cloth soaked with petroleum spirit. After this the marking shall be legible; it shall not be easily possible to remove marking plates and they shall show no curling.

Petroleum spirit, to be used for reference purposes is defined as follows:

The petroleum spirit is an aliphatic solvent hexane having a maximum aromatics content of 0,1 % by volume, a kauri-butanol value of 29, an initial boiling point of approximately 65 °C, a dry-point of approximately 69 °C and a specific mass of approximately 0,7 kg/l.

As an alternative, a reagent grade hexane with a minimum of 85 % as n-hexane may be utilized.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

NOTE The designation "n-hexane" is chemical nomenclature for a "normal" or straight chain hydrocarbon. This petroleum spirit may further be identified as a certified ACS (American Chemical Society) reagent grade hexane (CAS# 110-54-3).

A label of conductive material secured in place by an adhesive shall withstand the oven and humidity conditions described in 12.8 when the label is capable of acting as a bridging agent and resulting in a risk of fire or electric shock when dislodged.

Six samples are to be tested, each secured to its intended mounting surface. Three samples are to be subjected to the air-circulating oven conditioning, and three samples are to be subjected to the humidity conditioning.

Each label shall withstand a minimum peel force of 5.0 N/30 mm width both before and after conditioning.

Letter symbols for quantities and units shall be in accordance with IEC 60027.

Graphical symbols shall be in accordance with IEC 60417 and ISO 7000, as appropriate.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

5.1 DR DU Identification and supply ratings

5.1 revised January 24, 2006

Power supplies and adapters complying with the construction and test requirements of UL 1310, UL 1950, Third Edition, or UL 60950 are considered to fulfill the marking requirements of items a through i of this subclause.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

No Text on This Page

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

The apparatus shall be marked with the following:

- a) maker's or responsible vendor's name, trade mark or identification mark;
- b) model number or type reference;
- c) the symbol for CLASS II, if applicable: \square (IEC 60417-5172)
- d) nature of supply:
 - a.c. only with the symbol: \sim (IEC 60417-5032)
 - d.c. only with the symbol: $===$ (IEC 60417-5031)
 - a.c. or d.c. with the symbol: \sphericalcap (IEC 60417-5033)
 - for three-phase systems, reference is made to IEC 61293.

e) RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE or range of the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGES which can be applied without operating a voltage setting device.

Apparatus which can be set to different RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGES OR RANGES OF RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGES shall be so constructed that the indication of the voltage or range of voltages to which the apparatus is set, is discernible on the apparatus when ready for use.

A solidus shall be used for USER selectable ratings, for example "110/230 V" and a hyphen shall be used for a rating range, for example "110-230 V";

f) rated MAINS frequency (or range of frequencies) in hertz if safety is dependent on the use of the correct MAINS frequency;

g) RATED CURRENT CONSUMPTION OR RATED POWER CONSUMPTION of apparatus which can be supplied by SUPPLY APPARATUS FOR GENERAL USE. ~~As an alternative the information may be given in the instruction manual.~~

The measured consumption at RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE shall not exceed the marked value by more than 10 %;

h) power consumption marking for apparatus intended for connection to an a.c. MAINS supply other than single phase;

NOTE Details for the measurement of the power consumption are under consideration.

i) RATED CURRENT CONSUMPTION OR RATED POWER CONSUMPTION for apparatus intended for connection to an a.c. MAINS supply.

The measured consumption at RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE shall not exceed the marked value by more than 10 %.

j) The date or a dating code not exceeding any three consecutive months of manufacture. The dating code shall be in an established alphanumeric code affirmed by the manufacturer. The coding system shall have a minimum 10 year repetition cycle.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

k) A distinctive identification to identify the factory of origin, when the same apparatus is produced at more than one factory.

l) When the enclosure of an apparatus provides the user with a means for access to parts which involve the risk of electric shock, the combination of the two graphical symbols and the supplemental marking – "CAUTION – RISK OF ELECTRIC SHOCK – DO NOT OPEN" – depicted in figure 19 shall be provided on at least one surface of the apparatus enclosure through which the USER gains access to the interior.

All other enclosure surfaces that provide a means for access to the interior of the apparatus for servicing purposes shall be marked either as indicated in figure 19, or with the graphical symbol depicted in figure 20 adjacent to one of the enclosure fasteners on that surface.

m) An audio and/or video system consisting of an equipment rack and one or more audio or video components shall be marked to identify the individual audio and video component type(s) and model number(s) which have been evaluated as part of the system. The marking shall be provided on a tag that is permanently attached to the rack. The tag shall be of substantial material such as cardboard, cloth, plastic or the equivalent to provide mechanical strength and to discourage removal. The tag shall have a hole and be secured to the rack by a plastic strap or the equivalent, or be provided with adhesive backing and secured to the rack as a flag. The tag shall be factory applied and not installed by the user.

n) CLASS I apparatus having touch current levels greater than 0.75 MIU and equal to or less than 3.5 MIU, as permitted in 9.1.1.1, shall be provided with the word "CAUTION" and the following marking or equivalent: "TO REDUCE THE RISK OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, GROUNDING OF THE CENTER PIN OF THIS PLUG MUST BE MAINTAINED." The marking shall be on a tag which shall be of substantial material such as cardboard, cloth, plastic or the equivalent to provide mechanical strength and to discourage removal. The tag shall have a hole and be secured to the cord by a plastic strap or the equivalent.

o) The grille/ventilation areas of the top surface of an apparatus that are limited in temperature rise in accordance with condition b of Table 3 are marked with the word "CAUTION" and the following or equivalent "HOT SURFACE". Alternately, one of the symbols shown in figure 25 may be used.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

5.2 DR DU TERMINALS

TERMINALS shall be marked as follows:

- a) The wiring TERMINAL intended for connection of the protective earthing conductor associated with the supply wiring: ⊕ (IEC 60417-5019)

This symbol shall not be used for other earthing TERMINALS.

- b) Terminals which are HAZARDOUS LIVE under normal operating conditions, except TERMINALS for MAINS supply: ⚡ (IEC 60417-5036)

- c) Output TERMINALS provided for supply of other apparatus except MAINS supply shall be marked with the nominal output voltage and frequency, and, in addition, the maximum output current if ~~with the most unfavourable load temperature rises higher than those allowed in table 3 can occur~~ or power, unless the TERMINALS are marked with the type references of the apparatus which are permitted to be connected. When intended to be installed or interconnected in the field by a SKILLED PERSON, the Class of wiring shall be marked adjacent to the TERMINALS.

Socket-outlets providing MAINS power to other apparatus shall be marked with the power and current which may be drawn.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

No Text on This Page

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

If there is only one TERMINAL provided for supply of other apparatus, the marking may be put on the apparatus at any place, taking into account the first paragraphs of clause 5.

d) Speaker TERMINALS on apparatus, other than PORTABLE APPARATUS, that is not provided with speakers and associated wiring shall be provided with a marking adjacent to the TERMINALS as identified below:

- “Class 1 Wiring” for TERMINALS with a measured open-circuit voltage exceeding 300 V r.m.s. when delivering NON-CLIPPED OUTPUT POWER, OR
- “Class 3 Wiring” for TERMINALS with a measured open-circuit voltage exceeding 120 V r.m.s. but not exceeding 300 V r.m.s. when delivering NON-CLIPPED OUTPUT POWER, OR
- “Class 2 Wiring” for all other TERMINALS provided the audio output power exceeds 10 W per channel under normal operating conditions or the apparatus is intended to be installed or interconnected in the field by a SKILLED PERSON.

The operation manual shall discuss the risks involved, precautions to be taken as well as the reason for them, and instructions as to the proper connecting and insulating techniques to be used when connecting a speaker.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

5.3 DU When an apparatus is provided with safety related graphical symbols, the instructions shall include an illustration of the graphical symbols and an explanation of their meaning. Those symbols that are visible only after removal of a servicing cover by a SKILLED PERSON are only required to be explained in the service instructions. Explanations of required symbols in the operating manual shall precede any operating instructions.

Where in a manufacturer's service documentation, for example in circuit diagrams or lists of components, a symbol is used to indicate that a specific component shall be replaced only by the component specified in that documentation for safety reasons, the following symbol shall be used: \blacktriangle (ISO 7000-0434).

This symbol may also be put adjacent to the relevant component.

This symbol shall not be placed on components.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

5.4 DU Instructions

When Information with regard to safety is required according to this standard. This information shall be given in a separate booklet or sheet, or be located before any operating instructions in an instruction for installation or use and supplied with the apparatus. This information shall be given in a language acceptable to the country where the apparatus is intended to be used.

The important safety instructions shall be entitled "Important Safety Instructions". The following safety instructions shall be included where applicable, and, when used, shall be verbatim as follows. Additional safety information is not prohibited from being included by adding statements after the end of the following safety instruction list. At the manufacturer's option, a picture or drawing that illustrates the intent of a specific safety instruction is not prohibited from being placed immediately adjacent to that safety instruction.

- 1) Read these instructions.
- 2) Keep these instructions.
- 3) Heed all warnings.
- 4) Follow all instructions.
- 5) Do not use this apparatus near water.
- 6) Clean only with dry cloth.
- 7) Do not block any ventilation openings. Install in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- 8) Do not install near any heat sources such as radiators, heat registers, stoves, or other apparatus (including amplifiers) that produce heat.
- 9) Do not defeat the safety purpose of the polarized or grounding-type plug. A polarized plug has two blades with one wider than the other. A grounding type plug has two blades and a third grounding prong. The wide blade or the third prong are provided for your safety. If the provided plug does not fit into your outlet, consult an electrician for replacement of the obsolete outlet.
- 10) Protect the power cord from being walked on or pinched particularly at plugs, convenience receptacles, and the point where they exit from the apparatus.
- 11) Only use attachments/accessories specified by the manufacturer.
- 12) Use only with the cart, stand, tripod, bracket, or table specified by the manufacturer, or sold with the apparatus. When a cart is used, use caution when moving the cart/apparatus combination to avoid injury from tip-over.
- 13) Unplug this apparatus during lightning storms or when unused for long periods of time.
- 14) Refer all servicing to qualified service personnel. Servicing is required when the apparatus has been damaged in any way, such as power-supply cord or plug is damaged, liquid has been spilled or objects have fallen into the apparatus, the apparatus has been exposed to rain or moisture, does not operate normally, or has been dropped.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

The symbol in figure 21 shall be shown adjacent to the text of item 12 above.

NOTE 1 — Reference is made to ISO/IEC Guide 37 [17].

NOTE 2 — The following information with regard to safety are recommended to be included as far as applicable:

- minimum distances around the apparatus for sufficient ventilation;
- the ventilation should not be impeded by covering the ventilation openings with items, such as newspapers, table cloths, curtains, etc.;
- no naked flame sources, such as lighted candles, should be placed on the apparatus;
- attention should be drawn to the environmental aspects of battery disposal;
- the use of apparatus in tropical and/or moderate climates.

5.4.1 DU In addition, the instructions shall include the following as far as applicable.

a) For MAINS powered apparatus and for apparatus producing internal voltages greater than 35 V (peak) a.c. or d.c., having no protection against splashing water according to annex A, the instructions for use shall state that the apparatus shall not be exposed to dripping or splashing and that no objects filled with liquids, such as vases, shall be placed on the apparatus: "WARNING" and the following or equivalent, "To reduce the risk of fire or electric shock, do not expose this apparatus to rain or moisture."

b) A warning that TERMINALS marked with the symbol according to 5.2 b) are HAZARDOUS LIVE and that the external wiring connected to these TERMINALS requires installation by an INSTRUCTED PERSON or the use of ready-made leads or cords.

c) If an apparatus is provided with a replaceable lithium battery, the following applies:

- if the battery is intended to be replaced by the USER, there shall be a warning close to the battery or in both the instructions for use and the service instructions;
- if the battery is not intended to be replaced by the USER, there shall be a warning close to the battery or in the service instructions.

This warning shall include the following or similar text:

CAUTION

Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced.

Replace only with the same or equivalent type.

d) A warning that an apparatus with CLASS I construction shall be connected to a MAINS socket outlet with a protective earthing connection.

e) ~~Instructions to ensure correct and safe installation and interconnection of the apparatus in multimedia systems.~~

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

f) If the apparatus is not tested to the stability requirements of 19.1, 19.2 or 19.3 due to fastening in place, the following or similar text shall be marked on or provided with the apparatus:

WARNING

To prevent injury, this apparatus must be securely attached to the floor/wall
in accordance with the installation instructions.

g) A warning that batteries (battery pack or batteries installed) shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.

h) If the apparatus is provided with a CRT with protective film attached to the faceplate as part of the safety implosion protection system in accordance to IEC 61965 UL 61965, the following warning, or wording with a similar meaning, shall be given in the instructions:

WARNING

The CRT in this apparatus employs a protective film on the face. This film must not be removed
as it serves a safety function and removal will increase the risk of serious injury.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

5.4.1 revised November 18, 2005

5.4.2 With regard to devices for disconnection from the MAINS, instructions shall state that

- a) where the MAINS plug or an appliance coupler is used as the disconnect device, the disconnect device shall remain readily operable;
- b) where an all-pole MAINS SWITCH is used as the disconnect device, the location on the apparatus and the function of the switch shall be described, and the switch shall remain readily operable;
- c) FOR PERMANENTLY CONNECTED APPARATUS provided neither with an all-pole MAINS SWITCH nor an all-pole circuit breaker, the installation shall be carried out in accordance with all applicable installation rules.

Where marking, signal lamps or similar means might give the impression that the apparatus is completely disconnected from the MAINS, information that states clearly the correct situation shall be included. If symbols are used, their meaning shall also be explained.

Marking of the off-position by the relevant symbol according to IEC 60417-5008 or according to IEC 60417-5010 is permitted only for an all-pole MAINS SWITCH which interrupts all poles of the MAINS supply except the protective earthing conductor.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

5.4.3 DU When apparatus operation and installation instructions contain instructions for use by service personnel, such instructions shall be separate in format from other instructions and preceded by the word "CAUTION" and the following or the equivalent. "These servicing instructions are for use by qualified service personnel only. To reduce the risk of electric shock do not perform any servicing other than that contained in the operating instructions unless you are qualified to do so."

6 Hazardous radiations

6.1 DR Ionizing radiation

Apparatus including a potential source of ionizing radiation shall be so constructed that personal protection against ionizing radiation is provided under normal operating conditions and under fault conditions.

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

No Text on This Page

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

Compliance is checked by measurement under the following conditions: in accordance with the requirements in the United States Code of Federal Regulations, Title 21, Chapter 1, Subchapter J, Sections 1010.2, 1010.3, and 1020.10 by measuring the radiation produced by the apparatus employing a production representative unit.

In addition to the normal operating conditions, all controls adjustable from the outside BY HAND, by any object such as a tool or a coin, and those internal adjustments or pre-sets which are not locked in a reliable manner, are adjusted so as to give maximum radiation whilst maintaining an intelligible picture for 1 h, at the end of which the measurement is made.

NOTE 1—Soldered joints and paint lockings are examples of adequate locking.

The exposure rate at any point outside the apparatus is determined by means of a radiation monitor with an effective area of 10 cm², at a distance of 5 cm from the outer surface of the apparatus.

Moreover, the measurement shall be made under fault conditions causing an increase of the high-voltage, provided an intelligible picture is maintained for 1 h, at the end of which the measurement is made.

The exposure rate shall not exceed 36 pA/kg (0,5 mR/h) or 5μSv/h.

NOTE 2—The value is according to ICRP 15, clause 289 [22].

NOTE 3—In the member countries of CENELEC, the amount of ionizing radiation is regulated by European Council Directive 96/29/Euratom of 13 May 1996. This directive requires that at any point 10 cm from the outer surface of the apparatus, the dose rate should not exceed 1 μSv/h (0,1 mR/h) taking account of the background level.

A picture is considered to be intelligible if the following conditions are met:

- a scanning amplitude of at least 70 % of the usable screen width;*
- a minimum luminance of 50 cd/m² with locked blank raster provided by a test generator;*
- a horizontal resolution corresponding to at least 1,5 MHz in the centre, with a similar vertical degradation;*
- not more than one flashover per 5 min.*

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

6.2 DR Laser radiation

An apparatus containing a LASER SYSTEM shall be so constructed that personal protection against laser radiation is provided under normal operating conditions and under fault conditions.

An apparatus containing a LASER SYSTEM is exempt from all further requirements of this subclause if

— classification by the manufacturer according to IEC 60825-1, clauses 3, 8 and 9 shows that the approachable emission level does not exceed class 1 under all conditions of operation; maintenance, service and failure; and

— it does not contain an embedded LASER according to IEC 60825-1.

NOTE 1— Information about the measuring equipment is given in IEC 61040 [10].

NOTE 2— The term "approachable emission level" denotes "accessible emission level (AEL)" in the sense of IEC 60825-1.

Apparatus shall be classified and labelled in accordance with the approachable emission level measured under fault conditions, except that for apparatus not exceeding class 1, 5.2 of IEC 60825-1, does not apply. Code of Federal Regulations, Title 21, Chapter 1, Subchapter J, Sections 1010.2, 1010.3, 1040.10, and 1040.11.

All controls adjustable from the outside BY HAND or any object such as a tool or a coin, and those internal adjustments or pre-sets which are not locked in a reliable manner, are adjusted so as to give maximum radiation.

NOTE 3— Soldered joints and paint locking are examples of adequate locking.

The laser radiation emitted by redirection as mentioned in IEC 60825-1, 3.32 b), shall not be measured for a LASER SYSTEM of class 1.

Compliance is met by satisfying the relevant requirements as specified in IEC 60825-1 with the following modifications and additions:

6.2.1 DR

a) The apparatus shall meet under normal operating conditions, the approachable emission limits of class 1 as specified in IEC 60825-1, table 1. Time basis of the classification is 100 s.

Compliance is checked by performing the relevant measurements as specified in IEC 60825-1, 8.2.

b) If the apparatus incorporates a LASER SYSTEM which meets, under normal operating conditions, the approachable emission limits of class 1, the requirements mentioned under c) and d) do not apply.

c) Adequate measures shall be taken to prevent the opening of any cover BY HAND giving access to laser radiation in excess of class 1 limits.

Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

d) Where safety is dependent on the proper functioning of a mechanical SAFETY INTERLOCK, this interlock shall be fail-safe (in the failure mode the apparatus is rendered inoperative or non-hazardous), or shall withstand a switching test of 50 000 cycles of operation with current and voltage applied as under normal operating conditions.

Compliance is checked by inspection or test.

With reference to 6.2, compliance of laser products with the Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), Title 21, Part 1040, shall be determined by:

a) Determining the Class of laser (as defined in the CFR) from the manufacturer's required documentation, such as the Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) report, markings and labels, or similar documentation;

b) Verifying that the manufacturer's markings and labels having the information specified in the CFR are affixed on the laser product (as defined in the CFR);

c) Determining that the corresponding construction features, such as protective housing, interlocks, and similar features, are provided in accordance with the CFR; and

d) Determining that the resulting construction complies with the construction requirements of this standard.

6.2.2 DR

a) When the apparatus is operated under fault conditions as specified in 4.3, the approachable emission level from the apparatus shall be not higher than class 3R outside the wavelength range of 400 nm to 700 nm and not higher than five times the limit for class 1 within the wavelength range of 400 nm to 700 nm.

NOTE—The class 3R limits are as specified in IEC 60825-1, table 3.

Compliance is checked by performing the relevant measurements as specified in IEC 60825-1, 8.2.

b) If the apparatus incorporates a LASER SYSTEM which meets, under fault conditions, the approachable emission limits given in 6.2.2 a), the requirements mentioned under c) and d) do not apply.

c) Adequate measures shall be taken to prevent the opening of any cover BY HAND giving access to laser radiation in excess of the limits given in 6.2.2 a).

Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement.

d) Where safety is dependent on the proper functioning of a mechanical SAFETY INTERLOCK, this interlock shall be fail-safe (in the failure mode the apparatus is rendered inoperative or non-hazardous), or shall withstand a switching test of 50 000 cycles of operation with current and voltage applied as under normal operating conditions.

Compliance is checked by inspection or test.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

7 Heating under normal operating conditions

7.1 General

During intended use, no part of the apparatus shall attain an excessive temperature.

Compliance is checked by measuring the temperature rises under normal operating conditions when a steady state has been attained.

NOTE 1 In general, a steady state is assumed to be attained after 4 h of operation.

Temperature rises are determined:

– in the case of winding wires, by the change in resistance method or any other method giving the average temperature of the winding wires;

NOTE 2 Care should be taken to ensure that during the measurement of the resistance of winding wires, the influence of circuits or loads connected to these winding wires is negligible.

– in other cases, by any suitable method.

Temperature rises shall not exceed the values specified in 7.1.1 to 7.1.5 inclusive.

Any single protective device or component of a protective circuit operating during the test shall be defeated, except for

a) THERMAL CUT-OUTS with automatic reset complying with 14.5.1,

b) PTC THERMISTORS complying with 14.5.3.

Consequently, if continuous operation of an AUDIO AMPLIFIER is not possible, the amplifier shall also be operated at the maximum possible signal level permitting continuous operation.

7.1.1 ACCESSIBLE parts

The temperature rise of ACCESSIBLE parts shall not exceed the values given in table 3, item a), "Normal operating conditions".

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

7.1.2 Parts, other than windings, providing electrical insulation

The temperature rise of insulating parts, other than windings, providing BASIC, SUPPLEMENTARY, OR REINFORCED INSULATION, and of insulating parts, the failure of which would cause an infringement of the requirements of 9.1.1 or a fire hazard, shall not exceed the values given in table 3, item b) "Normal operating conditions", taking into account note d) of table 3.

If an insulating part is used to establish a CLEARANCE or to contribute to a CREEPAGE DISTANCE and its permissible temperature rise is exceeded, then the relevant area of the insulating part is disregarded when compliance with clauses 8 and 11 is checked.

7.1.3 Parts acting as a support or a mechanical barrier

The temperature rise of parts, a mechanical failure of which would cause an infringement of the requirements of 9.1.1, shall not exceed the value given in table 3, item c) "Normal operating conditions".

7.1.4 Windings

The temperature rise of windings comprising insulation providing protection against electric shock or fire hazard shall not exceed the values given in table 3, items b) and d) "Normal operating conditions".

If an insulating part is used to establish a CLEARANCE or to contribute to a CREEPAGE DISTANCE and its permissible temperature rise is exceeded, then the relevant area of the insulating part is disregarded when compliance with clauses 8 and 11 is checked.

NOTE If the insulation is incorporated in a winding in such a way that its temperature rise cannot be measured directly, the temperature is assumed to be the same as that of the winding wire.

7.1.5 Parts not subject to a limit under 7.1.1 to 7.1.4 inclusive

According to the nature of the material, the temperature rise of the part shall not exceed the values given in table 3, item e), "Normal operating conditions".

Table 3 DC DE DU – Permissible temperature rise ^a of parts of the apparatus

Table 3 revised January 24, 2006

Parts of the apparatus	Normal operating conditions K	Fault conditions K
<i>a) ACCESSIBLE parts</i>		
Knobs, handles, etc. if		
– metallic	30	65
– non-metallic ^c	50	65
Enclosures if		
– metallic ^b	40	65
– non-metallic ^{b + c}	60	65
<i>b) Parts providing electrical insulation ^d</i>		
Supply cords and wiring insulation with		
– polyvinyl chloride or synthetic rubber		
– not under mechanical stress	60	100

Table 3 DC DE DU – Permissible temperature rise ^a of parts of the apparatus Continued on Next Page

Table 3 DC DE DU – Permissible temperature rise ^a of parts of the apparatus Continued

Parts of the apparatus	Normal operating conditions	Fault conditions
	K	K
– under mechanical stress	45	100
– natural rubber	45	100
Other insulations of:		
– thermoplastic materials ^e	f)	f)
– non-impregnated paper	55	70
– non-impregnated cardboard	60	80
– impregnated cotton, silk, paper and textile	70	90
– laminates based on cellulose or textile, bonded with		
– phenol-formaldehyde, melamine-formaldehyde, phenol-furfural or polyester	85	110
– epoxy	120	150
– mouldings of		
– phenol-formaldehyde or phenol-furfural, melamine and melamine phenolic compounds with		
– cellulose fillers	100	130
– mineral fillers	110	150
– thermosetting polyester with mineral fillers	95	150
– alkyd with mineral fillers	95	150
– composite materials of		
– polyester with glass-fibre reinforcement	95	150
– epoxy with glass-fibre reinforcement	100	150
– silicone rubber	145	190
c) <i>Parts acting as a support or a mechanical barrier including the inside of enclosures</i> ^d		
Wood and WOOD-BASED MATERIALS	60	90
Thermoplastic materials ^e	f)	f)
Other materials	d)	d)
d) <i>Coil winding wires and insulation systems</i> ^{d + g}		
– insulated with		
– non-impregnated silk, cotton, etc. <u>Class 105 (A) insulation system</u>	55 75	75 110
– impregnated silk, cotton, etc. <u>Class 120 (E) insulation system</u>	70 90	100 125
– oleoresinous materials <u>Class 130 (B) insulation system</u>	70 95	135 130
– polyvinyl-formaldehyde or polyurethane resins <u>Class 155 (F) insulation system</u>	85 115	150
– polyester resins <u>Class 180 (H) insulation system</u>	120 135	155 170
– polyesterimide resins	145	180
e) <i>Other parts</i>		
These temperature rises apply to parts not covered by items a), b), c) and d):		
Parts of wood and WOOD-BASED MATERIAL	60	140
Lithium batteries	40 ^h	50 ⁱ

UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL

Table 3 DC DE DU – Permissible temperature rise ^a of parts of the apparatus Continued on Next Page

Table 3 DC DE DU – Permissible temperature rise ^a of parts of the apparatus Continued

Parts of the apparatus		Normal operating conditions K	Fault conditions K
Resistors and parts of metal, glass, ceramic, etc.		No limit	No limit
All other parts		200	300
Conditions applicable to table 3			
a	<p>For tropical climates, permissible temperature rises of 10 K less than those specified in this table are required.</p> <p>The values of the temperature rises are based on a maximum ambient temperature of 35 °C for moderate climates and of 45 °C for tropical climates.</p> <p>Where the temperatures are thermostatically limited by a THERMAL CUTOUT with automatic reset or a PTC THERMISTOR, the measured temperature on the part shall not exceed 35 °C plus the permitted rise of table 3.</p> <p><u>Materials rated in accordance with UL 746B, for higher operating temperatures, are not prohibited from being used at the higher operating temperature.</u></p>		
b	<p>For parts not likely to be touched during intended use, temperature rises up to 65 K are allowed under normal operating conditions. The wooden test box of 4.1.4 shall not be used when evaluating access to parts likely to be touched. The following parts are considered not likely to be touched:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – rear and bottom panels, except those incorporating switches or controls handled during normal use, – external heatsinks and metallic parts directly covering external heatsinks, except those on surfaces incorporating switches or controls handled during normal use, – parts of the top surface which are more than 30 mm below the general plane of the top surface. <p><u>For grille/ventilation areas in the top surface directly above internal heatsinks a temperature rise up to 65 K is allowed. The marking of 5.1 o) shall be provided on the top surface adjacent to the grille/ventilation areas.</u></p>		
c	<p>For outside parts of metal which are covered with plastic material, the thickness of which is at least 0,3 mm, a temperature rise which corresponds to the permissible temperature rise of the insulating material is allowed.</p>		
d	<p>If these temperature rises are higher than those allowed by the class of the relevant insulating material, the nature of the material is the governing factor.</p>		
e	<p>For the purpose of this standard, the permissible temperature rises are based on service experience in relation to the thermal stability of the materials. The materials quoted are examples. For materials for which higher temperature limits are claimed, and for materials other than those listed, the maximum temperatures shall not exceed those which have been proved to be satisfactory, for example in accordance with IEC-60085 <u>UL 1446.</u></p>		
f	<p>Natural rubber and synthetic rubbers are not considered as being thermoplastic materials.</p> <p>Due to their wide variety, it is not possible to specify a generic permissible temperature rise for thermoplastic materials. In order to determine the softening temperature of a specific thermoplastic material, the softening temperature as determined by the test B50 of ISO 306 shall be used. If the material is not known or if the actual temperature of the parts exceeds the softening temperature, the test described under 1) shall be used.</p> <p>1) the softening temperature of the material is determined on a separate specimen, under the conditions specified in ISO 306 with a heating rate of 50 °C/h and modified as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – the depth of penetration is 0,1 mm; – the total thrust of 10 N is applied before the dial gauge is set to zero or its initial reading noted. <p>2) the temperature limits to be considered for determining the temperature rises are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – under normal operating conditions, a temperature of 10 K below the softening temperature; 		

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM IUL**

Table 3 DC DE DU – Permissible temperature rise ^a of parts of the apparatus Continued on Next Page

Table 3 DC DE DU – Permissible temperature rise ^a of parts of the apparatus Continued

	Normal operating conditions K	Fault conditions K
<p style="text-align: center;">Parts of the apparatus</p> <p style="text-align: center;">– under fault conditions, the softening temperature itself.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">If the required softening temperature exceeds 120 °C, condition ^c shall be taken into account.</p> <p>^g For switch mode transformers temperature rises may be measured with a thermocouple placed as close as practicable to the winding. The permitted temperature rise shall be 10 K less than that given in table 3.</p> <p>^h Lithium batteries shall meet the permissible temperature rise, unless such batteries comply with the applicable electrical tests of 6.2.2.1 or 6.2.2.2 of IEC 60086-4.</p> <p>ⁱ Lithium batteries shall meet the permissible temperature rise, unless such batteries comply with all electrical tests of 6.3.2 of IEC 60086-4.</p>		

7.2 DC Heat resistance of insulating material

A thermoplastic insulating material supporting parts CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS shall be resistant to heat if, during intended use, these parts carry a steady-state current exceeding 0,2 A and can generate substantial heat due to imperfect contact.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the rating as specified in note a of table 3, or by subjecting the insulating material to the test specified in table 3, condition f.

The softening temperature or rating of the insulating material shall be at least 150 °C.

In those cases where two groups of conductors, each supported by insulating parts, can be rigidly connected or joined together, for example by plug and socket, only one of the insulating parts need meet the test. Where one of the insulating parts is fixed in the apparatus, this part shall meet the test.

NOTE 1 Examples of parts which can generate substantial heat during intended use are contacts of switches and of voltage setting devices, screw TERMINALS and fuse holders.

NOTE 2 This test need not be performed on parts which are in accordance with a relevant IEC or UL standard.

8 Constructional requirements with regard to the protection against electric shock

8.1 DU Conductive parts, covered only by lacquer, solvent-based enamel, ordinary paper, untreated textile, oxide films or beads are considered to be bare.

A metal part that is not inherently resistant to corrosion shall be protected against corrosion when corrosion of that part is capable of contributing to or resulting in a risk of fire, shock, or injury to persons.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

8.2 The apparatus shall be designed and constructed so that operations BY HAND, such as

- changing the setting for the voltage or nature of supply;
- replacing fuse-links and indicator lights;

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

- handling of drawers etc.,

does not involve a risk of electric shock.

Compliance is checked by application of the tests of 9.1.1.

8.3 The insulation of HAZARDOUS LIVE parts shall not be provided by hygroscopic materials.

Compliance is checked by inspection and, in case of doubt, by the following test.

A specimen of the material, as specified in IEC 60167, clause 9, is subjected to a temperature of (40 ± 2) °C, and a relative humidity of 90 % to 95 %, the conditioning period being:

- 7 days (168 h) for apparatus to be used under tropical conditions;

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

No Text on This Page

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

– 4 days (96 h) for other apparatus.

Within 1 min after this preconditioning, the specimen shall withstand the tests of 10.3 without the humidity treatment according to 10.2.

8.4 The apparatus shall be so constructed that there is no risk of an electric shock from ACCESSIBLE parts or from those parts rendered ACCESSIBLE following the removal BY HAND of a cover.

This requirement applies also to internal parts of battery compartments which become ACCESSIBLE by the removal of a cover when replacing the batteries.

This requirement does not apply to battery compartments inside the apparatus, where the replacement of their batteries by the USER is not intended, for example batteries for memories.

Compliance is met by satisfying the requirements of 8.5 or 8.6.

NOTE Inaccessible contacts of TERMINALS are regarded as ACCESSIBLE parts, unless marked with the symbol according to 5.2 b) or intended to connect the apparatus to the MAINS or to provide MAINS power to other apparatus.

8.5 For CLASS I apparatus, the ACCESSIBLE conductive parts, except for those parts of the apparatus which have DOUBLE OR REINFORCED INSULATION (CLASS II construction), shall be separated from HAZARDOUS LIVE parts by BASIC INSULATION meeting the insulation requirements as specified in clause 10 and the requirements for CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES as specified in clause 13.

This requirement does not apply to insulations whose short-circuiting does not cause any electric shock hazard.

NOTE 1 For example, if one end of a secondary winding of a SEPARATING TRANSFORMER is connected to an ACCESSIBLE conductive part, the other end need not meet any special insulation requirement with regard to the same ACCESSIBLE conductive part.

A resistor bridging BASIC INSULATION shall comply with the requirements as specified in 14.1 a).

NOTE 2 Parts of the apparatus which have DOUBLE OR REINFORCED INSULATION (CLASS II construction) may also be bridged by a resistor in compliance with the requirements as specified in 14.1 a).

A capacitor or RC-unit bridging BASIC INSULATION between a HAZARDOUS LIVE part and an ACCESSIBLE conductive part connected to the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL, shall comply with the requirements of 14.2.1 a).

Such resistors, capacitors or RC-units shall be positioned inside the enclosure of the apparatus.

CLASS I apparatus shall be provided with a PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL or contact to which the protective earthing contacts of socket-outlets, if any, and ACCESSIBLE conductive parts shall be reliably connected. Such connection is not necessary for those ACCESSIBLE conductive parts which are insulated from HAZARDOUS LIVE parts by DOUBLE OR REINFORCED INSULATION (CLASS II construction) or those which are protected from becoming HAZARDOUS LIVE by a conductive part reliably connected to the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL.

NOTE 3 Examples of such a conductive part are a metal screen in a transformer between the primary and the secondary windings, a metal chassis, etc.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

8.6 For CLASS II apparatus, the ACCESSIBLE parts shall be separated from HAZARDOUS LIVE parts either by DOUBLE INSULATION specified under item a) or by REINFORCED INSULATION specified under item b).

This requirement does not apply to insulations whose short-circuiting does not cause any electric shock hazard.

NOTE 1 For example, if one end of a secondary winding of a SEPARATING TRANSFORMER is connected to an ACCESSIBLE conductive part, the other end need not meet any special insulation requirement with regard to the same ACCESSIBLE conductive part.

A component complying with the requirements of 14.1 a) or 14.3, except components according to 14.3.4.3, may bridge BASIC, SUPPLEMENTARY, DOUBLE OR REINFORCED INSULATION.

Components according to 14.3.4.3 may bridge BASIC INSULATION only.

BASIC and SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATIONS may each be bridged by a capacitor or RC-unit, having the same rated values, complying with the requirements of 14.2.1 a).

DOUBLE OR REINFORCED INSULATION may be bridged by two capacitors or RC-units in series, having the same rated values, each complying with the requirements of 14.2.1 a).

Alternatively DOUBLE OR REINFORCED INSULATION may be bridged by a single capacitor or RC-unit complying with the requirements of 14.2.1 b).

NOTE 2 For external insulation, bridging DOUBLE OR REINFORCED INSULATION, also see 8.8.

Such resistors, capacitors or RC-units shall be positioned inside the enclosure of the apparatus.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

a) If ACCESSIBLE parts are separated from HAZARDOUS LIVE parts by BASIC and SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION, the following shall apply:

Each of these insulations shall comply with the insulation requirements as specified in clause 10 and with the requirements for CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES specified in clause 13.

Enclosures of wood not complying with the requirements of 8.3 are permitted as SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION if they withstand the dielectric strength test of 10.3.

Compliance is checked by inspection and/or measurement.

b) If ACCESSIBLE parts are separated from HAZARDOUS LIVE parts by REINFORCED INSULATION the following shall apply:

The insulation shall comply with the insulation requirements specified in clause 10. Moreover, it shall comply with the requirements for CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES specified in clause 13.

NOTE 3 An example of assessment of REINFORCED INSULATION is given in figure 2.

Compliance is checked by inspection and/or measurement.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

8.7 Deleted November 18, 2005

8.8 BASIC, SUPPLEMENTARY and REINFORCED INSULATION shall each withstand the dielectric strength test as specified in 10.3.

For DOUBLE INSULATION either the BASIC or the SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION shall have a thickness of at least 0,4 mm.

REINFORCED INSULATION shall have a minimum thickness of 0,4 mm when not subject to any mechanical stress which, at the temperatures during normal operating conditions and under fault conditions, would be likely to lead to deformation or deterioration of the insulating material.

NOTE Under mechanical stress conditions, the thickness may have to be increased to comply with the insulation requirements as specified in clause 10 and the mechanical strength requirements as specified in clause 12.

The above requirements are not applicable to insulation in thin sheet materials irrespective of their thickness provided that

- it is used within the enclosure of the apparatus, and
- BASIC OR SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION comprises at least two layers of material, each of which will pass the dielectric strength test specified in 10.3 for BASIC OR SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION, or
- BASIC OR SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION comprises three layers of material for which all combinations of two layers together pass the dielectric strength test specified in 10.3 for BASIC OR SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION, or
- REINFORCED INSULATION comprises at least two layers of material, each of which will pass the dielectric strength test specified in 10.3 for REINFORCED INSULATION, or
- REINFORCED INSULATION comprises three layers of insulation material for which all combinations of two layers together pass the dielectric strength test specified in 10.3 for REINFORCED INSULATION.

There is no requirement for all layers of insulation to be of the same insulating material.

For requirements for insulated winding wires for use without additional interleaved insulation, see 8.17.

Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement.

For test specifications of non-separable thin sheet insulation, see 8.22.

NOTE The purpose of the tests in 8.22 is to ensure that the material has adequate strength to resist damage when hidden in inner layers of insulation. Therefore, the tests are not applied to insulation in two layers. The tests are also not applied to SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION.

8.8 revised November 18, 2005

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

8.9 The insulation of internal wiring between HAZARDOUS LIVE conductors in wires or cables and ACCESSIBLE PARTS, or between HAZARDOUS LIVE parts and conductors in wires or cables connected to ACCESSIBLE conductive parts, shall have a thickness of at least 0,4 mm if made of polyvinyl chloride. Other materials are allowed provided that they withstand the dielectric strength test specified in 10.3 and that their thickness ensures an equivalent mechanical strength, where the construction so requires.

NOTE For example, a polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) insulation having a thickness of at least 0,24 mm is considered to fulfil this requirement.

Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement.

8.9.1 DC Sleeving, tape, tubing, and wire insulation shall be suitable for the conditions of use, such as voltage and temperature, and comply with the requirements in UL 224, UL 510, and UL 1441 as applicable.

8.10 DC Component power supplies and their internal insulation complying with the construction and test requirements of UL 1310, UL 1950, Third Edition, and UL 60950 are considered to fulfill the test requirements of this sub-clause.

In CLASS II apparatus, DOUBLE INSULATION shall be provided between

- ACCESSIBLE parts and conductors in wires or cables CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS and
- conductors in wires or cables connected to ACCESSIBLE conductive parts and parts CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS.

Either the BASIC or the SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION shall comply with the requirements of 8.9. The other insulation shall withstand the dielectric strength test specified in 10.3 for BASIC or SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION.

If DOUBLE INSULATION consists of two layers which cannot be tested separately, it shall withstand the dielectric strength test specified in 10.3 for REINFORCED INSULATION.

The test voltage of 10.3 is applied between the conductor and metal foil wrapped tightly around the insulation of the wire over a length of 10 cm.

In the case of insulating sleeves, the test voltage of 10.3 is applied between a tight-fitting metal rod inserted into the sleeve and a metal foil wrapped tightly around the sleeve over a length of 10 cm.

Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement.

8.11 The construction of the apparatus shall be such that, should any wire become detached, the CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES are not reduced below the values specified in clause 13 by the natural movement of a detached wire. This requirement does not apply if there is no risk of a wire becoming detached.

NOTE 1 It is assumed that not more than one connection will become detached at the same time.

Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement.

NOTE 2 Examples of methods deemed to prevent a wire from becoming detached are:

- a) the conductor of the wire is anchored to the tag before soldering, unless breakage close to the soldering place is likely to occur as a result of vibration;

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

- b) wires are twisted together in a reliable manner;
- c) wires are fastened together reliably by cable ties, adhesive tapes with thermosetting adhesives according to IEC 60454, sleeves or the like;
- d) the conductor of the wire is inserted into a hole in a PRINTED BOARD before soldering, the hole having a diameter slightly greater than that of the conductor, unless breakage close to the PRINTED BOARD is likely to occur as a result of vibration;
- e) the conductor of the wire and its insulation, if any, is securely wrapped around the termination by means of a special tool;
- f) the conductor of the wire and its insulation, if any, are crimped to the termination by means of a special tool.

In case of doubt, the vibration test of 12.1.2 is carried out to verify compliance.

8.12 Deleted November 18, 2005

8.13 Windows, lenses, signal lamp covers, etc. shall be fastened by positive means if HAZARDOUS LIVE parts are rendered ACCESSIBLE by their absence.

NOTE Friction only is not regarded as a positive means.

Compliance is checked by inspection and, in case of doubt, by applying a force from the outside of 20 N for 10 s at the most unfavourable place and in the most unfavourable direction.

8.14 Covers which may be subjected to forces during intended use, for example covers supporting TERMINALS(see clause 15) shall be fastened by positive means if HAZARDOUS LIVE parts are rendered ACCESSIBLE by their absence.

NOTE Friction only is not regarded as a positive means.

Compliance is checked by inspection and, in case of doubt, by applying a force of 50 N for 10 s at the most unfavourable place and in the most unfavourable direction.

After the tests of 8.13 and 8.14, the apparatus shall show no damage in the sense of this standard; in particular no HAZARDOUS LIVE parts shall become ACCESSIBLE.

8.15 Internal wiring of the apparatus, damage to the insulation of which is liable to cause a hazard in the sense of this standard, shall

- be secured so as not to contact parts exceeding the permissible temperature rise for the insulation of the wires as specified in table 3 when a force of 2 N is applied to any part of the wiring or their surroundings, and

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

- be so constructed that there is no risk of damage to the insulation of the wires, for example by sharp edges, moving parts or pinches, which may come into contact with other parts of the apparatus, when a force of 2 N is applied to any part of the wiring or their surroundings.

Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement.

8.16 Apparatus designed to be supplied exclusively by a SUPPLY APPARATUS specified by the manufacturer of the apparatus, shall be so constructed that the SPECIAL SUPPLY APPARATUS cannot be replaced, without modification, by a SUPPLY APPARATUS FOR GENERAL USE.

NOTE The required non-interchangeability may be obtained for example by special connections.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

8.17 DC Requirements for insulated winding wires for use without additional interleaved insulation

Insulated winding wires of wound components, the insulation of which is providing BASIC, SUPPLEMENTARY, REINFORCED OR DOUBLE INSULATION shall comply with UL Subject 2353, or meet the following requirements:

- where the insulation on the winding wire is used to provide BASIC, SUPPLEMENTARY OR REINFORCED INSULATION in a wound component, the insulated wire shall comply with annex H;
- the minimum number of constructional layers applied to the conductor or conductors shall be as follows:
 - for BASIC INSULATION: two wrapped layers or one extruded layer;
 - for SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION: two layers, wrapped or extruded;
 - for REINFORCED INSULATION: three layers, wrapped or extruded.
- where more than one constructional layer is specified above, it is permitted for the total number of layers to be on one conductor or shared between the two conductors;
- the insulated winding wires that are adjacent to each other are considered to be separated by DOUBLE INSULATION if the insulation of each conductor is rated for the OPERATING VOLTAGE;
- if the wire is insulated with two or more spirally wrapped layers of tape, the overlap of layers shall be adequate to ensure continued overlap during manufacture of the wound component. Layers of tape shall be sealed if CREEPAGE DISTANCES between layers, as wrapped, do not fulfil clause 13 of this standard;

NOTE 1 For wires insulated by an extrusion process, sealing is inherent to the process.

- where two insulated wires or one bare and one insulated wire are in contact inside a wound component, crossing each other at an angle between 45° and 90° and subject to winding tension, protection against mechanical stress shall be provided. The protection can be achieved by one of the following:
 - physical separation in the form of insulating sleeving or sheet material or using double the required number of insulation layers, or

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

- the wound component meets the requirements of 8.18.
 - the manufacturer shall demonstrate that the wire has been subjected to 100 % routine dielectric strength test as specified in H.3.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the part and of the declaration by the manufacturer of the winding wire.

8.18 Endurance test for wound components with insulated winding wires without additional interleaved insulation

Where required by 8.17, the wound component is subjected to the following cycling test, each cycle consisting of a heat run, a vibration test and a moisture treatment. Measurements according to 8.18 d) are made before the cycling test and after each cycle.

The number of specimens is 3. The specimens are subjected to 10 test cycles.

a) Heat run

Depending on the type of insulation (thermal classification), the specimens are kept in a heating cabinet for a combination of time and temperature as specified in table 4. The 10 cycles are carried out with the same combination.

The temperature in the heating cabinet shall be maintained within a tolerance of ± 3 °C.

After the heat tests, the specimens are allowed to cool down to ambient temperature before the vibration test is made.

b) Vibration test

Specimens are fastened to the vibration generator in their normal position of use, as specified in IEC 60068-2-6, by means of screws, clamps or straps round the component. The direction of vibration is vertical, and the severity is:

- *duration: 30 min;*
- *amplitude: 0,35 mm;*
- *frequency range: 10 Hz, ...55 Hz, ...10 Hz;*
- *sweep rate: approximately one octave per minute.*

c) Moisture treatment

The specimens are submitted for two days to the moisture treatment of 10.2.

d) Measurements

After each cycle, the insulation resistance is measured and the dielectric strength test is carried out according to 10.3. In addition, the following test is made for transformers operating at MAINS frequency only:

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

After the dielectric strength test, one input circuit is connected to a voltage equal to a test voltage of at least 1,2 times the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE, at double the rated frequency for 5 min. No load is connected to the transformer. During the test, polyfilar windings, if any, are connected in series.

A higher test frequency may be used; the duration of the period of connection, in minutes, then being equal to 10 times the rated frequency divided by the test frequency, but not less than 2 min.

During this test, there shall be no breakdown of the insulation between the turns of a winding, between input and output circuits, between adjacent input or output circuits, or between the windings and any conductive core.

The values of the test voltage for the dielectric test according to 10.3 are reduced to 35 % of the specified values and the testing times doubled.

A specimen is considered not to pass the test if the no-load current or the in-phase component of the no-load input current is at least 30 % greater than the corresponding value, obtained during the initial measurement.

If, after the completion of all 10 cycles, one or more specimens have failed, the transformer is considered as not complying with the endurance test.

Table 4 – Test temperature and testing time (in days) per cycle

Test temperature °C	Temperature for the insulation system °C				
	100	115	120	140	165
220					4
210					7
200					14
190				4	
180				7	
170				14	
160			4		
150		4	7		
140		7			
130	4				
120	7				
Corresponding classification according to IEC 60085 and IEC 60216	A	E	B	F	H
The manufacturer decides which combination of time and temperature shall be used for the test.					

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

8.19 Disconnection from the MAINS

8.19.1 DU When the apparatus is designed to be fed from the MAINS, a disconnect device shall be provided to isolate the apparatus from the MAINS for servicing.

NOTE The following are examples of disconnect devices:

- the MAINS plug,
- an appliance coupler,
- an all-pole MAINS SWITCH,
- an all-pole circuit breaker.

Where the MAINS plug or appliance coupler is used as the disconnect device, instructions for use shall comply with 5.4.2 a).

Where an all-pole MAINS SWITCH or an all pole circuit breaker is used as the disconnect device, it shall have contact separation of at least 3 mm in each pole and shall disconnect all poles simultaneously.

Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement.

8.19.2 For apparatus on which a MAINS SWITCH is used as a disconnect device, the on-position of the switch shall be indicated.

NOTE The indication of the on-position may be in the form of marking, illumination, audible indication or other suitable means.

Where the indication is in the form of marking, the relevant requirements of clause 5 shall be complied with.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

8.20 A MAINS SWITCH shall not be fitted in the MAINS flexible cable or cord.

NOTE Additional requirements for switches are given in 14.6.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

8.21 Where resistors, capacitors or RC-units are used for bridging contact gaps of switches CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS, the components shall comply with 14.1 a) or 14.2.2 respectively.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

8.22 Test specifications of non-separable thin sheet material

8.22 revised November 18, 2005

Compliance is checked by subclause 26.3 in IEC 61558-1 or the following:

Three test samples, each individual sample consisting of three or more layers of non-separable thin sheet material forming REINFORCED INSULATION, are used. One sample at a time is fixed to the mandrel of the test fixture (Figure 14) as shown in Figure 15.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

A downward force of $150\text{ N} \pm 10\text{ N}$ is applied to the free end of the sample (see Figure 16), using an appropriate clamping device. The mandrel is rotated by hand without jerks

- from the initial position (Figure 15) to the final position (Figure 16) and back;
- as above for the second time;
- from the initial position to the final position.

If a sample breaks during rotation where it is fixed to the mandrel or the clamping device, this does not constitute a failure and the test is repeated on a fresh sample. If a sample breaks at any other place, the test has failed.

After this preconditioning, a sheet of metal foil, $0,035\text{ mm} \pm 0,005\text{ mm}$ thick, at least 200 mm long, is placed along the surface of the sample, hanging down on each side of the mandrel (see Figure 16). The surface of the foil in contact with the sample shall be conductive, not oxidised or otherwise insulated. The foil is positioned so that its edges are not less than 18 mm from the edges of the sample (see Figure 17). The foil is then tightened by two equal weights, one at each end, using appropriate clamping devices.

While the mandrel is in its final position, and within the 60 s following the final positioning, a dielectric strength test is applied between the mandrel and the metal foil in accordance with 10.3.2, using a test voltage of 1,5 times the value specified in Table 5 for REINFORCED INSULATION but not less than 5 kV.

The entire test procedure is repeated on the other two samples.

No flashover or breakdown shall occur during the test; corona effects and similar phenomena being disregarded.

8.23 DC Printed wiring boards involved with the risk of electric shock shall comply with the requirements in UL 796.

9 Electric shock hazard under normal operating conditions

9.1 Testing on the outside

9.1.1 General

ACCESSIBLE parts shall not be HAZARDOUS LIVE.

NOTE 1 For interconnection with apparatus under the scope of other standards, circuits should comply with 9.1.1 and, depending upon the construction, with 8.5 or 8.6.

In addition, when not connected to another apparatus, inaccessible contacts of TERMINALS shall not be HAZARDOUS LIVE, with the following exceptions:

- contacts of signal output TERMINALS, if they have to be HAZARDOUS LIVE for functional reasons, provided the contacts are separated from the supply source as required according to clause 8 for ACCESSIBLE conductive parts.

NOTE 2 Inaccessible input TERMINALS, for example those of loudspeakers, are permitted to be HAZARDOUS LIVE when connected to such output TERMINALS.

NOTE 3 For the marking of such output TERMINALS, see 5.2 b).

UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL

- TERMINALS complying with 15.1.1 provided for connecting the apparatus to the MAINS, socket-outlets and contacts of connecting blocks for providing power to other apparatus.

The requirements to determine whether a HAZARDOUS LIVE part is ACCESSIBLE apply only to HAZARDOUS LIVE voltages not exceeding 1 000 V a.c. or 1 500 V d.c. For higher voltages, there shall be a CLEARANCE between the part at HAZARDOUS LIVE voltage and the test finger or the test pin as specified in 13.3.1 for BASIC INSULATION (see figure 3).

Compliance is checked by inspection and by measurements according to 9.1.1.1 and tests according to 9.1.1.2.

9.1.1.1 DR Determination of HAZARDOUS LIVE parts

In order to verify that a part or a contact of a TERMINAL is HAZARDOUS LIVE, the following measurements are carried out between any two parts or contacts, then between any part or contact and either pole of the supply source used during the test. Discharges shall be measured to the TERMINAL provided for connecting the apparatus to the supply source, immediately after the interruption of the supply.

NOTE 1 For discharges between the poles of the MAINS plug, see 9.1.6

The part or contact of a TERMINAL is HAZARDOUS LIVE if

a) the open-circuit voltage exceeds

- 35 V (peak) a.c. or 60 V d.c.,
- for audio signals of PROFESSIONAL and COMMERCIAL APPARATUS, 120 V r.m.s.,
- for audio signals of other than PROFESSIONAL and COMMERCIAL APPARATUS, 71 V r.m.s.;

If the voltage limits in a) are exceeded, provisions b) to d) apply.

b) the TOUCH CURRENT, expressed as the corresponding voltages U_1 and U_2 , and measured carried out in accordance with IEC 60990 UL 101, with the measuring network described in annex D of this standard, shall not exceed 0,5 MIU, exceeds the following values:

- for a.c.: $U_1 = 35$ V (peak) and $U_2 = 0,35$ V (peak);
- for d.c.: $U_1 = 1,0$ V.

NOTE 2 The limit values of $U_2 = 0,35$ V (peak) for a.c. and $U_1 = 1,0$ V for d.c. correspond to the values 0,7 mA (peak) a.c. and 2,0 mA d.c.

The limit value $U_1 = 35$ V (peak) for a.c. corresponds to the value 70 mA (peak) a.c. for frequencies greater than 100 kHz.

and moreover

c) the charge exceeds 45 μ C for stored charges at voltages between 60 V d.c. and 15 kV d.c., or

d) the energy of discharge exceeds 350 mJ for stored charges at voltages exceeding 15 kV d.c.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

NOTE 3 It is recommended that for apparatus intended to be used in tropical climates, the values given in a) and b) above, be halved.

NOTE 4 To avoid unnecessarily high TOUCH CURRENTS when several apparatus are interconnected, it is recommended that the individual TOUCH CURRENT values are not higher than needed for functional reasons.

For CLASS I constructions the r.m.s. TOUCH-CURRENT to earth shall not be more than 3,5 mA MIU. The measurement shall be carried out with the measurement network described in annex D of this standard and with the protective earthing connection disconnected.

9.1.1.2 DU Determination of ACCESSIBLE parts

9.1.1.2 revised November 18, 2005

In order to determine whether a HAZARDOUS LIVE part is ACCESSIBLE, the jointed test finger according to ~~test probe B of IEC 61032 figure 18~~, is pushed against the enclosure or inserted through any openings of the enclosure, including openings in the bottom, without appreciable force.

Through openings, the test finger is applied to any depth that the finger will permit and is rotated or angled before, during and after insertion to any position. If the opening does not allow the entry of the finger, the force on the finger in the straight position is increased to $20\text{ N} \pm 2\text{ N}$ and the test repeated with the finger in angled position.

The test is repeated using small finger probes according to test probes 18 and 19 of IEC 61032. This does not apply if the intended conditions of use prevent the apparatus from being accessed by children.

Conductive parts, covered only by lacquer, solvent-based enamel, ordinary paper, untreated textile, oxide films or beads are considered to be bare.

Moving parts of loudspeaker systems, such as dust caps or cones of drivers or passive radiators, are not regarded as preventing accessibility.

NOTE See also 13.3.1

For CLASS II constructions, the test probe 13 of IEC 61032 shall not touch HAZARDOUS LIVE parts when applied with a force of $3\text{ N} \pm 0,3\text{ N}$ in every possible position.

The test probe is not applied to socket-outlets, connectors providing MAINS power, fuse holders and the like.

NOTE For indication of electrical contact, a voltage of not less than 40 V and not more than 50 V in series with a suitable lamp may be used.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

9.1.2 Shafts of operating knobs, handles, levers and the like

Shafts of operating knobs, handles, levers and the like shall not be HAZARDOUS LIVE.

Compliance is checked by inspection, and in case of doubt, by measurement according to 9.1.1.1.

9.1.3 Openings of the enclosure

The apparatus shall be so designed that suspended foreign bodies cannot become HAZARDOUS LIVE, when introduced through ventilation or other holes.

Compliance is checked by applying to the holes a metal test pin having a diameter of 4 mm and a length of 100 mm. The test pin is suspended freely from one end, the penetration is limited to the length of the test pin.

The test pin shall not become HAZARDOUS LIVE.

9.1.4 TERMINALS

The use of a single-pole plug or a bare wire to make connection with a contact of a TERMINAL for earth or antenna or for audio, video or associated signals, shall not involve the risk of an electric shock.

The test is not applied to TERMINALS marked with the symbol of 5.2 b).

NOTE See also 15.1.2.

Compliance is checked by the following tests:

Within 25 mm measured from each contact of the TERMINAL, a test pin according to IEC 61032, test probe D, however limited in length to $20\text{ mm} \pm 0,2\text{ mm}$, is applied in every possible position, in case of doubt with a force of $10\text{ N} \pm 1\text{ N}$.

Each contact is tested with a straight test probe according to IEC 61032, test probe D, in case of doubt with a force of $1\text{ N} \pm 0,1\text{ N}$.

The test probes shall not become HAZARDOUS LIVE.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

No Text on This Page

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

9.1.5 Pre-set controls

If a hole giving access to pre-set controls is marked as such on the enclosure or in the instruction for use, and the setting of this control requires a screwdriver or other tool, the adjustment of the control shall not involve the risk of an electric shock.

Compliance is checked by applying to the opening a test probe according to IEC 61032, test probe C.

The test probe is applied in every possible position, in case of doubt with a force of $10\text{ N} \pm 1\text{ N}$.

The test probe shall not become HAZARDOUS LIVE.

9.1.6 Withdrawal of MAINS plug

Apparatus intended to be connected to the MAINS by means of a MAINS plug shall be so designed that there is no risk of an electric shock from stored charge on capacitors, when touching the pins or contacts of the plug after its withdrawal from the socket-outlet.

NOTE For the purpose of this subclause, male interconnection couplers and male appliance couplers are regarded as MAINS plugs.

Compliance is checked by measurement according to 9.1.1.1 a) or c) or by calculation.

The MAINS SWITCH, if any, is in the off-position, unless it is more unfavourable in the on-position.

Two seconds after withdrawal of the MAINS plug, the pins or contacts of the plug shall not be HAZARDOUS LIVE.

The test may be repeated up to 10 times to obtain the most unfavourable situation.

If the nominal capacitance across the MAINS poles does not exceed $0,1\ \mu\text{F}$, no test is conducted.

9.1.7 Resistance to external forces

The enclosure of the apparatus shall be sufficiently resistant to external forces.

Compliance is checked by the following tests:

a) by means of a rigid test finger according to IEC 61032, test probe 11, a force of $50\text{ N} \pm 5\text{ N}$, directed inwards, is applied for 10 s to different points of the enclosure including openings and textile coverings.

The force shall be so exerted by the tip of the test finger as to avoid wedge or lever action.

During the test, the enclosure shall not become HAZARDOUS LIVE, HAZARDOUS LIVE parts shall not become ACCESSIBLE, textile coverings shall not touch HAZARDOUS LIVE parts;

b) by means of a test hook as shown in figure 4, a force of $20\text{ N} \pm 2\text{ N}$, directed outwards, is applied for 10 s at all points where this is possible.

During the test, HAZARDOUS LIVE parts shall not become ACCESSIBLE;

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

c) external conductive enclosures and conductive parts of an external enclosure shall be subjected for 5 s to a steady force of (250 ± 10) N for floor-standing apparatus or (100 ± 10) N for other apparatus, applied to the enclosure or to a part of the enclosure fitted to the apparatus, by means of a suitable test tool providing contact over a circular plane surface 30 mm in diameter.

NOTE 1 Contacts of TERMINALS are not considered to be a conductive part of the external enclosure.

After the tests, the apparatus shall show no damage in the sense of this standard.

NOTE 2 The apparatus need not be connected to the supply source during the tests.

9.2 Removal of protective covers

A part which becomes ACCESSIBLE by the removal of a COVER BY HAND shall not be HAZARDOUS LIVE (see also 14.7).

This requirement applies also to internal parts of battery compartments which become ACCESSIBLE by the removal of a cover either BY HAND or with the use of a tool, coin or other object, when replacing the batteries. An exception is made in the case of batteries which are not intended to be replaced by the USER, for example batteries for memories.

Compliance is checked by application of the tests of 9.1.1, except that the measurements are made 2 s after removal of the cover.

NOTE Any part removable BY HAND of a voltage setting device is considered to be a protective cover.

10 Insulation requirements

The insulation requirements given in this standard are for frequencies up to 30 kHz. It is permitted to use the same requirements for insulation operating at frequencies over 30 kHz until additional data are available.

For information on insulation behaviour in relation to frequency see IEC 60664-1 and IEC 60664-4 [9].

10.1 Surge test

The insulation on CLASS II apparatus between ACCESSIBLE parts or parts connected to them and HAZARDOUS LIVE parts, shall withstand surges due to transients, caused for example by thunderstorms and entering the apparatus through the antenna TERMINAL.

Compliance is checked by the following test:

The insulation between

- TERMINALS for the connection of antenna and MAINS supply TERMINALS,

and between

- MAINS supply TERMINALS and any other TERMINAL in case of apparatus providing supply voltages to other apparatus with antenna TERMINALS,

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

is subjected to 50 discharges at a maximum rate of 12/min, from a 1 nF capacitor charged to 10 kV in a test circuit, as shown in figure 5A.

NOTE During this test, the apparatus should not be energized.

After the test, the tested insulation shall comply with the requirements of 10.3.

10.2 Humidity treatment

The safety of the apparatus shall not be impaired by humidity conditions which may occur in the intended use.

Compliance is checked by the humidity treatment described in this subclause, followed immediately by the tests of 10.3.

Cable entries, if any, are left open. If knock-outs are provided, they are opened.

Electrical components, covers and other parts which can be removed BY HAND are removed and subjected, if necessary, to the humidity treatment with the main part.

The humidity treatment is carried out in a humidity chamber containing air with a relative humidity of 93 (+2, -3) %.

The temperature of the air, at all places where the apparatus can be located, is maintained at 30 (0, -2) °C.

Apparatus intended to be used in tropical climates are subjected to a temperature of 40 (+2, -2) °C and a relative humidity of 93 (+2, -3) %.

Before being placed in the chamber, the apparatus is brought to a temperature between the specified temperature and a 4 K higher temperature.

The apparatus is kept in the chamber for

- 5 days (120 h) for apparatus intended to be used in tropical climates,*
- 2 days (48 h) for other apparatus.*

NOTE 1 In most cases, the apparatus may be brought to the specified temperature by keeping it at this temperature for at least 4 h before the humidity treatment.

NOTE 2 The air in the chamber should be stirred and the chamber should be so designed that mist or condensed water will not precipitate on the apparatus.

NOTE 3 During this test, the apparatus should not be energized.

After this treatment, the apparatus shall show no damage in the sense of this standard.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

10.3 Insulation resistance and dielectric strength

10.3.1 The insulation of the insulating materials shall be adequate.

Compliance is checked in accordance with 10.3.2, and, unless otherwise stated, immediately after the humidity treatment according to 10.2.

NOTE In order to facilitate dielectric strength testing, components and subassemblies may be tested separately.

10.3.2 *The insulations listed in table 5 shall be tested:*

- *for insulation resistance with 500 V d.c.; and*
- *for dielectric strength as follows:*
 - *insulations stressed with d.c. voltage (RIPPLE FREE) are tested with a d.c. voltage;*
 - *insulations stressed with a.c. voltage are tested with an a.c. voltage at MAINS frequency.*

However, where corona, ionization, charge effects or the like may occur, a d.c. test voltage is recommended.

NOTE 1 Where there are capacitors across the insulation under test, it is recommended that d.c. test voltages are used.

Test voltages shall be as specified in table 5 for the appropriate grade of insulation (BASIC, SUPPLEMENTARY OR REINFORCED INSULATION) and for the OPERATING VOLTAGE U across the insulation.

For the purpose of determining the OPERATING VOLTAGE U , the following applies:

- *the apparatus is fed by its RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE;*
- *in case of a.c. voltages, the true peak value including periodic and non-periodic superimposed pulses with a half-value time longer than 50 ns shall be measured;*
- *in case of d.c. voltages, the peak value of any superimposed ripple shall be included;*
- *periodic and non-periodic transients with a half-value time not exceeding 50 ns shall be disregarded;*
- *unearthed ACCESSIBLE conductive parts shall be assumed to be connected to an earth TERMINAL or to a PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL or contact;*
- *where a transformer winding or other part is floating, i.e. not connected to a circuit which establishes its potential relative to earth, it shall be assumed to be connected to an earth TERMINAL or to a PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL or contact at the point which results in the highest OPERATING VOLTAGE being obtained;*
- *where DOUBLE INSULATION is used, the OPERATING VOLTAGE across the BASIC INSULATION shall be determined by imagining a short-circuit across the SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION, and vice versa. For insulation between transformer windings, the short-circuit shall be assumed to take place at the point at which the highest OPERATING VOLTAGE is produced across the other insulation;*

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

- for insulations between two transformer windings, the highest voltage between any two points in the two windings shall be used, taking into account external voltages to which the windings may be connected;
- for insulations between a transformer winding and another part, the highest voltage between any point of the winding and the other part shall be used.

The test voltages shall be obtained from a suitable source so designed that, when the output *TERMINALS* are short-circuited after the test voltage has been adjusted to the appropriate level, the output current is at least 200 mA.

An over-current device shall not trip when the output current is less than 100 mA.

Care shall be taken that the value of the test voltage applied is measured within $\pm 3\%$.

Initially, not more than half of the prescribed test voltage is applied, then it is raised rapidly to the full value which is held for 1 min.

The measurements of the insulation resistance and the dielectric strength tests are made in the humidity chamber, or in the room in which the apparatus was brought to the prescribed temperature, after the reassembly of those parts which may have been removed.

The apparatus is deemed to comply with the requirement, if the insulation resistance measured after 1 min is not less than the values given in table 5 and no flash-over or breakdown occurs during the dielectric strength test.

When testing enclosures of insulating material, a metal foil is pressed tightly against *ACCESSIBLE* parts.

For apparatus incorporating both *REINFORCED INSULATION* and lower grades of insulation, care shall be taken that the voltage applied to the *REINFORCED INSULATION* does not overstress *BASIC OR SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION*.

NOTE 2 *ACCESSIBLE* conductive parts may be connected together during the dielectric strength test.

NOTE 3 An instrument to carry out the dielectric strength test on thin sheets of insulating material is described in figure 6.

NOTE 4 The test is not made on insulation the short-circuiting of which does not cause any electric shock hazard, for example in the case where one end of a secondary winding of an *ISOLATING TRANSFORMER* is connected to an *ACCESSIBLE* conductive part, the other end need not meet any insulation requirement with regard to the same *ACCESSIBLE* conductive part.

Resistors, capacitors and RC-units complying with 14.1, 14.2.1 and 14.2.2 respectively, connected in parallel with the insulations to be tested, are disconnected. Inductors and windings which otherwise would prevent the test from being made, are also disconnected.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Table 5 DU – Test voltages for dielectric strength test and values for insulation resistance

Insulation	Insulation resistance	AC test voltage (peak) or DC test voltage
1 Between parts of different polarity DIRECTLY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS.	2 MΩ	For rated MAINS voltages ≤ 150 V (r.m.s.): 1 410 V For rated MAINS voltages > 150 V (r.m.s.): 2 120 V
2 Between parts separated by BASIC INSULATION or by SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION.	2 MΩ	Curve A of figure 7. <u>See Note 1 for MAINS voltage 105 – 130 V (r.m.s.)</u>
3 Between parts separated by REINFORCED INSULATION.	4 MΩ	Curve B of figure 7. <u>See Note 1 for MAINS voltage 105 – 130 V (r.m.s.)</u>
NOTE 1 With respect to MAINS voltage in the range of 105 – 130 V (r.m.s.), the test voltages are considered to be 1 414 V peak for BASIC and SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION and 2 828 V peak for REINFORCED INSULATION.		
NOTE 2 Curves A and B of figure 7 are defined by the following points:		
OPERATING VOLTAGE U (peak)	Test voltage (peak)	
	Curve A	Curve B
35 V	707 V	1 410 V
354 V		4 240 V
1 410 V	3 980 V	
10 kV	15 kV	15 kV
>10 kV	1,5U V	1,5U V

11 DC Fault conditions

Component power supplies and their power transformers complying with the construction and test requirements of UL 1310, UL 1950, Third Edition, or UL 60950 are considered to fulfill the test requirements of this clause.

NOTE To check compliance with the requirements of this clause, it may be necessary to repeat the dielectric strength tests. However, it is advisable to identify beforehand all the insulations to be tested with a higher test voltage in order to avoid more than one humidity treatment.

11.1 DR Electric shock hazard

Protection against electric shock shall still exist when the apparatus is operated under fault conditions.

Compliance is checked by the tests described in clause 9, modified as specified below and under fault conditions.

For contacts of TERMINALS

– the permissible values of 9.1.1.1 a) for other than audio signals, are increased to 70 V (peak) a.c. and 120 V d.c.,

NOTE 1 The limits under normal operating conditions for audio signals should not be exceeded under fault conditions.

and

– the permissible values of 9.1.1.1 b) are increased to $U_1 = 70 \text{ V (peak)}$ and $U_2 = 1,4 \text{ V (peak)}$ for a.c. and to $U_1 = 4 \text{ V}$ for d.c., twice the value given

provided that the connectors for antenna and/or earth cannot be inserted into the TERMINAL under test.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

NOTE 2 It is recommended that for apparatus intended to be used in tropical climates, the values given above be halved.

If short-circuiting or disconnecting a resistor, a capacitor, an RC-unit, an optocoupler or an inductor causes an infringement of the requirements, the apparatus is still deemed to be satisfactory if the component complies with the relevant requirements of clause 14 (see 4.3.4).

If, during the tests, an insulation mentioned in table 5 is subjected to a voltage exceeding the voltage occurring under normal operating conditions, and if this increase involves a higher test voltage according to 10.3, this insulation shall withstand a test for dielectric strength at the higher test voltage, unless the higher voltage is due to the short-circuiting or disconnection of a resistor, a capacitor, an RC-unit, an optocoupler or an inductor complying with the relevant requirements of clause 14.

11.2 Heating

When the apparatus is operated under fault conditions, no part shall reach such a temperature that:

- there is a danger of fire to the surroundings of the apparatus;
- safety is impaired by abnormal heat developed in the apparatus.

Compliance is checked by the tests of 11.2.1.

During the tests, any flame inside the apparatus shall extinguish within a period of 10 s.

During the test, solder may soften or become fluid as long as the apparatus does not become unsafe within the sense of this standard.

In addition, solder terminations shall not be used as a protective mechanism with the exception of solder which is intended to melt, for example that of THERMAL LINKS.

11.2.1 DR Measurement of temperature rises

The apparatus is operated under fault conditions and the temperature rises are measured after a steady state has been attained, but not later than after 4 h operation of the apparatus.

During this period, the apparatus shall meet the requirements of 11.2.2 up to and including 11.2.6.

In the case where an applied fault condition results in the interruption of the current before steady state has been reached, the temperature rises are measured immediately after the interruption.

If the temperature is limited by fuses, the following additional test is carried out if necessary in relation to the characteristic of the fuse.

The fuse-link is short-circuited during the test and the current passing through both the fuse-link and the short-circuit link under the relevant fault condition, is measured.

- if this current remains less than 2,1 times the rated current of the fuse-link, the temperatures are measured after a steady state has been attained;*

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

— if this current is either immediately 2,1 times the rated current of the fuse-link or more, or reaches this value after a period of time equal to the maximum pre-arcing time for the relevant current through the fuse-link under consideration, both the fuse-link and the short-circuit link are removed after an additional time corresponding to the maximum pre-arcing time of the fuse-link under consideration and the temperatures are measured immediately.

If the fuse resistance influences the current of the relevant circuit, the maximum resistance value of the fuse-link shall be taken into account when establishing the value of the current.

NOTE—The above test is based on the fusing characteristics specified in IEC 60127, which also gives the information necessary to calculate the maximum resistance value.

In determining the current through the fuse, consideration should be given to the fact that this current may vary as a function of time. It should therefore be measured as soon as possible after switching on, taking into account any delay time for full operation of the circuit under consideration.

If a temperature rise exceeding the value given in table 3 is due to the short-circuiting of an insulation, the apparatus is not deemed to be unsatisfactory, but this insulation shall withstand a dielectric strength test as described in 10.3.

If a temperature rise exceeding the value given in table 3 is due to the short-circuiting or disconnecting of a resistor, a capacitor, an RC-unit, an optocoupler or an inductor, the apparatus is deemed to be satisfactory if the component complies with the relevant requirements of clause 14 (see 4.3.4).

If a temperature rise exceeding the value given in table 3 is due to the disconnection of a resistor, the overload test specified in 14.1 b) is repeated on the resistor mounted in the apparatus, including the connections made by the manufacturer. During this test, the connections shall not fail.

11.2.2 ACCESSIBLE parts

The temperature rise of ACCESSIBLE parts shall not exceed the values given in table 3, item a) "Fault conditions".

11.2.3 Parts, other than windings, providing electrical insulation

The temperature rise of insulating parts, other than windings, the failure of which would cause an infringement of the requirements of 11.1, 11.2.2, 11.2.4 and 11.2.6, shall not exceed the values given in table 3, item b) "Fault conditions", with the following exceptions.

- For PRINTED BOARDS, the temperature rise may exceed, for a maximum period of 5 min, the values given in table 3, item b) "Fault conditions", by not more than 100 K.
- For PRINTED BOARDS withstanding the flame test described in 20.1.3, the temperature rise may exceed
 - a) the values given in table 3, item b) "Fault conditions", by not more than 100 K on one or more small areas providing that the total area does not exceed 2 cm² for each fault condition and no electric shock hazard is involved, or
 - b) for a maximum period of 5 min, the values given in table 3, item b) "Fault conditions", up to the temperature rise value given for "other parts" in table 3, item e) "Fault conditions", on one or more small areas, providing that the total area does not exceed 2 cm² for each fault condition and no electric shock hazard is involved.

UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL

If a temperature rise value is exceeded and if there is doubt as to whether or not an electric shock hazard exists, a short-circuit is applied between the conductive parts concerned and the tests of 11.1 are repeated.

If conductors on PRINTED BOARDS are interrupted, peeled or loosened during the test, the apparatus is still deemed to be satisfactory if all of the following conditions are met:

- the PRINTED BOARD complies with 20.1.3;*
- the interruption is not a POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE;*
- the apparatus complies with the requirements of this subclause with the interrupted conductors bridged;*
- any peeled or loosened conductor does not reduce the CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES between HAZARDOUS LIVE parts and ACCESSIBLE parts below the values specified in clause 13.*

For CLASS I apparatus, the continuity of any protective earthing connection shall be maintained; loosening of such a conductor is not allowed.

11.2.4 Parts acting as a support or a mechanical barrier.

The temperature rise of parts whose mechanical failure may cause an infringement of the requirements of 9.1.1 shall not exceed the values given in table 3, item c) "Fault conditions".

11.2.5 Windings

The temperature rise of windings shall not exceed the values given in table 3, items b) and d) "Fault conditions", with the following exceptions.

- If the temperature is limited due to the operation of replaceable or resettable protective devices, the temperature rises may be exceeded until 2 min after the operation of the device.*

In the case of windings providing protection against electric shock or where a fault could result in a fire hazard, the test is carried out three times and the winding is then subjected to the dielectric strength test of 10.3 without the humidity treatment of 10.2, starting within 1 min after the temperature rise measurement.

No failure is allowed.

- If the temperature is limited due to the operation of an integral non-resettable or a non-replaceable protective device or due to the open circuiting of a winding, the temperature rises may be exceeded, but the test shall be carried out three times using new components.*

In the case of windings providing protection against electric shock or where a fault could result in a fire hazard, the winding is then in each case subjected to the dielectric strength test of 10.3 without the humidity treatment of 10.2, starting within 1 min after the temperature rise measurement.

No failure is allowed.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

- Higher temperature rises are allowed for windings, provided a failure of their insulation cannot cause an electric shock hazard or a fire hazard and that they are not connected to sources capable of supplying power in excess of 5 W under normal operating conditions.
- If a temperature rise value is exceeded and if there is doubt as to whether or not a hazard exists, the insulation concerned is short-circuited and the tests of 11.1 and 11.2.2 are repeated.

NOTE If the insulation is incorporated in a winding in such a way that its temperature rise cannot be measured directly, the temperature is assumed to be the same as that of the winding wire.

11.2.6 Parts not subject to a limit under 11.2.1 to 11.2.5 inclusive

According to the nature of the material, the temperature rise of the part shall not exceed the values given in table 3, item e), "Fault conditions".

12 DC Mechanical strength

Component power supply adapters, and their enclosures complying with the construction and test requirements of UL 1310, UL 1950, Third Edition, or UL 60950 are considered to fulfill the construction and test requirements of this clause.

12.1 Complete apparatus

The apparatus shall have adequate mechanical strength and be so constructed as to withstand such handling as may be expected during intended use.

The apparatus shall be so constructed that short-circuiting of insulations between HAZARDOUS LIVE parts and ACCESSIBLE conductive parts or parts conductively connected to those, for example by unintended loosening of screws, is prevented.

Compliance, except for devices forming a part of the MAINS plug, is checked by the tests of 12.1.1, 12.1.2, 12.1.3, 12.1.4 and 12.1.5.

NOTE Devices forming a part of the MAINS plug are subjected to the tests as described in 15.4.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

12.1.1 Bump test

Apparatus with a mass exceeding 7 kg are subjected to the following test.

The apparatus is placed on a horizontal wooden support, which is allowed to fall 50 times from a height of 5 cm onto a wooden table.

After the test, the apparatus shall show no damage in the sense of this standard.

12.1.2 Vibration test

TRANSPORTABLE APPARATUS intended to be used for audio amplification of musical instruments, PORTABLE APPARATUS and apparatus having a metal enclosure, are subjected to a vibration endurance conditioning by sweeping, as specified in IEC 60068-2-6.

The apparatus is fastened in its intended positions of use to the vibration-generator by means of straps round the enclosure. The direction of vibration is vertical, and the severity is:

– Duration	30 min
– Amplitude	0,35 mm
– Frequency range	10 Hz...55 Hz...10 Hz
– Sweep range	approximately 1 octave/min.

After the test, the apparatus shall show no damage in the sense of this standard, in particular, no connection or part the loosening of which might impair safety shall have loosened.

12.1.3 DU Impact test

~~The apparatus is held firmly against a rigid support and is subjected to three blows from a spring-operated impact hammer according to IEC 60068-2-75, applied with a kinetic energy just before impact of 0,5 J to every point of the enclosure that protects HAZARDOUS LIVE parts and is likely to be weak, including ventilation areas, drawers in the pulled-out position, handles, levers, switch knobs and the like, by pressing the release cone perpendicularly to the surface.~~

~~This impact hammer test is also made on windows, lenses, signal lamps and their covers, etc., but only if they protrude from the enclosure by more than 5 mm or if the area of the plane projection of the individual surface area exceeds 1 cm².~~

~~Moreover, the non-ventilated solid The areas of the enclosure that protect HAZARDOUS LIVE parts shall be subjected to a single impact, specified in table 6.~~

~~The impact specified in table 6 shall be caused by allowing a solid, smooth, steel ball of (50 ± 1) mm in diameter and with the mass of approximately 500 g to fall freely from rest through a vertical distance, as illustrated in figure 8, and strike the enclosure with the specified impact in a direction perpendicular to the enclosure surface.~~

After the test, the apparatus shall withstand the dielectric strength test as specified in 10.3 and shall show no damage in the sense of this standard; in particular:

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

- HAZARDOUS LIVE parts shall not have become ACCESSIBLE,
- insulating barriers shall not have been damaged,
- those parts subjected to the impact hammer test shall show no visible cracks.

NOTE 3 Damage to the finish, small dents which do not reduce CLEARANCES OR CREEPAGE DISTANCES below the specified values, cracks which are not visible to the naked eye, surface cracks in fibre-reinforced mouldings and the like are ignored.

When considering the results of the impact test, a mechanically weak material or construction, such as a speaker cone, is not identified as a barrier.

Table 6 DU – Impact test on the enclosure of apparatus

Enclosure part	Impact (Joules +/-1%)
Top, sides, back, and front of PORTABLE APPARATUS or table-top apparatus.	2 J
All exposed surfaces of fixed mounted apparatus.	2 J
Top, sides, back, and front of floor-standing apparatus.	3,5 J
NOTE 1—To apply the required impact energy, the correct height is calculated by $h = E/(g \times m)$ Where: h —is the vertical distance in metres; E —is the impact energy in Joules; g —in the gravitational acceleration of 9,81 m/s ² ; m —is the mass of the steel ball in kilograms.	
NOTE 2—For mechanical strength of picture tubes and protection against the effects of implosion, see clause 18.	

Table 6 DU – Apparatus impact test

Part	Impact, joules	Results in addition to those specified in 12.1.3
<u>Top, sides, back, and front of portable, table-top, or undercabinet apparatus intended for household use, except for parts itemized elsewhere in this table.</u>	<u>2.0</u>	=
<u>Top, sides, back, and front of floor-mounted apparatus intended for household use except for parts itemized elsewhere in this table</u>	<u>3.5</u>	=
<u>Top, sides, back, and front of apparatus intended for commercial use</u>	<u>7.0</u>	=
<u>Glass doors and shelves used in associated stands</u>	<u>2.0</u>	=
<u>Picture-Tube Enclosures</u>		<u>Openings shall not develop such that the projected area of the opening onto a plane perpendicular to a line passing through the center of the opening and any point on the central axis of the bulb section of the picture tube shall not exceed 130 mm² unless the minor dimension of the projected area is no more than 10 mm.</u>
<u>CRT > 16 cm</u>	<u>7.0</u>	
<u>CRT ≤ 16 cm</u>	<u>2.0</u>	
<u>Transparent screen over tube face</u>		<u>Shall not render the window or its mounting means unusable; shall not crack a tempered-glass window.</u>
<u>CRT > 16 cm</u>	<u>7.0</u>	
<u>CRT ≤ 16 cm</u>	<u>1.0</u>	

UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL

Table 6 DU – Apparatus impact test Continued on Next Page

Table 6 DU – Apparatus impact test Continued

Part	Impact, joules	Results in addition to those specified in 12.1.3
<u>Apparatus intended for household use</u> <u>Unprotected^a buttons, controls, knobs and shafts:</u> <u>Protected^b buttons, controls, knobs and shafts:</u> <u>Buttons, controls, knobs and shafts located within a compartment having a nondetachable door or cover</u>	<u>2.0</u> <u>1.0</u> <u>0.7</u>	<u>CREEPAGE and CLEARANCE shall not be reduced to a value less than that in table 12 if a conductive part breaks off and falls into the enclosure</u>
<u>^a An unprotected part is one that contacts or passes through an infinite plane placed as close as possible to all top, side, front, or back surfaces with all parts in place.</u>		
<u>^b A protected part is one that does not contact or pass through the infinite plane described in note a).</u>		

12.1.4 DU Drop test

PORTABLE APPARATUS having a mass of 7 kg or less are subjected to a drop test. A sample of the complete apparatus is subjected to three impacts that results from being dropped through a distance of 1,0 m onto a horizontal surface in positions likely to produce the most adverse results. As an alternative, any number from one to three samples are permitted to be used in any combination that results in a total of three drops.

The horizontal surface consists of hardwood at least 13 mm thick, mounted on two layers of plywood each 19 mm to 20 mm thick, all supported on a concrete or equivalent non-resilient floor.

For each drop, the test sample shall strike the surface in a different position. When applicable, the sample is to be dropped with the batteries specified by the manufacturer.

Upon conclusion of the test, the apparatus need not be operational, but shall withstand the dielectric strength test as specified in 10.3, in particular:

- HAZARDOUS LIVE parts shall not have become ACCESSIBLE,*
- insulating barriers shall not have been damaged, and*
- CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES shall not have been reduced.*

The test criteria shall not be applied through openings in the face of the picture tube.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

12.1.5 Stress relief test

Enclosures of moulded or formed thermoplastic materials shall be so constructed that any shrinkage or distortion of the material due to release of internal stresses caused by the moulding or forming operation does not result in the exposure of hazardous parts.

A sample consisting of the complete apparatus, or of the complete enclosure together with any supporting framework, is subjected in a circulating air oven to a temperature 10 K higher than the maximum temperature observed on the enclosure during the test of 7.1.3, but not less than 70 °C, for a period of 7 h, then permitted to cool to room temperature.

For large apparatus where it is impractical to test a complete enclosure, it is permitted to use a portion of the enclosure representative of the complete assembly with regard to thickness and shape, and including any mechanical support members.

After the test, dangerous moving parts or HAZARDOUS LIVE parts shall not have become ACCESSIBLE.

NOTE When a portion of the enclosure is tested, as a representative of the completed enclosure, it may be necessary to reassemble the apparatus to determine compliance.

12.1.6 DU Handle strength test

12.1.6 revised November 18, 2005

A handle, its securing means, or that portion of the ENCLOSURE to which it is secured shall not break or crack, and the handle shall not detach.

Compliance is checked by the following test:

The weight of the apparatus, plus a weight that exerts a force of three times the weight of the apparatus, is to be uniformly applied over a 75 mm width at the center of the handle, without clamping. The load is to be started at zero and gradually increased so that the test value is attained in 5 – 10 s and maintained for 1 min. When more than one handle is provided, the force is to be distributed between the handles. The distribution of the forces is to be determined by measuring the percentage of the apparatus weight sustained by each handle with the apparatus in the intended carrying position. When the apparatus is furnished with more than one handle, and is capable of being carried by only one handle, each handle shall be capable of sustaining the total force.

If polymeric materials are involved in the construction, this test shall be conducted both before and after the stress relief test described in 12.1.5.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

12.2 Fixing of actuating elements

Actuating elements, for instance knobs, push-buttons, keys and levers, shall be so constructed and fastened that their use will not impair the protection against electric shock.

Compliance is checked by the following tests.

Fixing screws, if any, are loosened and then tightened with 2/3 of the torque given in table 20 and finally loosened for 1/4 turn.

The actuating elements are then subjected for 1 min to a torque corresponding to a force of 100 N applied at the periphery, but not more than 1 Nm and, for 1 min, to an axial pull of 100 N. If the mass of the apparatus is less than 10 kg, the pulling force is limited to the value corresponding to the mass of the apparatus but not less than 25 N.

For actuating elements such as push-buttons, keys and the like, on which only a pressure is exerted during intended use and which do not protrude more than 15 mm from the surface of the apparatus, the pulling force is limited to 50 N.

After these tests, the apparatus shall show no damage in the sense of this standard.

12.3 REMOTE CONTROL devices held in hand

Parts of REMOTE CONTROL devices intended to be held in hand and containing HAZARDOUS LIVE parts, shall have adequate mechanical strength and be so constructed as to withstand such handling as may be expected.

Compliance is checked by the following test:

The REMOTE CONTROL device, with its flexible cord, if any, shortened to 10 cm, is tested according to IEC 60068-2-32, procedure 2.

The barrel is rotated 50 times if the mass of the control device is up to 250 g and 25 times if the mass is greater than 250 g.

After the test, the device shall show no damage in the sense of this standard.

Parts of cable-connected REMOTE CONTROL devices, not intended to be held in hand, are tested as a part of the attended apparatus.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

12.4 Drawers

Drawers which are intended to be partially pulled out from the apparatus shall have a stop of adequate mechanical strength in order to prevent HAZARDOUS LIVE parts becoming ACCESSIBLE.

Compliance is checked by the following test:

The drawer is pulled out in the intended manner until the stop prevents further movement. A force of 50 N is then applied for 10 s in the most unfavourable direction.

After the test, the apparatus shall show no damage in the sense of this standard; in particular no HAZARDOUS LIVE parts shall become ACCESSIBLE.

12.5 Antenna coaxial sockets mounted on the apparatus

Antenna coaxial sockets mounted on the apparatus and incorporating parts or components which isolate HAZARDOUS LIVE parts from ACCESSIBLE parts, shall be constructed so as to withstand such mechanical stresses as may be expected in the intended use.

Compliance is checked by the following tests, which are made in the order given.

After these tests, the apparatus shall show no damage in the sense of this standard.

Endurance test

A test plug as shown in figure 9 is inserted and withdrawn from the socket 100 times. Care is to be taken not to damage the socket intentionally during insertion and withdrawal of the test plug.

Impact test

A test plug as shown in figure 9 is inserted into the socket and three successive blows from the spring-operated hammer according to IEC 60068-2-75 are applied with a kinetic energy just before impact of 0,5 J to the same point on the plug in the most unfavourable direction.

Torque test

A test plug as shown in figure 9 is inserted into the socket and a force of 50 N is applied for 10 s, without jerks, at right angles to the axis of the plug, the radial direction of the force being such as to stress those parts of the socket which are likely to be weak. The force is determined by using, for example, a spring balance attached by means of the hole in the test plug.

This test is made 10 times.

NOTE When antenna coaxial sockets different from IEC 60169-2 [3] are tested, a corresponding test plug of the same length is used for the tests.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

12.6 Telescoping or rod antennas

A telescoping or rod antenna shall be provided with a minimum 6,0 mm diameter button or ball on the end.

A telescoping or rod antenna shall be provided with a guard or barrier that prevents any part of the antenna or its mounting hardware from falling into the apparatus and contacting HAZARDOUS LIVE parts in the event the antenna or any part of it were to break.

Mounting hardware refers only to parts that are used to mount the antenna or are subject to stress when the antenna is subject to movement.

12.6.1 Physical securement

An antenna end piece and the sections of a telescoping antenna shall be secured in such a manner as to prevent removal.

Compliance is checked by the following test:

The end piece shall be subjected to a 20 N force along the major axis of the antenna for a period of 1 min. In addition, if the end piece is attached by screw threads, a loosening torque is to be applied to the end pieces of five additional samples. The torque is to be gradually applied with the rod fixed. When the specific torque is reached, it is to be maintained for no more than 15 s. The holding time for any one sample shall not be less than 5 s and the average holding time of the five samples shall not be less than 8 s.

The value of torque is given in table 7.

Table 7 – Torque values for end-piece test

End-piece diameter mm	Torque Nm
Less than 8,0	0,3
Equal to, or greater than, 8,0	0,6

12.7 DU Wall or ceiling mounting means

12.7 deleted November 18, 2005

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

12.8 DU Adhesives

12.8 revised November 18, 2005

Apparatus enclosures, barriers, components, and leads that rely only on adhesives as a fastening means to prevent a risk of electric shock as determined in clause 9.1.1 shall withstand the oven and humidity conditioning tests described without deterioration of the adhesive.

Two samples are to be conditioned as follows:

a) One sample placed in an air-circulating oven for 7 days at 100.0 ± 1.0 °C; 14 days at 90.0 ± 1.0 °C; 21 days at 87.0 ± 1.0 °C; or 60 days at 82.0 ± 1.0 °C; and

b) One sample for 7 days in an environment of 85 ± 5 % relative humidity at 32.0 ± 2.0 °C.

Compliance is checked by the relevant tests in UL 746C.

12.8.1 DU Relocated to Clause 5 November 18, 2005

13 DC CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES

Component power supplies and their power transformers complying with the construction and test requirements of UL 1310, UL 1950, Third Edition, or UL 60950 are considered to fulfill the creepage and clearance requirements of this clause.

13.1 General

CLEARANCES shall be so dimensioned that overvoltage transients which may enter the apparatus, and peak voltages which may be generated within the apparatus, do not break down the CLEARANCE. Detailed requirements are given in 13.3.

CREEPAGE DISTANCES shall be so dimensioned that, for a given OPERATING VOLTAGE and pollution degree, no flashover or breakdown (tracking) of insulation will occur. Detailed requirements are given in 13.4.

NOTE In order to determine the CLEARANCE, the peak value of the OPERATING VOLTAGE is measured. For the determination of the CREEPAGE DISTANCE, the r.m.s. or d.c. value of the OPERATING VOLTAGE is measured.

The methods of measuring CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES are given in annex E.

It is permitted for CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES to be divided by intervening, unconnected (floating) conductive parts, such as unused contacts of a connector, provided that the sum of the individual distances meets the specified minimum requirements (see figure E.8).

The various pollution degrees for the minimum CLEARANCE and CREEPAGE DISTANCE values given, apply as follows:

- pollution degree 1 for components and assemblies which are sealed so as to exclude dust and moisture;
- pollution degree 2 generally for apparatus covered by the scope of this standard;

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

- pollution degree 3 where a local internal environment within the apparatus is subject to conductive pollution or to dry non-conductive pollution which could become conductive due to expected condensation, or the apparatus is located in an area where the external environment is such that conductive pollution or dry non-conductive pollution which could become conductive, is present.

Except for insulation between parts of different polarity DIRECTLY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS, CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES smaller than those specified are allowed but are subject to the requirements of 4.3.1, 4.3.2 and 11.2.

13.2 Determination of OPERATING VOLTAGE

13.2 revised November 18, 2005

In determining the OPERATING VOLTAGE, all of the following requirements apply:

- *the OPERATING VOLTAGE between any point in a circuit CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS and earth, and between any point in a circuit CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS and a circuit not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS, shall be assumed to be the greatest of the following:*
 - *the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE or the highest measured voltage between such points during operation at the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE, or*
 - *the upper voltage of the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE range or the highest measured voltage between such points during operation at any value within the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE range;*
- *unearthed ACCESSIBLE conductive parts shall be assumed to be earthed;*
- *where a wire-wound component or other part is floating, i.e. not connected to a circuit which establishes its potential relative to earth, it shall be assumed to be earthed at the point by which the highest OPERATING VOLTAGE is obtained;*
- *where DOUBLE INSULATION is used, the OPERATING VOLTAGE across the BASIC INSULATION shall be determined by imagining a short circuit across the SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION, and vice-versa. For DOUBLE INSULATION between windings of a wire-wound component, the short circuit shall be assumed to take place at the point by which the highest OPERATING VOLTAGE is produced in the other insulation;*
- *except as permitted below, for insulation between two windings of a wire-wound component, the highest voltage between any two points in the two windings shall be used, taking into account external voltages to which the windings will be connected;*
- *except as permitted below, for insulation between a winding of a wire-wound component and another part, the highest voltage between any point on the winding and the other part shall be used.*

If the insulation of a wire-wound component has different OPERATING VOLTAGES along the length of the winding, it is permitted to vary CLEARANCES, CREEPAGE DISTANCES and distances through insulation accordingly.

NOTE An example of such a construction is a 30 kV winding, consisting of multiple bobbins connected in series, and earthed at one end.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

13.3 CLEARANCES

13.3.1 General

13.3.1 revised November 18, 2005

It is permitted to use either the following method or the alternative method in annex J for a particular component or subassembly or for the whole apparatus.

NOTE 1 The advantages of annex J are as follows:

- CLEARANCES are aligned with the basic safety publication IEC 60664-1, and are therefore harmonised with other safety publications (for example for transformers);
- attenuation of transients within the apparatus is considered, including attenuation of transients in circuits CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS.

NOTE 2 CLEARANCE requirements are based on the expected overvoltage transients which may enter the apparatus from the a.c. MAINS. According to IEC 60664-1, the magnitude of these transients is determined by the nominal MAINS voltage and the supply arrangements. These transients are categorised according to IEC 60664-1 into four groups as overvoltage categories I to IV (also known as installation categories I to IV).

NOTE 3 The design of solid insulation and CLEARANCES should be co-ordinated in such a way that if an incident overvoltage transient exceeds the limits of overvoltage category II, the solid insulation can withstand a higher voltage than the CLEARANCES.

For all a.c. power systems, the a.c. MAINS voltage in tables 8, 9 and 10 is the line-to-neutral voltage.

NOTE 4 In Norway, due to the IT power distribution system used, the a.c. MAINS voltage is considered to be equal to the line-to-line voltage, and will remain 230 V in case of a single earth fault.

The specified CLEARANCES are not applicable to the air gap between the contacts of thermostats, THERMAL CUT-OUTS, overload protection devices, switches of microgap construction, and similar components where the CLEARANCE varies with the contacts.

NOTE 5 For air gaps between contacts of disconnect switches, see 8.19.1

NOTE 6 CLEARANCES should not be reduced below the minima specified in this standard by manufacturing tolerances or by deformation which can occur due to handling, shock and vibration likely to be encountered during manufacture, transport and normal use.

Compliance with 13.3 is checked by measurement, taking into account annex E. The following conditions are applicable. There is no dielectric strength test to verify CLEARANCES.

Movable parts shall be placed in the most unfavourable position.

CLEARANCES between a loudspeaker voice coil and adjacent conductive parts shall be disregarded.

When measuring CLEARANCES from an enclosure of insulating material through a slot or opening in the enclosure, the ACCESSIBLE surface shall be considered to be conductive as if it were covered by metal foil wherever it can be touched by the test finger, according to test probe B of IEC 61032 (see 9.1.1.2), applied without appreciable force (see figure 3, point B).

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Forces shall be applied to any point on internal parts and then to the outside of conductive enclosures, in an endeavour to reduce the CLEARANCE while taking measurements. The forces shall have a value of

- 2 N for internal parts;*

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

No Text on This Page

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

- 30 N for enclosures.

The force shall be applied to the enclosure by means of the rigid test finger according to IEC 61032, test probe 11.

13.3.2 CLEARANCES IN CIRCUITS CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS

CLEARANCES in circuits CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS shall comply with the minimum dimensions in table 8 and, where appropriate, table 9.

Table 8 is applicable to apparatus that will not be subjected to transients exceeding overvoltage category II according to IEC 60664-1. The appropriate MAINS transient voltages are given in parentheses in each nominal a.c. MAINS voltage column. If higher transients are expected, additional protection might be necessary in the supply to the apparatus or in the installation.

NOTE 1 Annex J provides an alternative design method for higher transient voltages.

For circuits CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS operating on nominal a.c. MAINS voltages up to 300 V, if the peak OPERATING VOLTAGE in the circuit exceeds the peak value of the nominal a.c. MAINS voltage, the minimum CLEARANCE for the insulation under consideration is the sum of the following two values:

- the minimum CLEARANCE value from table 8 for an OPERATING VOLTAGE equal to the nominal a.c. MAINS voltage; and
- the appropriate additional CLEARANCE value from table 9.

NOTE 2 For the purpose of the use of table 8, it is assumed that the OPERATING VOLTAGE is equal to the nominal a.c. MAINS voltage.

For an OPERATING VOLTAGE to be used in determining CLEARANCES for circuits CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS in accordance with table 8:

- the peak value of any superimposed ripple on a d.c. voltage which exceeds that permitted in 2.3.3, shall be included;
- non-repetitive transients (due, for example, to atmospheric disturbances) shall not be taken into account;

NOTE 3 It is assumed that any such non-repetitive transients in a circuit not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS will not exceed the MAINS transient voltage of the circuit CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS.

- the voltage of any circuit not HAZARDOUS LIVE or TNV CIRCUIT (including ringing voltage) shall be regarded as zero;

and in accordance with table 9, where appropriate, for peak OPERATING VOLTAGES exceeding the values of the nominal a.c. MAINS voltage, the maximum peak OPERATING VOLTAGE shall be used.

NOTE 4 The total CLEARANCES obtained by the use of table 9 lie between the values required for homogeneous and inhomogeneous fields. As a result, these CLEARANCES may not assure conformance with the appropriate dielectric strength test in case of fields which are substantially inhomogeneous.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

NOTE 5 Use of CLEARANCE – tables 8 and 9:

Select the appropriate column in table 8 for the nominal a.c. MAINS voltage and pollution degree. Select the row appropriate to an OPERATING VOLTAGE equal to the a.c. MAINS voltage. Note the minimum CLEARANCE requirement.

Go to table 9. Select the appropriate column for the nominal a.c. MAINS voltage and pollution degree and choose the row in that column which covers the actual peak OPERATING VOLTAGE. Read the additional CLEARANCE required from one of the two right-hand columns and add this to the minimum CLEARANCE from table 8 to give the total minimum CLEARANCE.

Table 8 – Minimum CLEARANCES for insulation in circuits CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS and between such circuits and circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS

<i>CLEARANCES in millimetres</i>									
OPERATING VOLTAGE up to and including		Nominal a.c. MAINS voltage ≤ 150 V (MAINS transient voltage 1 500 V)				Nominal a.c. MAINS voltage >150 V ≤ 300 V (MAINS transient voltage 2 500 V)		Nominal a.c. MAINS voltage >300 V ≤ 600 V (MAINS transient voltage 4 000 V)	
		Pollution degrees 1 and 2		Pollution degree 3		Pollution degrees 1, 2 and 3		Pollution degrees 1, 2 and 3	
Voltage peak or d.c. V	Voltage r.m.s. (sinusoidal) V	B/S	R	B/S	R	B/S	R	B/S	R
210	150	1,0 (0,5)	2,0 (1,0)	1,3 (0,8)	2,6 (1,6)	2,0 (1,5)	4,0 (3,0)	3,2 (3,0)	6,4 (6,0)
420	300	B/S 2,0 (1,5) R 4,0 (3,0)						3,2 (3,0)	6,4 (6,0)
840	600	B/S 3,2 (3,0)		R 6,4 (6,0)					
1 400	1 000	B/S 4,2		R 6,4					
2 800	2 000					B/S/R 8,4			
7 000	5 000					B/S/R 17,5			
9 800	7 000					B/S/R 25			
14 000	10 000					B/S/R 37			
28 000	20 000					B/S/R 80			
42 000	30 000					B/S/R 130			

NOTE 1 The values in the table are applicable to BASIC (B), SUPPLEMENTARY (S) and REINFORCED (R) INSULATION.

NOTE 2 The values in parentheses are applicable to BASIC, SUPPLEMENTARY OR REINFORCED INSULATION only if manufacturing is subjected to a quality control programme (an example for such a programme is given in annex M). In particular, DOUBLE and REINFORCED INSULATION shall be subjected to ROUTINE TESTS for dielectric strength.

NOTE 3 For OPERATING VOLTAGES between 420 V (peak) or d.c. and 42 000 V (peak) or d.c., linear interpolation between the nearest two points and for values exceeding 42 000 (peak) or d.c. extrapolation is permitted, the calculated spacing being rounded up to the next higher 0,1 mm increment.

NOTE 4 For explanation of the pollution degrees, see 13.1.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Table 9 – Additional CLEARANCES for insulation in circuits CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS with peak OPERATING VOLTAGES exceeding the peak value of the nominal a.c. MAINS voltage and between such circuits and circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS

Nominal a.c. MAINS voltage ≤150 V		Nominal a.c. MAINS voltage >150 V ≤300 V	Additional CLEARANCE mm	
Pollution degrees 1 and 2	Pollution degree 3	Pollution degrees 1, 2 and 3	BASIC OR SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION	REINFORCED INSULATION
Maximum OPERATING VOLTAGE V (peak)	Maximum OPERATING VOLTAGE V (peak)	Maximum OPERATING VOLTAGE V (peak)		
210 (210)	210 (210)	420 (420)	0	0
298 (288)	294 (293)	493 (497)	0,1	0,2
386 (366)	379 (376)	567 (575)	0,2	0,4
474 (444)	463 (459)	640 (652)	0,3	0,6
562 (522)	547 (541)	713 (729)	0,4	0,8
650 (600)	632 (624)	787 (807)	0,5	1,0
738 (678)	715 (707)	860 (884)	0,6	1,2
826 (756)	800 (790)	933 (961)	0,7	1,4
914 (839)		1 006 (1 039)	0,8	1,6
1 002 (912)		1 080 (1 116)	0,9	1,8
1 090 (990)		1 153 (1 193)	1,0	2,0
		1 226 (1 271)	1,1	2,2
		1 300 (1 348)	1,2	2,4
		– (1 425)	1,3	2,6

NOTE 1 The values in parentheses shall be used when the values in parentheses in table 8 are used in accordance with note 2 of table 8.

NOTE 2 For OPERATING VOLTAGES above those shown in the table, linear extrapolation is allowed up to and including 2 000 V. For higher voltages reference should be made to IEC 60664-1.

NOTE 3 Linear interpolation between the nearest two points is permitted, the calculated spacing being rounded up to the next higher 0,1 mm increment.

NOTE 4 For explanation of the pollution degrees, see 13.1.

13.3.3 CLEARANCES in circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS

CLEARANCES in circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS shall comply with the minimum dimensions of table 10.

For an OPERATING VOLTAGE to be used in determining CLEARANCES for circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS in accordance with table 10:

- the peak value of any superimposed ripple on a d.c. voltage which exceeds that permitted in 2.3.3, shall be included;
- the peak value shall be used for non-sinusoidal voltages.

Circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS will normally be overvoltage category I if the MAINS is overvoltage category II; the maximum transients in overvoltage category I for various a.c. MAINS voltages are shown in the column headings of table 10. However, a floating circuit not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS in an apparatus that has anywhere a connector (for example antenna, signal input) that could be earthed, shall be subjected to the requirements for circuits CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS in tables 8 and 9 unless it is in apparatus with a PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL and either

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

- the floating circuit is separated from the circuit CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS by an earthed metal screen; or
- transients on the circuit not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS are below the permitted maximum value for overvoltage category I (for example due to being attenuated by connecting a component, such as a capacitor, between the circuit not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS and earth). See 13.3.4 for the method of measuring the transient level.

NOTE If the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK TRANSIENT VOLTAGE is known, the known value should be used.

If the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK TRANSIENT VOLTAGE is not known, an assumed transient rating of 800 V (peak) should be used for TNV-2 CIRCUITS and 1,5 kV (peak) for TNV-1 CIRCUITS and TNV-3 CIRCUITS.

If it is known that the incoming transients are attenuated within the apparatus, the value to be used should be determined in accordance with 13.3.4 b).

Table 10 – Minimum CLEARANCES in circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS

<i>CLEARANCES in millimetres</i>													
OPERATING VOLTAGE up to and including		Nominal a.c. MAINS voltage ≤150 V				Nominal a.c. MAINS voltage >150 V ≤300 V				Nominal a.c. MAINS voltage >300 V ≤600 V (transient rating for circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS 2 500 V) ^b		Circuits not subject to transient overvoltages ^a	
		(transient rating for circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS 800 V) ^b				(transient rating for circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS 1 500 V) ^b							
Voltage peak or d.c V	Voltage r.m.s. sinusoidal V	Pollution degrees 1 and 2		Pollution degree 3		Pollution degrees 1 and 2		Pollution degree 3		Pollution degrees 1, 2 and 3		Pollution degrees 1 and 2 only	
		B/S	R	B/S	R	B/S	R	B/S	R	B/S	R	B/S	R
71	50	0,7 (0,2)	1,4 (0,4)	1,3 (0,8)	2,6 (1,6)	1,0 (0,5)	2,0 (1,0)	1,3 (0,8)	2,6 (1,6)	2,0 (1,5)	4,0 (3,0)	0,4 (0,2)	0,8 (0,4)
140	100	0,7 (0,2)	1,4 (0,4)	1,3 (0,8)	2,6 (1,6)	1,0 (0,5)	2,0 (1,0)	1,3 (0,8)	2,6 (1,6)	2,0 (1,5)	4,0 (3,0)	0,7 (0,2)	1,4 (0,4)
210	150	0,9 (0,2)	1,8 (0,4)	1,3 (0,8)	2,6 (1,6)	1,0 (0,5)	2,0 (1,0)	1,3 (0,8)	2,6 (1,6)	2,0 (1,5)	4,0 (3,0)	0,7 (0,2)	1,4 (0,4)
280	200	B/S 1,4 (0,8) R 2,8 (1,6)								2,0 (1,5)	4,0 (3,0)	1,1 (0,2)	2,2 (0,4)
420	300	B/S 1,9 (1,0) R 3,8 (2,0)								2,0 (1,5)	4,0 (3,0)	1,4 (0,2)	2,8 (0,4)
700	500					B/S 2,5 R 5,0							
840	600					B/S 3,2 R 5,0							
1 400	1 000					B/S 4,2 R 5,0							
2 800	2 000					B/S/R 8,4 ^c							
7 000	5 000					B/S/R 17,5 ^c							
9 800	7 000					B/S/R 25 ^c							
14 000	10 000					B/S/R 37 ^c							
28 000	20 000					B/S/R 80 ^c							
42 000	30 000					B/S/R 130 ^c							

NOTE 1 The values in the table are applicable to BASIC (B), SUPPLEMENTARY (S) and REINFORCED (R) INSULATION.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Table 10 – Minimum CLEARANCES in circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS Continued on Next Page

Table 10 – Minimum CLEARANCES in circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS Continued

<i>CLEARANCES in millimetres</i>															
OPERATING VOLTAGE up to and including		Nominal a.c. MAINS voltage ≤150 V (transient rating for circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS 800 V) ^b				Nominal a.c. MAINS voltage >150 V ≤300 V (transient rating for circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS 1 500 V) ^b				Nominal a.c. MAINS voltage >300 V ≤600 V (transient rating for circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS 2 500 V) ^b				Circuits not subject to transient overvoltages ^a	
		Pollution degrees 1 and 2		Pollution degree 3		Pollution degrees 1 and 2		Pollution degree 3		Pollution degrees 1, 2 and 3		Pollution degrees 1 and 2 only			
Voltage peak or d.c. V	Voltage r.m.s. sinusoidal V	B/S	R	B/S	R	B/S	R	B/S	R	B/S	R	B/S	R		
<p>NOTE 2 The values in parentheses are applicable to BASIC, SUPPLEMENTARY OR REINFORCED INSULATION only if manufacturing is subjected to a quality control programme (an example for such a programme is given in annex M). In particular, DOUBLE and REINFORCED INSULATION shall be subjected to ROUTINE TESTS for dielectric strength.</p> <p>NOTE 3 For OPERATING VOLTAGES between 420 V (peak) or d.c. and 42 000 V (peak) or d.c., linear interpolation is permitted between the nearest two points, the calculated spacing being rounded up to the next higher 0,1 mm increment. For OPERATING VOLTAGES exceeding 42 000 V (peak) or d.c., linear extrapolation is permitted, the calculated spacing being rounded up to the next higher 0,1 mm increment.</p> <p>NOTE 4 For explanation of the pollution degrees, see 13.1.</p> <p>^a The values are applicable to d.c. circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS which are reliably connected to earth and have capacitive filtering which limits the peak-to-peak ripple to 10 % of the d.c. voltage.</p> <p>^b Where transients in the apparatus exceed this value, the appropriate higher CLEARANCE shall be used.</p> <p>^c Compliance with a CLEARANCE value of 8,4 mm or greater is not required if the CLEARANCE path is</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – entirely through air, or – wholly or partly along the surface of an insulating material of material group I (see 13.4); <p>and the insulation involved passes a dielectric strength test according to 10.3 using:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – an a.c. test voltage whose r.m.s. value is equal to 1,06 times the peak OPERATING VOLTAGE, OR – a d.c. test voltage equal to the peak value of the a.c. test voltage prescribed above. <p>If the CLEARANCE path is partly along the surface of a material that is not material group I, the dielectric strength test is conducted across the air gap only.</p>															

13.3.4 Measurement of transient voltages

The following tests are conducted only where it is required to determine whether or not transient voltages across the CLEARANCE in any circuit are lower than normal, due, for example, to the effect of a filter in the apparatus. The transient voltage across the CLEARANCE is measured using the following test procedure, and the CLEARANCE shall be based on the measured value.

During the tests, the apparatus is connected to its separate SUPPLY APPARATUS, if any, but is not connected to the MAINS, nor to any network, for example TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS, and any surge suppressors in circuits CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS are disconnected.

A voltage measuring device is connected across the CLEARANCE in question.

a) Transients due to MAINS overvoltages

To measure the reduced level of transients due to MAINS overvoltages, the impulse test generator of annex K is used to generate 1,2/50 μs impulses, with U_c equal to the MAINS transient voltage given in the column headings of table 8.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Three to six impulses of alternating polarity, with intervals of at least 1 s between impulses, are applied between each of the following points where relevant:

- line-to-line;
- all line conductors joined together and neutral;
- all line conductors joined together and protective earth;
- neutral and protective earth.

b) Transients due to TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK overvoltages

To measure the reduced level of transients due to TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK overvoltages, the impulse test generator of annex K is used to generate 10/700 μ s impulses, with U_c equal to the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK TRANSIENT VOLTAGE.

If the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK TRANSIENT VOLTAGE is not known for the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK in question, it shall be taken as

- 1 500 V_{peak} if the circuit connected to the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK is a TNV-1 CIRCUIT or a TNV-3 CIRCUIT; and
- 800 V_{peak} if the circuit connected to the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK is a TNV-0 CIRCUIT or a TNV-2 CIRCUIT.

Three to six impulses of alternating polarity, with intervals of at least 1 s between impulses, are applied between each of the following TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK connection points:

- each pair of TERMINALS (for example, A and B or tip and ring) in an interface;
- all TERMINALS of a single interface type joined together and earth.

13.4 DC CREEPAGE DISTANCES

13.4 revised November 18, 2005

CREEPAGE DISTANCES shall be not less than the appropriate minimum values specified in table 11, taking into account the value of the OPERATING VOLTAGE, the pollution degree and the material group.

If the CREEPAGE DISTANCE derived from table 11 is less than the applicable CLEARANCE as determined in 13.3 or annex J, then the value for that CLEARANCE shall be applied for the minimum CREEPAGE DISTANCE.

It is permitted to use minimum CREEPAGE DISTANCES equal to the applicable CLEARANCES for glass, mica, ceramic or similar materials.

For the OPERATING VOLTAGE to be used in determining CREEPAGE DISTANCES:

- the actual r.m.s. or d.c. value shall be used;

If the r.m.s. value is measured, care shall be taken that measuring instruments give true r.m.s. readings of non-sinusoidal waveforms as well as sinusoidal waveforms.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

- if the d.c. value is used, any superimposed ripple shall not be taken into account;
- short-term conditions (for example, cadenced ringing signals in TNV CIRCUITS) shall not be taken into account;
- short-term disturbances (for example transients) shall not be taken into account.

When determining the OPERATING VOLTAGE for a TNV CIRCUIT connected to a TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK whose characteristics are not known, the normal OPERATING VOLTAGES shall be assumed to be the following values:

- 60 V d.c. for TNV-1 CIRCUITS;
- 120 V d.c. for TNV-2 CIRCUITS and TNV-3 CIRCUITS.

Material groups are classified as follows:

Material group I	$600 \leq \text{CTI}$ (comparative tracking index)
Material group II	$400 \leq \text{CTI} < 600$
Material group IIIa	$175 \leq \text{CTI} < 400$
Material group IIIb	$100 \leq \text{CTI} < 175$

The material group is verified by evaluation of the test data for the material according to IEC 60112 using 50 drops of solution A UL 746A.

If the material group is not known, material group IIIb shall be assumed. If a CTI of 175 or greater is needed, and the data is not available, the material group can be established with a test for proof tracking index (PTI) as detailed in IEC 60112. A material may be included in a group if its PTI established by these tests is equal to, or greater than, the lower value of the CTI specified for the group.

Compliance is checked by measurement, taking into account annex E.

The following conditions are applicable.

Movable parts are placed in their most unfavourable positions.

For apparatus incorporating ordinary non-detachable power supply cords, CREEPAGE DISTANCE measurements are made with supply conductors of the largest cross-sectional area specified in 15.3.5, and also without conductors.

When measuring CREEPAGE DISTANCES from an enclosure of insulating material through a slot or opening in the enclosure, the ACCESSIBLE surface is considered to be conductive as if it were covered by metal foil wherever it can be touched by the test finger, according to test probe B of IEC 61032 (see 9.1.1.2), applied without appreciable force (see figure 3, point B).

NOTE The presence of adhesive on insulation tapes should be considered in determining the CTI.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Table 11 – Minimum CREEPAGE DISTANCES

<i>CREEPAGE DISTANCES in millimetres</i>							
OPERATING VOLTAGE up to and including V r.m.s. or d.c.	BASIC and SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION						
	Pollution degree 1	Pollution degree 2			Pollution degree 3		
	Material group I, II, IIIa or IIIb	Material group			Material group		
		I	II	IIIa or IIIb	I	II	IIIa or IIIb
≤ 50	a	0,6	0,9	1,2	1,5	1,7	1,9
100		0,7	1,0	1,4	1,8	2,0	2,2
125		0,8	1,1	1,5	1,9	2,1	2,4
150		0,8	1,1	1,6	2,0	2,2	2,5
200		1,0	1,4	2,0	2,5	2,8	3,2
250		1,3	1,8	2,5	3,2	3,6	4,0
300		1,6	2,2	3,2	4,0	4,5	5,0
400		2,0	2,8	4,0	5,0	5,6	6,3
600		3,2	4,5	6,3	8,0	9,6	10,0
800		4,0	5,6	8,0	10,0	11,0	12,5
1 000		5,0	7,1	10,0	12,5	14,0	16,0

NOTE 1 Linear interpolation is permitted between the nearest two points, the calculated spacing being rounded to the next higher 0,1 mm increment.

NOTE 2 For higher voltages table 4 of IEC 60664-1 may be used.

NOTE 3 For REINFORCED INSULATION, the values for CREEPAGE DISTANCE are twice the values for BASIC INSULATION in this table.

NOTE 4 For explanation of the pollution degrees, see 13.1.

^a No minimum CREEPAGE DISTANCES are specified for insulation in pollution degree 1. The minimum CLEARANCES apply, as determined in 13.3 or annex J.

13.5 PRINTED BOARDS

13.5.1 DC The minimum CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES between conductors, one of which may be CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS, ON PRINTED BOARDS complying with the pull-off and peel strength requirements of ~~IEC 60249-2~~ UL 796 are given in figure 10, and for which the following applies:

- these distances only apply as far as overheating is concerned (see 11.2) to the conductors themselves, not to mounted components or associated solder connections.
- coatings of lacquer or the like, except coatings according to ~~IEC 60664-3~~ UL 746C, are ignored when measuring the distances.

13.5.2 DC For ~~type B~~ coated PRINTED BOARDS, insulation between conductors shall comply with the requirements of ~~IEC 60664-3~~ UL 746C. This applies only to BASIC INSULATION.

NOTE FOR SUCH PRINTED BOARDS, CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES under the coating do not exist.

13.5.2 revised November 18, 2005

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

13.6 Jointed insulation

13.6 revised November 18, 2005

Distances between conductive parts along uncemented joints shall be considered as CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES for which the values of 13.3 or annex J and 13.4 apply.

For reliably cemented joints, complying with the following tests, CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES do not exist. In this case only 8.8 applies.

Compliance is checked by inspection, measurement and test.

For this test, enamelled winding wires, if any, are replaced by uninsulated wires.

The materials are considered to be cemented together, if they withstand the following test.

Three apparatus, components or subassemblies are subjected 10 times to the following temperature cycle:

- 68 h at $(X \pm 2)$ °C,*
- 1 h at (25 ± 2) °C*
- 2 h at (0 ± 2) °C,*
- 1 h at (25 ± 2) °C,*

whereby X is the highest temperature measured under normal operating conditions on the apparatus, component or subassembly under consideration plus 10 K with a minimum of 85 °C.

One apparatus, component or subassembly is subjected to the relevant dielectric strength test of 10.3, without the humidity treatment of 10.2, however, the test voltage is multiplied by 1,6.

This test is performed immediately after the 68 h temperature conditioning of the last cycle.

Upon conclusion of the complete number of cycles, the two remaining apparatus, components or subassemblies are subjected to the relevant dielectric strength test of 10.3; however, the test voltages are multiplied by 1,6.

NOTE The test voltage is higher than the normal test voltage in order to ensure that, if the surfaces are not cemented together, a breakdown occurs.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

13.7 Enclosed and sealed parts

For apparatus, subassemblies or components, not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS and which are enclosed, enveloped or hermetically sealed against ingress of dirt and moisture, the minimum internal CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES may be reduced to the values as given in table 12.

NOTE 1 Examples of such constructions include hermetically sealed metal boxes, adhesive sealed plastic boxes, parts enveloped in a dip coat or by type A coatings according to IEC 60664-3 of PRINTED BOARDS.

NOTE 2 This reduction is permitted for protection against electric shock and overheating.

Compliance is checked by inspection, measurement and by subjecting the apparatus, subassembly or component 10 times to the following temperature cycle:

- 68 h at $(Y \pm 2)$ °C,
- 1 h at (25 ± 2) °C,
- 2 h at (0 ± 2) °C,
- 1 h at (25 ± 2) °C,

whereby *Y* is the highest temperature measured under normal operating conditions of the apparatus, subassembly or component under consideration, with a minimum of 85 °C. In case of transformers, *Y* is the highest winding temperature measured under normal operating conditions, plus 10 K, with a minimum of 85 °C.

The apparatus, subassembly or component is then subjected to the dielectric strength test of 10.3.

The tests are carried out on three samples.

No failure is allowed.

Table 12 DC – Minimum CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES (enclosed, enveloped or hermetically sealed constructions)

OPERATING VOLTAGE up to and including V (peak) a.c. or V d.c.	Minimum CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES mm
35	0,2
45	0,2
56	0,3
70	0,3
90	0,4
110	0,4
140	0,5
180	0,7
225	0,8
280	1,0
360	1,1
450	1,3
560	1,6
700	1,9

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Table 12 DC – Minimum CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES (enclosed, enveloped or hermetically sealed constructions) Continued on Next Page

Table 12 DC – Minimum CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES (enclosed, enveloped or hermetically sealed constructions) Continued

OPERATING VOLTAGE up to and including V (peak) a.c. or V d.c.	Minimum CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES mm
900	2,3
1 120	2,6
1 400	3,2
1 800	4,2
2 250	5,6
2 800	7,5
3 600	10,0
4 500	12,5
5 600	16,0
7 000	20,0
9 000	25,0
11 200	32,0
14 000	40,0

NOTE 1 The values are applicable to both BASIC and SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION.
 NOTE 2 The values for REINFORCED INSULATION shall be twice the values in the table.
 NOTE 3 A minimum CTI (comparative tracking index) of 100 is required for the insulating materials used. The CTI rating refers to the value obtained in accordance with IEC 60112, solution A UL 746A.
 NOTE 4 Linear interpolation between the nearest two points is allowed, the calculated spacing being rounded to the next higher 0,1 mm increment.

13.8 The distances between conductive parts internal to apparatus, subassemblies or components which are treated with insulating compound filling all voids, so that CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES do not exist, shall be subject only to the requirements of 8.8.

NOTE Examples of such treatment include potting, encapsulation and vacuum impregnation.

Compliance is checked in accordance with 13.7, taking into account 8.8 together with the following:

A visual inspection shall be carried out to determine that there are no cracks in the encapsulating, impregnating or other material, that coatings have not loosened or shrunk, and after sectioning the sample, that there are no significant voids in the material.

14 DC Components

NOTE 1 Where components are part of a range of values it is usually not necessary to test every value within that range. If this range of values consists of several technologically homogeneous subranges, the samples should be representative of each of these subranges. Moreover, it is recommended, where possible, to make use of the concept of structurally similar components.

~~NOTE 2 When a certain flammability category according to IEC 60707 is required, reference is made to annex G with respect to alternative test methods.~~

NOTE 3 When no flammability requirements are specified in this clause, reference is made to 20.1.1.

NOTE 4 In Australia and New Zealand the special national conditions of clause 20, NOTE 2, also apply to all components.

NOTE 5 In Sweden, switches containing mercury, such as thermostats, relays and level controllers are not allowed.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
 NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
 DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Except as indicated below, a component of an apparatus covered by this standard shall comply with the requirements for that component. See annex Y for a list of standards covering components used in the apparatus covered by this standard.

A component is not required to comply with a specific requirement that:

- a) Involves a feature or characteristic not required in the application of the component in the product covered by this standard, or
- b) Is superseded by a requirement in this standard.

A component shall be used in accordance with its rating established for the intended conditions of use.

Specific components are incomplete in construction features or restricted in performance capabilities. Such components are intended for use only under limited conditions, such as certain temperatures not exceeding specified limits, and shall be used only under those specific conditions.

14.1 DC Resistors

14.1 revised November 18, 2005

Component power supplies and their resistors complying with the construction and test requirements of UL 1310, UL 1950, Third Edition, or UL 60950 are considered to fulfill the construction and test requirements of 14.1.

Resistors, the short-circuiting or disconnecting of which would cause an infringement of the requirements for operation under fault conditions (see clause 11) and resistors bridging contact gaps of MAINS SWITCHES, shall have an adequate stable resistance value under overload.

Such resistors shall be positioned inside the enclosure of the apparatus.

Compliance is checked by test a) or test b), carried out on a sample of 10 specimens.

Before test a) or b), the resistance of each sample is measured and the sample is then subjected to the damp heat test according to IEC 60068-2-78 with the following severity parameters:

- Temperature: (40 ± 2) °C,*
- Humidity: (93 ± 3) % RH,*
- Test duration: 21 days.*

a) For resistors connected between HAZARDOUS LIVE parts and ACCESSIBLE conductive parts and for resistors bridging contact gaps of MAINS SWITCHES, the 10 specimens are each subjected to 50 discharges at a maximum rate of 12/min, from a 1 nF capacitor charged to 10 kV in a test circuit as shown in figure 5A.

After this test, the value of resistance shall not differ more than 20 % from the value measured before the damp heat test.

No failure is allowed.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

b) For other resistors, the 10 specimens are each subjected to a voltage of such a value that the current through it is 1,5 times the value measured through a resistor, having a resistance equal to the specified rated value, which is fitted to the apparatus, when operated under fault conditions. During the test the voltage is kept constant.

The value of resistance is measured when steady state is attained and shall not differ more than 20 % from the value measured before the damp heat test.

No failure is allowed.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

No Text on This Page

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

For resistors connected between HAZARDOUS LIVE parts and ACCESSIBLE conductive parts, the CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES between the terminations shall comply with the requirements of clause 13 for REINFORCED INSULATION.

Resistors with internal end-lead terminations are allowed only if the internal spacings are clearly and precisely defined.

Compliance is checked by measurement and inspection.

14.2 DC Capacitors and RC-units

Component power supplies and their capacitors complying with the construction and test requirements of UL 1310, UL 1950, Third Edition, or UL 60950 are considered to fulfill the construction and test requirements of 14.2.1 – 14.5.2.

Where reference is made to the tests specified in IEC 60384-14, table II, these tests are supplemented as follows:

The duration of the damp heat steady-state test as specified in 4.12 of IEC 60384-14, shall be 21 days.

NOTE Reference is made to IEC 60384-14, including amendment 1, irrespective of whether the capacitor or RC-unit is used for electromagnetic interference suppression purposes or not.

14.2.1 DC Capacitors or RC-units, the short-circuiting or disconnecting of which would cause an infringement of the requirements under fault conditions with regard to electric shock hazard shall:

a) withstand the tests for subclass Y2 or Y4 capacitors or RC-units as specified in IEC 60384-14, table II.

Subclass Y2 capacitors or RC-units shall be used for apparatus with rated MAINS voltages >150 V and ≤ 250 V with respect to earth or neutral respectively.

Subclass Y4 capacitors or RC-units may be used only for apparatus with rated MAINS voltages ≤ 150 V with respect to earth or neutral respectively.

b) withstand the tests for subclass Y1 or Y2 capacitors or RC-units as specified in IEC 60384-14, table II.

Subclass Y1 capacitors or RC-units shall be used for apparatus with rated MAINS voltages >150 V and ≤ 250 V with respect to earth or neutral respectively.

Subclass Y2 capacitors or RC-units may be applied only for apparatus with rated MAINS voltages ≤ 150 V with respect to earth or neutral respectively.

NOTE For the application of a) and b), reference is made to 8.5 and 8.6.

Such capacitors or RC-units shall be positioned inside the enclosure of the apparatus.

As an alternative a component such as a capacitor, a combination capacitor and resistor, or a suppressor shall comply with the requirements for Antenna-Coupling, Line-By-Pass, or Double Protection in UL 1414, as applicable.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

14.2.2 DC Capacitors or RC-units having their terminations DIRECTLY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS, shall withstand the tests for subclass X1 or X2 capacitors or RC-units as specified in IEC 60384-14, table II.

Subclass X1 capacitors or RC-units shall be applied for PERMANENTLY CONNECTED APPARATUS intended for connection to a MAINS with a nominal voltage >150 V and ≤ 250 V with respect to earth or neutral respectively.

Subclass X2 capacitors or RC-units may be used for all other applications.

NOTE 1 Y2 capacitors or RC-units may be used instead of X1 or X2 capacitors or RC-units.

NOTE 2 Y4 capacitors or RC-units may be used instead of X2 capacitors or RC-units in applications ≤ 150 V.

As an alternative a component such as a capacitor, a combination capacitor and resistor, or a varistor, or a suppressor shall comply with the requirements for Across-the-Line, Antenna-Coupling, or Double Protection in UL 1414.

14.2.3 Capacitors or RC-units across a secondary winding of a transformer with MAINS frequency output, the short-circuiting of which would cause an infringement of the requirements with regard to overheating, shall withstand the tests for subclass X2 capacitors or RC-units as specified in IEC 60384-14, table II.

The characteristics of the capacitors or RC-units shall be appropriate for their function in the apparatus under normal operating conditions.

14.2.4 DC (~~Intentionally kept free for future requirements for capacitors or RC-units others than those mentioned in 14.2.1 to 14.2.3.~~) Components which have been subjected to the requirements in 14.2.1 and 14.2.2 shall also comply with the enclosure requirements of UL 1414.

14.2.5 Capacitors or RC-units not covered by 14.2.1 to 14.2.4

NOTE If X1 or X2 capacitors or RC-units are used in places other than required in 14.2.2, these X1 or X2 capacitors or RC-units are considered to be covered by 14.2.2 as well.

a) Capacitors or RC-units with a volume exceeding $1\,750\text{ mm}^3$ used in circuits where, when the capacitor or RC-unit is short-circuited, the current through the short-circuit exceeds 0,2 A, shall comply with the passive flammability requirements according to 4.38 of IEC 60384-1, flammability category B or better.

b) When the distance between POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES and capacitors or RC-units with a volume exceeding $1\,750\text{ mm}^3$ does not exceed the values specified in table 13, then these capacitors or RC-units shall comply with the relevant passive flammability requirements according to 4.38 of IEC 60384-1, as specified in table 13 or better. No passive flammability requirements apply to these capacitors and RC-units when they are shielded by a barrier as specified in 20.1.4 from the POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE.

This subclause is not applicable to metal-cased capacitors and RC-units. Thin coating or tubing in such a case is ignored.

Compliance is checked according to 4.38 of IEC 60384-1.

14.2.5 revised November 18, 2005

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Table 13 – Flammability category related to distance from POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES

Open circuit voltage of the POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE V (peak) a.c. or d.c.	Distance from POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES to the capacitor or RC-unit downwards or sideways less than ^a mm	Distance from POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES to the capacitor or RC-unit upwards less than ^a mm	Passive flammability category according to IEC 60384-1
> 50 and ≤ 4 000	13	50	B
> 4 000	see 20.2		

^a See figure 13.

14.3 DC Inductors and windings

Component power supplies and their inductors and windings complying with the construction and test requirements of UL 1310, UL 1950, Third Edition, or UL 60950 are considered to fulfill the construction and test requirements of 14.3.1 – 14.3.5.2.

Inductors and windings shall comply with

- either the requirements of IEC 61558-1 and the relevant parts of IEC 61558-2, with the following addition:

Insulating materials of inductors and windings, except in thin sheet form, shall comply with 20.1.4;

- or with the requirements given below.

NOTE Examples of relevant parts of IEC 61558-2 are:

IEC 61558-2-1 [11]: SEPARATING TRANSFORMERS

IEC 61558-2-4 [12]: ISOLATING TRANSFORMERS

IEC 61558-2-6 [13]: Safety ISOLATING TRANSFORMERS

IEC 61558-2-17: Transformers for switch mode power supplies

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

14.3.1 Marking

Inductors the failure of which can impair the safety of an apparatus, for example ISOLATING TRANSFORMERS, shall be marked with the manufacturer's name or trademark and with a type or catalogue reference. The manufacturer's name and the type reference may be replaced by a code number.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

14.3.2 General

NOTE Depending on the application in the apparatus attention is drawn to the requirements of 10.1 for the insulation of windings.

ISOLATING TRANSFORMERS shall comply with

- 14.3.3 and
- 14.3.4.1 or 14.3.4.2 and
- 14.3.5.1 or 14.3.5.2.

SEPARATING TRANSFORMERS shall comply with

- 14.3.3 and
- 14.3.4.3 and
- 14.3.5.1 or 14.3.5.2.

Other windings, for example induction motors where the power is supplied to the stator only, degaussing coils, relay coils, autotransformers, shall comply with 14.3.3.1, 14.3.5.1, and 14.3.5.2 as far as applicable.

Transformers for Switch Mode Power Supplies (SMPS) shall comply with the requirements of IEC 61558-1 and IEC 61558-2-17, or

with the requirements for ISOLATING TRANSFORMERS or for SEPARATING TRANSFORMERS as given above.

Insulating material of inductors and windings, except in thin sheet form, shall comply with 20.1.4.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

14.3.3 Constructional requirements

14.3.3.1 All windings

CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES shall comply with the requirements of clause 13.

14.3.3.2 Designs with more than one winding

When an insulation barrier consisting of an uncemented pushed-on partition wall is used, CREEPAGE DISTANCES are measured through the joint. If the joint is covered by an adhesive bonding tape in accordance with IEC 60454, one layer of adhesive bonding tape is required on each side of the wall in order to reduce the risk of tape folding over during production.

The input and output windings shall be electrically separated from each other, and the construction shall be such that there is no possibility of any connection between these windings, either directly or indirectly through conductive parts.

In particular, precautions shall be taken to prevent:

- undue displacement of input or output windings, or the turns thereof;
- undue displacement of internal wiring, or wires for external connections;
- undue displacement of parts of windings, or of internal wiring, in the event of rupture of wires, or loosening of connections;
- wires, screws, washers and the like from bridging any part of the insulation between the input and output windings, including the connections of windings, should they loosen or become free.

The last turn of each winding shall be retained in a reliable manner, for example by tape, suitable bonding agent, or retention shall be implied by process technology.

Where cheekless bobbins are used, the end turns of each layer shall be retained in a reliable manner. Each layer can, for example, be interleaved with adequate insulation material projecting beyond the end turns of each layer and, moreover, either

- the windings shall be impregnated with hard-baking or cold-setting material, substantially filling the intervening spaces and effectively sealing-off the end turns, or
- the windings shall be held together by means of insulating material, or
- the windings shall, for example, be fixed by process technology.

NOTE It is not expected that two independent fixings will become loose at the same time.

Where serrated tape is used, the serrated part is disregarded as insulation.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

14.3.4 Separation between windings

14.3.4.1 Windings of CLASS II construction

The separation between HAZARDOUS LIVE windings and windings intended to be connected to ACCESSIBLE conductive parts shall consist of DOUBLE OR REINFORCED INSULATION according to 8.8, except that for coil formers and partition walls providing REINFORCED INSULATION a thickness of at least 0,4 mm without additional requirements applies.

Where an intermediate conductive part, for example the iron core, not intended to be connected to ACCESSIBLE conductive parts is located between the relevant windings, the insulation between these windings via the intermediate conductive part shall consist of DOUBLE OR REINFORCED INSULATION as mentioned above.

Compliance is checked by inspection and by measurement.

14.3.4.2 Windings of CLASS I construction

The separation between HAZARDOUS LIVE windings and windings intended to be connected to ACCESSIBLE parts may consist of BASIC INSULATION plus PROTECTIVE SCREENING only if all of the following conditions are complied with:

- the insulation between HAZARDOUS LIVE windings and the protective screen shall comply with the requirements for BASIC INSULATION according to 8.8 dimensioned for the HAZARDOUS LIVE voltage;
- the insulation between the protective screen and non-HAZARDOUS LIVE windings shall comply with the requirements for dielectric strength according to table 5, item 2;
- the protective screen intended to be connected to a PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL or contact shall be positioned between the input and output windings in such a way that the screen effectively prevents the input voltage being applied to any output winding in case of an insulation fault;
- the protective screen shall consist of a metal foil or of a wire wound screen extending at least the full width of one of the windings adjacent to the screen. A wire wound screen shall be wound tight without space between the turns;
- the protective screen shall be so arranged that its ends cannot touch each other nor touch simultaneously an iron core, in order to prevent losses due to creation of a shorted winding;
- the protective screen and its lead-out wire shall have a cross-sectional area sufficient to ensure that if a breakdown of insulation should occur, a fusing or interrupting device will open the circuit before the screen or the lead-out wire is destroyed;
- the lead-out wire shall be connected to the protective screen in a reliable manner, for example by soldering, welding, riveting or crimping.

Compliance is checked by inspection and by measurement.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

14.3.4.3 Windings of separating construction

The separation between HAZARDOUS LIVE windings and windings intended to be connected to parts separated from ACCESSIBLE parts by SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION only shall consist of at least BASIC INSULATION according to 8.8.

Compliance is checked by inspection and by measurement.

14.3.5 Insulation between HAZARDOUS LIVE parts and ACCESSIBLE parts

14.3.5.1 Windings of CLASS II construction

The insulation between HAZARDOUS LIVE windings and ACCESSIBLE parts or parts intended to be connected to ACCESSIBLE conductive parts, for example an iron core,

and

the insulation between HAZARDOUS LIVE parts, for example an iron core connected to a HAZARDOUS LIVE winding, and windings intended to be connected to ACCESSIBLE conductive parts,

shall consist of DOUBLE OR REINFORCED INSULATION according to 8.8, except that for coil formers and partition walls providing REINFORCED INSULATION, a thickness of at least 0,4 mm without additional requirements applies.

Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement.

14.3.5.2 Windings of CLASS I construction

The insulation between HAZARDOUS LIVE windings and ACCESSIBLE conductive parts or parts intended to be connected to ACCESSIBLE conductive parts connected to a PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL or contact, for example an iron core,

and

the insulation between HAZARDOUS LIVE parts, for example an iron core separated from a HAZARDOUS LIVE winding by FUNCTIONAL INSULATION only, and winding wires or foils of protective screens intended to be connected to a PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL or contact,

shall consist of BASIC INSULATION according to 8.8.

The winding wires of windings intended to be connected to a PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL or contact shall have a current carrying capacity sufficient to ensure that, if a breakdown of insulation should occur, a fusing or interrupting device will open the circuit before the winding is destroyed.

Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

14.4 DU High voltage components and assemblies

NOTE 1 For high voltage cables reference is made to 20.1.2.

NOTE 2 The clearance distance specified in this clause is to include the straight line distance, between conductive parts operating at voltages exceeding 4 kV (peak) located within the component and conductive parts of opposite polarity that are located external to the component, through any insulating material that has not been found reliable with regard to temperature and voltage involved, and has no arc-tracking characteristic as determined by the tests in ASTM D495.

Components operating at voltages exceeding 4 kV (peak) and spark gaps provided to protect against overvoltages, if not otherwise covered by 20.1.3, shall not give rise to danger of fire to the surroundings of the apparatus, or to any other hazard within the sense of this standard.

Compliance is checked by meeting the requirement for category ~~V-1 according to IEC 60707~~ or by the test of 14.4.1 and 14.4.3 respectively, in which no failure is allowed. V-2 according to UL 94 and either:

– conducting the test in 14.4.1 in the apparatus on all exterior materials of the component where all the exterior materials are rated not less than V-2, and on all materials of any associated part that are rated not less than V-2 that are located between the component and conductive part at a different potential, where the clearance distance between the component and conductive part is less than the distance specified in figure 22 for the potential involved, or

– conducting the test in 14.4.3 on all exterior materials of the component where all of the external materials are rated not less than HB, and on all materials of any associated part rated not less than HB that are located between the component and a conductive part of opposite polarity where the clearance distance between the component and conductive part is less than the distance specified in figure 22 for the potential involved.

A component, such as a high-voltage transformer:

a) Operating at voltage of more than 4 kV (peak).

b) Having at least one winding connected to the MAINS, and

c) Having another winding, located within the same component housing that is connected to an ACCESSIBLE part

shall withstand the conditioning and dielectric voltage-withstand test described in 14.4.4. There shall be no breakdown of the insulating materials when breakdown results in a risk of electric shock.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

14.4.1 DU High voltage transformers and multipliers arcing test

Three specimens of the transformer with one or more high-voltage windings or of the high-voltage multipliers are subjected to the treatment specified under item a), followed by the test specified under item b).

a) Preconditioning

For transformers, a power of 10 W (d.c. or a.c. at MAINS frequency) is initially supplied to the high-voltage winding. This power is sustained for 2 min, after which it is increased by successive steps of 10 W at 2 min intervals to 40 W.

The treatment lasts 8 min or is terminated as soon as interruption of the winding or appreciable splitting of the protective covering occurs.

NOTE 1—Certain transformers are so designed that this preconditioning cannot be carried out. In such cases, only the test of item b) below is applied.

For each specimen of a high-voltage multiplier, its output shall be short-circuited and a voltage taken from an appropriate high-voltage transformer shall be applied to its input.

The input voltage is adjusted so that the short-circuit current is initially (25 ± 5) mA. This is maintained for 30 min or is terminated as soon as any interruption of the circuit or appreciable splitting of the protective covering occurs.

NOTE 2—Where the design of a high-voltage multiplier is such that a short-circuit current of 25 mA cannot be obtained, a preconditioning current is used, which represents the maximum attainable current, determined either by the design of the multiplier or by its conditions of use in a particular apparatus.

b) Flammability test

The specimen is subjected to the flammability test of G.1.2, annex G.

A component operating at more than 4 kV (peak) or a part of a different potential with less than the specified clearance distance shall not produce a risk of fire when subjected to the following arcing test.

For this test, voltages are to be measured with and without any accessories, with and without any one tube and fuse (exclusive of copper or copper alloy links in any low-voltage heater circuit) disabled in any manner that occurs in service, and with any combination of these conditions. All controls are to be adjusted to give the maximum voltage possible with a useable picture. Following this adjustment, all external operating controls and all user controls that are externally marked to identify their purpose are to be adjusted to produce the maximum voltage, V1, regardless of the effect on the picture. An automatic voltage regulating device that continues to perform its intended function under a single fault condition is not to be rendered inoperative for this test.

All components operating at more than 4 kV (peak) shall be conditioned for 168 hours in a full draft circulating-air oven at a temperature 20 °C higher than the normal operating temperature of the component, and not less than 70 °C. The oven is to maintain a tolerance of +2.0 °C.

An arc, using the energy available from the high-voltage component, is to be established between the component and any adjacent part of different potential where breakdown will occur due to deficiency in clearance distance. The arc is to be used to attempt to ignite exterior materials of the high-voltage component and to ignite materials of associated parts located between the high-voltage component and

UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL

parts of different potential. The arc is to be established by means of a conductive probe. The conductive probe is to be used to break through unreliable insulation or to create arc tracking across the surface of insulating materials (for example, tube sockets, or TERMINAL boards). The arc length developed with the probe is not to exceed the distance specified in figure 22. The arcing is to be continued for 15 min at each location. When flaming occurs, the arc is to be extinguished by disconnecting power to the apparatus and the time of flaming measured. When the flame self-extinguishes in less than 30 sec, the arcing is to be re-established and continued for a total arcing time of 15 min. If arcing cannot be maintained using the above conditions of operation, a minimum value of impedance, necessary to maintain arcing, shall be added to the probe circuit in order to maintain arcing conditions for the required time period. The results are considered unsatisfactory if flame resulting from the arcing continues for more than 30 seconds after arcing is discontinued.

14.4.2 DU High-voltage assemblies and other parts

Flammability test

The specimen is subjected to the flammability test of G.1.2, annex G.

14.4.3 DU Component part flame test

14.4.3 revised November 18, 2005

Prior to this test, three samples of a component operating at more than 4 kV (peak) shall be conditioned for 168 hours in a full draft circulating-air oven at a temperature 20 °C higher than the normal operating temperature of the component, and not less than 70 °C. The oven is to maintain a tolerance of ±2.0 °C.

Exterior materials of a component operating at more than 4 kV (peak) shall not continue to flame for more than 10 s after each application of five 15 s test flames and after the fifth application of the test flame, conductive internal high-voltage parts shall not be exposed. The period between applications of the flame is 15 s. The test flame is to be obtained from a 9.5 mm diameter Tirrill burner adjusted to give a flame 13 cm high with a 4 cm blue inner cone. The tip of the inner cone of the flame is to be applied to the part under test.

14.4.4 DU High-voltage isolating component

Three samples of the high-voltage component, connected as in normal operation, are to be conditioned in a circulating-air oven. The operating temperature of the oven is that required for the component winding to reach the winding aging temperature. The winding aging temperature is obtained from the horizontal axis of figure 23. This temperature is determined by the intersection of the aging time and historical class 105 (A) system response curve in figure 23. The aging time is determined by the manufacturer. The curve used shall not be less than the normal operating temperature of the winding of the component.

After completion of the conditioning, the samples are to be allowed to cool to room temperature and subjected to the dielectric voltage-withstand test described in 10.3.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

14.5 Protective devices

The application of protective devices shall be in accordance with their rated values.

External CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES of protective devices and their connections shall meet the requirements for BASIC INSULATION of clause 13 for the voltage across the device when opened.

Compliance is checked by measurement or calculation.

14.5.1 DU THERMAL RELEASES

THERMAL RELEASES used in order to prevent the apparatus from becoming unsafe within the sense of this standard shall comply with 14.5.1.1, or 14.5.1.2 or 14.5.1.3 respectively, whichever is applicable.

14.5.1.1 DC THERMAL CUT-OUTS shall meet one of the following requirements: comply with UL 873, UL 8730-2-9 or UL 60730-2-9.

a) The THERMAL CUT-OUT when tested as a separate component, shall comply with the requirements and tests of IEC 60730 series as far as applicable.

For the purpose of this standard the following applies:

- the THERMAL CUT-OUT shall be of type 2 action (see 6.4.2 of IEC 60730-1);
- the THERMAL CUT-OUT shall have at least MICRO-DISCONNECTION (type 2B) (see 6.4.3.2 and 6.9.2 of IEC 60730-1);
- the THERMAL CUT-OUT shall have a TRIP-FREE mechanism in which contacts cannot be prevented from opening against a continuation of a fault (type 2E) (see 6.4.3.5 of IEC 60730-1);
- the number of cycles of automatic action shall be at least
 - 3 000 cycles for THERMAL CUT-OUTS with automatic reset used in circuits which are not switched-off when the apparatus is switched-off (see 6.11.8 of IEC 60730-1);
 - 300 cycles for THERMAL CUT-OUTS with automatic reset used in circuits which are switched-off together with the apparatus and for THERMAL CUT-OUTS with no automatic reset which can be reset BY HAND from the outside of the apparatus (see 6.11.10 of IEC 60730-1);
 - 30 cycles for THERMAL CUT-OUTS with no automatic reset and which cannot be reset BY HAND from the outside of the apparatus (see 6.11.11 of IEC 60730-1);
- the THERMAL CUT-OUT shall be tested as designed for a long period of electrical stress across insulating parts (see 6.14.2 of IEC 60730-1);
- the THERMAL CUT-OUT shall meet the ageing requirements for an intended use of at least 10 000 h (see 6.16.3 of IEC 60730-1);

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

— with regard to the dielectric strength, the ~~THERMAL CUT-OUT~~ shall meet the requirements of 10.3 of this standard, except across the contact gap, and except between terminations and connecting leads of the contacts, for which 13.2 to 13.2.4 of IEC 60730-1 applies.

The characteristics of the ~~THERMAL CUT-OUT~~ with regard to

- the ratings of the ~~THERMAL CUT-OUT~~ (see IEC 60730-1, clause 5);
- the classification of the ~~THERMAL CUT-OUT~~ according to
 - nature of supply (see 6.1 of IEC 60730-1);
 - type of load to be controlled (see 6.2 of IEC 60730-1);
 - degree of protection provided by enclosures against ingress of solid objects and dust (see 6.5.1 of IEC 60730-1);
 - degree of protection provided by enclosures against harmful ingress of water (see 6.5.2 of IEC 60730-1);
 - pollution situation for which the ~~THERMAL CUT-OUT~~ is suitable (see 6.5.3 of IEC 60730-1);
 - maximum ambient temperature limit (see 6.7 of IEC 60730-1);

shall be appropriate for the application in the apparatus under normal operating conditions and under fault conditions.

Compliance is checked according to the test specifications of IEC 60730 series, by inspection and by measurement.

b) The ~~THERMAL CUT-OUT~~ when tested as a part of the apparatus shall

- have at least ~~MICRO-DISCONNECTION~~ according to IEC 60730-1, withstanding a test voltage according to 13.2 of IEC 60730-1, and
- have a ~~TRIP-FREE~~ mechanism in which contacts cannot be prevented from opening against a continuation of a fault, and
- be aged for 300 h at a temperature corresponding to the ambient temperature of the ~~THERMAL CUT-OUT~~ when the apparatus is operated under normal operating conditions at an ambient temperature of 35 °C (45 °C for apparatus intended for use in tropical climates), and
- be subjected to a number of cycles of automatic action as specified under a) for a ~~THERMAL CUT-OUT~~ tested as a separate component, by establishing the relevant fault conditions.

The test is made on three specimens.

No sustained arcing shall occur during the test.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

After the test, the THERMAL CUT-OUT shall show no damage in the sense of this standard. In particular, it shall show no deterioration of its enclosure, no reduction of CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES and no loosening of electrical connections or mechanical fixings.

Compliance is checked by inspection and by the specified tests in the given order.

14.5.1.2 DC THERMAL LINKS shall meet one of the following requirements: comply with UL 60691.

a) The THERMAL LINK, when tested as a separate component, shall comply with the requirements and tests of IEC 60691.

The characteristics of the THERMAL LINK with regard to

- the ambient conditions (see 6.1 of IEC 60691);
- the circuit conditions (see 6.2 of IEC 60691);
- the ratings of the THERMAL LINK (see 8 b) of IEC 60691);
- the suitability for sealing in or use with impregnating fluids or cleaning solvents (see 8 c) of IEC 60691);

shall be appropriate for the application in the apparatus under normal operating conditions and under fault conditions.

The dielectric strength of the THERMAL LINK shall meet the requirements of 10.3 of this standard except across the disconnection (contact parts) and except between terminations and connecting leads of the contacts, for which 11.3 of IEC 60691 applies.

Compliance is checked according to the test specifications of IEC 60691, by inspection and measurement.

b) The THERMAL LINK when tested as a part of the apparatus shall be

- aged for 300 h at a temperature corresponding to the ambient temperature of the THERMAL LINK when the apparatus is operated under normal operating conditions at an ambient temperature of 35 °C (45 °C for apparatus intended for use in tropical climates), and
- subjected to such fault conditions of the apparatus which cause the THERMAL LINK to operate. During the test no sustained arcing and no damage in the sense of this standard shall occur, and
- capable of withstanding two times the voltage across the disconnection and have an insulation resistance of at least 0,2 MΩ, when measured with a voltage equal to two times the voltage across the disconnection.

The test is made three times, no failure is allowed.

The THERMAL LINK is replaced, partially or completely, after each test.

NOTE When the THERMAL LINK cannot be replaced partially or completely, the complete component part comprising the THERMAL LINK, for example a transformer, should be replaced.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Compliance is checked by inspection and by the specified tests in the given order.

14.5.1.2 revised March 20, 2006

~~14.5.1.3 DU Thermal interrupting devices which are intended to be reset by soldering shall be tested according to 14.5.1.2 b).~~

However, the interrupting element is not replaced after operation, but reset according to the instructions of the apparatus manufacturer or, in absence of instructions, soldered with standard 60/40 tin/lead solder.

NOTE—Examples of interrupting devices which are intended to be reset by soldering, are THERMAL RELEASES, integrated, on power resistors, for example externally.

14.5.2 Fuse-links and fuse holders

~~14.5.2.1 DC Fuse-links, DIRECTLY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS, used in order to prevent the apparatus from becoming unsafe within the sense of this standard shall comply with the relevant part of IEC 60127, unless they have a rated current outside the range specified in that standard UL 248-14.~~

In the latter case they shall comply with the relevant part of IEC 60127 as far as applicable.

For marking see 14.5.2.2.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

~~14.5.2.2 DC For fuse-links according to IEC 60127, the following marking shall be located on each fuse-holder or close to the fuse-link, in the given order:~~

~~— a symbol denoting the relative prearcing time/current characteristic;~~

~~examples are:~~

~~F, denoting quick acting;~~

~~T, denoting time lag;~~

~~– the rated current in milliamperes for rated currents below 1 A, and in amperes for rated currents of 1 A or more;~~

~~— a symbol denoting the breaking capacity of the assigned fuse-link;~~

~~examples are:~~

~~L, denoting low breaking capacity;~~

~~E, denoting enhanced breaking capacity;~~

~~H, denoting high breaking capacity.~~

Examples of marking:

T 315 L or T 315 mA L 315 or 315 mA

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

F 1,25 H or F 1,25 A H 1,25 or 1,25 A

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

No Text on This Page

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

- the voltage rating of the fuse, where a fuse with a lower rated voltage could be fitted in error.

However, it is permissible to locate the marking elsewhere, in or on the apparatus, provided that it is obvious to which fuseholder the marking applies.

~~The marking requirements apply also if the fuse-links have a rated current outside the range specified in IEC 60127.~~

The marking is not required on apparatus with permanently sealed enclosures. Examples of permanently sealing an enclosure would be sonic welding, riveting or sealing screw heads. Enclosures secured by one-way screws are not considered permanently sealed.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

14.5.2.3 Fuse holders, so designed that fuse-links can be connected in parallel in the same circuit, shall not be used.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

14.5.2.4 If HAZARDOUS LIVE parts are rendered ACCESSIBLE during replacement of fusing or interrupting devices, access to such parts shall not be possible BY HAND operation.

Fuse-holders for miniature cartridge fuse-links of the screw-in or bayonet type shall, if removal of the fuse-carrier BY HAND is possible from the outside of the apparatus, be so constructed that HAZARDOUS LIVE parts do not become ACCESSIBLE, either during insertion or removal of the fuse-link, or after the fuse-link has been removed. Fuse holders in compliance with IEC 60127-6 satisfy this requirement.

When the fuse carrier is constructed to hold the fuse-link, the fuse-link is placed in the fuse-carrier during the test.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

14.5.3 DC PTC THERMISTORS

PTC THERMISTORS used in order to prevent the apparatus from becoming unsafe within the sense of this standard shall comply with clauses 15, 17, J15 and J17 of IEC 60730-1 or UL 1434.

Compliance is checked by inspection and by the tests 11.2 of this standard.

~~For PTC THERMISTORS whose power dissipation exceeds 15 W for the rated zero-power resistance at an ambient temperature of 25 °C, the encapsulation or tubing shall comply with the flammability category V-1 or better according to IEC 60707.~~

Compliance is checked according to IEC 60707 or according to G.1.2 of annex G.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

14.5.3A DC Other protective devices DIRECTLY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS

Such protective devices (for example special fuse links not covered under UL 248-14) that are DIRECTLY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS and used in order to prevent the apparatus from becoming unsafe within the sense of this standard shall have adequate breaking capacity and comply with UL 873, UL 1416, UL 1417, or UL 2111 as applicable.

14.5.4 DC Protective devices not mentioned in 14.5.1, 14.5.2, or 14.5.3, or 14.5.3A

Such protective devices, for example fusing resistors, ~~fuse links not standardized in IEC 60127~~ or miniature circuit breakers, shall have adequate breaking capacity.

For non-resettable protective devices, such as fuse-links, a marking shall be located close to the protective device, so that correct replacement is possible.

Compliance is checked by inspection and during the tests under fault conditions (see 11.2).

The test under fault condition is carried out three times.

No failure is allowed.

14.6 Switches

14.6.1 DU

MANUALLY OPERATED MECHANICAL SWITCHES and relays which

- control currents exceeding 0,2 A r.m.s. a.c. or d.c., and/or
- have voltage across the open switch contacts exceeding 35 V (peak) a.c. or 24 V d.c.

shall ~~meet one of the following requirements:~~ comply with the requirements of UL 508, UL 1054, or UL 61058-1 as applicable.

A MAINS switch or relay shall be rated for the total RATED CURRENT CONSUMPTION of the apparatus.

A rating of a MAINS switch or relay, provided on audio apparatus intended for commercial use, is to be equal to or greater than the maximum steady state (r.m.s) current it controls under normal operating conditions, except the audio output is adjusted to one-third maximum undistorted power output or at one-third of the manufacturer's rated output, whichever is greater.

a) ~~The switch tested as a separate component, shall comply with the requirements and tests of IEC 61058-1, whereby the following applies:~~

- ~~the number of operating cycles shall be 10 000 (see 7.1.4.4 of IEC 61058-1);~~
- ~~the switch shall be suitable for use in a normal pollution situation (see 7.1.6.2 of IEC 61058-1);~~
- ~~as regards resistance to heat and fire, the switch shall conform to the requirements for level 3 (see 7.1.9.3 of IEC 61058-1);~~

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

— deviating from 13.1 of IEC 61058-1, for a.c. and d.c. MAINS SWITCHES the speed of contact making and breaking shall be independent of the speed of actuation. Moreover, MAINS SWITCHES shall comply with the flammability category V-0 or according to G.1.1 of annex G.

The characteristics of the switch with regard to:

- the ratings of the switch (see IEC 61058-1, clause 6);
- the classification of the switch according to:
 - nature of supply (see 7.1.1 of IEC 61058-1);
 - type of load to be controlled by the switch (see 7.1.2 of IEC 61058-1);
 - ambient air temperature (see 7.1.3 of IEC 61058-1);

shall be appropriate for the function of the switch under normal operating conditions.

Compliance is checked according to the test specifications of IEC 61058-1, by inspection and by measurements.

If the switch is a MAINS SWITCH which controls MAINS socket outlets, the total rated current and the peak surge current of the socket outlets as specified in 14.6.5 shall be taken into account for the measurement.

b) The switch tested as part of the apparatus working under normal operating conditions, shall meet the requirements of 14.6.2, 14.6.5 and 20.1.4, and moreover:

- switches controlling currents exceeding 0,2 A r.m.s. a.c. or d.c. shall meet the requirements of 14.6.3 and 14.6.4 if the voltage across the open switch contacts exceeds 35 V (peak) a.c. or 24 V d.c.;
- switches controlling currents exceeding 0,2 A r.m.s. a.c. or d.c. shall meet the requirements of 14.6.3 if the voltage across the open switch contacts does not exceed 35 V (peak) a.c. or 24 V d.c.;
- switches controlling currents up to 0,2 A r.m.s. a.c. or d.c. shall meet the requirements of 14.6.4 if the voltage across the open switch contacts exceeds 35 V (peak) a.c. or 24 V d.c.;
- MAINS SWITCHES shall comply with clause G.1.1 of annex G.

14.6.1 revised November 18, 2005

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

14.6.2 ~~DU~~ A switch tested according to 14.6.1 b) shall withstand, without excessive wear or other harmful effects, the electrical, thermal and mechanical stresses that occur during intended use and shall have a mechanism complying with the requirements for d.c. switches in IEC 61058-1, subclause 13.1. Moreover, ~~for MAINS SWITCHES~~ the speed of contact making and breaking shall be independent of the speed of actuation.

Compliance is checked according to IEC 61058-1, subclause 13.1, and by the following endurance test:

The switch is subjected to 10 000 cycles of operation with a sequence according to IEC 61058-1, subclause 17.1.2, excluding the increased-voltage test at accelerated speed specified in IEC 61058-1, subclause 17.2.4, and under electrical and thermal conditions given by the normal operating conditions of the apparatus:

The test is made on three specimens, no failure is allowed.

14.6.3 ~~DU~~ A switch tested according to 14.6.1 b) shall be so constructed that it does not attain excessive temperatures during intended use. The materials used shall be such that the performance of the switch is not adversely affected by the operation during intended use of the apparatus. In particular, the material and design of the contacts and terminations shall be such that their oxidation or other deterioration does not adversely affect the operation and performance of the switch.

Compliance is checked in the on-position under normal operating conditions and according to IEC 61058-1, subclause 16.2.2 d), l) and m), taking into account the total rated current I of MAINS socket-outlets, if any, and the peak surge current according to 14.6.5.

The temperature rise at the terminations shall not exceed 55 K during this test.

14.6.4 ~~DU~~ A switch tested according to 14.6.1 b) shall have adequate dielectric strength.

Compliance is checked by the following tests:

The switch shall withstand a dielectric strength test as specified in 10.3, without being previously subjected to the humidity treatment, the test voltage being decreased to 75 % of the corresponding test voltage specified in 10.3, but not less than 500 V r.m.s. (700 V peak):

—The test voltage is applied in the on-position between HAZARDOUS LIVE parts and ACCESSIBLE conductive parts or parts which are connected to ACCESSIBLE conductive parts, and in addition between the poles in case of a multipole switch.

—The test voltage is applied in the off-position across each contact gap. During the test, resistors, capacitors and RC-units in parallel to a contact gap may be disconnected.

14.6.5 ~~DU~~ If the switch is a MAINS SWITCH or relay which controls MAINS socket-outlets, the endurance test is carried out with an additional load connected to the socket-outlets, consisting of the circuit shown in IEC 61058-1, figure 9, taking into account IEC 61058-1, figure 10 switch rating shall be equal to the RATED CURRENT CONSUMPTION plus the current rating of the socket outlet.

The total rated current of the additional load shall correspond to the marking of the socket-outlets, see 5.2 e). The peak surge current of the additional load shall have a value as shown in table 14.

After the test, the switch shall show no damage in the sense of this standard. In particular, it shall show no deterioration of its enclosure, no reduction of CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES and no loosening of electrical connections or mechanical fixings.

UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL

Compliance is checked by inspection and by the tests specified in 14.6.3 and/or 14.6.4 in the given order.

Table 14 DU – Peak surge current

Total rated current of the socket-outlets controlled by the switch A	Peak surge current A
Up to and including 0,5	20
Over 0,5 up to and including 1,0	50
Over 1,0 up to and including 2,5	100
Over 2,5	150

14.6.6 DU A MAINS switch provided on audio apparatus intended for household use and on all video apparatus shall comply with (a), (b) or (c), and a switch that controls a MAINS connected receptacle shall comply with (b) below. The contacts of a MAINS relay shall comply with (a), (b) or (d), and the contacts of a relay that controls a MAINS connected receptacle shall comply with (b) or (d) below.

a) Satisfy the following equation for maximum current controlled by a non-TV-rated switch:

$$I_p \leq 1,414 A$$

in which:

I_p is the peak inrush current controlled by the switch or relay, as determined by 14.6.6.1, and

A is the switch or relay r.m.s. current rating in amperes.

b) Be TV-rated unless it is a keylock MAINS switch used in series with a MAINS on-off switch in a commercial apparatus.

c) Be located on the back of the apparatus and is not operable from a remote control.

d) Comply with the test in 14.6.6.2

14.6.6.1 DU The apparatus is to be connected to a rated supply source calibrated to represent a 20-A household branch circuit having a momentary 1 000-A short-circuit current capability.

The controls and switches are to be adjusted as indicated in clause 7 and the thermal state of the apparatus is to maximize the magnitude of the inrush current.

The test circuit to which the apparatus is connected is to be momentarily energized by operating the test-circuit control switch asynchronously for 60 – 100 cycles of closure and opening. The waveforms of these events are to be displayed on a storage oscilloscope connected across a 0,02-ohm, high frequency resistive shunt.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Note: See annex W for information concerning the 0.02 ohm resistor.

The peak inrush current is to be calculated according to the equation:

$$I_p = E_p / R_s$$

in which:

I_p is the calculated peak inrush current of the apparatus being tested.

E_p is the maximum value of voltage measured across the 0.02-ohm high-frequency resistive shunt as displayed by the storage oscilloscope, provided that the voltage waveform has a duration of at least 100 microseconds and

R_s is the exact resistance of the high-frequency resistive shunt.

14.6.6.2 DU A relay shall be subjected to 25 000 cycles of operation making and breaking the maximum steady-state (r.m.s.) current based on the input current and the marked receptacle rating, as appropriate. A tungsten load is to be connected to the receptacle for the test.

During the test, exposed dead metal parts of the apparatus are to be connected to earth through a 1-ampere plug fuse, and the connection is to be such that any single-pole, current-interrupting device is located in the ungrounded conductor of the supply MAINS. When the apparatus is intended for use on direct current, or on direct current as well as alternating current, the exposed dead metal parts of the apparatus are to be connected so as to be positive with regard to a single-pole current-interrupting control device. The device is to be operated at a rate of no more than 10 cycles per minute. Electrical or mechanical breakdown of the control device, undue burning or pitting of the contacts, or opening of the fuse in the earthing connection shall not occur.

14.6.7 DU A double-pole switch controlling two different circuits shall be suitable for the application. The current, frequency, and voltage rating for each pole shall not be less than the maximum steady-state current, frequency, and voltage that it controls.

A double-pole switch controlling one ac circuit and one dc circuit is capable of being used without further tests when:

- a) The dc circuit voltage is 60 V or less,
- b) The dc circuit power capability is 50 W or less, and
- c) The dc current is 10 % or less of the ac current rating of the switch.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

14.7 DU SAFETY INTERLOCKS

SAFETY INTERLOCKS shall be provided where access BY HAND is possible to areas presenting hazards in the sense of this standard.

For requirements and test specifications reference is made to 2.8 of IEC 60950 except that the jointed test finger referred to in 9.1.1.2 is used to determine accessibility (2.8.2 of IEC 60950) and interlock operation (2.8.3 of IEC 60950).

~~For requirements and test specifications reference is made to 2.8 of IEC 60950.~~

14.8 Voltage setting devices and the like

The apparatus shall be so constructed that changing the setting from one voltage to another or from one nature of supply to another is unlikely to occur accidentally.

Compliance is checked by inspection and by manual test.

NOTE Changing of the setting which necessitates consecutive movements BY HAND is deemed to comply with this requirement.

14.9 Motors

14.9.1 Motors shall be so constructed as to prevent, in prolonged intended use, any electrical or mechanical failure impairing compliance with this standard. The insulation shall not be affected and contacts and connections shall be such that they do not work loose by heating, vibration, etc.

Compliance is checked by the following tests carried out on the apparatus under normal operating conditions.

a) The apparatus is connected to 1,1 times the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE and to 0,9 times the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE, each time for 48 h. Motors for short-time or intermittent operation are connected for periods in accordance with the operating time if limited by the construction of the apparatus.

In case of short-time operation, suitable cooling intervals are inserted.

NOTE 1 It may be convenient to carry out this test immediately after the test of 7.1.

b) The motor is started 50 times while the apparatus is connected to 1,1 times the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE and 50 times while connected to 0,9 times the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE, each period of connection being at least 10 times the period from start to full speed, but not less than 10 s.

The intervals between starts shall be not less than three times the period of connection.

If the apparatus provides for more than one speed, the test is carried out at the most unfavourable speed.

After these tests, the motor shall withstand the dielectric strength of 10.3, no connection shall have loosened and there shall be no deterioration impairing the safety.

NOTE 2 For induction motors with power supplied to the stator only, see also 14.3.2.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

14.9.2 Motors shall be so constructed or mounted that wiring, windings, commutators, slip-rings, insulations, etc., are not adversely affected by oil, grease or other substances to which they are exposed during intended use.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

14.9.3 Moving parts liable to cause personal injury shall be so arranged or enclosed as to provide adequate protection against this danger during intended use. Protective enclosures, guards and the like shall have adequate mechanical strength. They shall not be removable BY HAND.

Compliance is checked by inspection and by manual test.

14.9.4 In addition, for motors having phase-shifting capacitors, three-phase motors and series motors IEC 60950, annex B, clauses B.8, B.9 and B.10 applies.

14.10 Batteries

14.10.1 DC Batteries shall be so mounted that there is no risk of the accumulation of flammable gases and that the leakage of electrolyte cannot impair any insulation.

Internal rechargeable and non-rechargeable batteries that are replaceable by the USER OR a SKILLED PERSON shall additionally comply with 14.10.2 – 14.10.5.

SPECIAL BATTERY packs that are removable by the USER from the apparatus and may be carried by the USER separately from the apparatus are considered transportable and shall additionally comply with the following test requirements detailed in UL 2054:

- Short-circuit test, Section 9;
- Abnormal charging test, Section 10;
- Forced-discharge test, Section 12; and
- 250 N steady force test; Section 19.

NOTE Consumer grade, non-rechargeable carbon-zinc or alkaline batteries are not subjected to the tests specified in 14.10.2 – 14.10.5.

Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement.

Revised 14.10.1 effective May 18, 2007

14.10.2 If it is possible for the USER to replace rechargeable batteries, which can be recharged in the apparatus, by non-rechargeable batteries, special means, such as a separate charging contact on a rechargeable special battery-pack or an electronic protective circuit, shall be provided to avoid any current being supplied into the non-rechargeable batteries.

This requirement does not apply to batteries inside the apparatus, the replacement of which by the USER is not intended, for example batteries for memories.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

NOTE Additional requirements regarding the instructions for use are given in 5.4.1.

14.10.3 Under normal operating conditions and under fault conditions,

- for rechargeable batteries, the charging current,
- for lithium batteries, the discharging current and the reverse current,

shall not exceed the permissible values given by the battery manufacturer.

Compliance is checked by measurement.

Lithium batteries shall be removed from the circuit and replaced by a voltage source when measuring discharging currents and by a short circuit when measuring reverse current.

14.10.4 Battery mould stress relief

A SPECIAL BATTERY, in which containment of the electrolyte is dependent upon a thermoplastic material, shall not release electrolyte due to stresses caused by the moulding process if the electrolyte can contact insulation or enter a user serviceable compartment.

Compliance is checked by the following test.

The battery is to be placed in an air-circulating oven, maintained at a temperature of 70 °C, for a period of 7 h. Following the oven conditioning, the battery shall be examined for electrolyte that has been released.

14.10.5 DU Battery drop test

A USER-SERVICEABLE SPECIAL BATTERY shall not release electrolyte as a result of being dropped.

Compliance is checked by the following test.

Three samples are each to be subjected to a single drop, or one sample is to be subjected to three drops, through a distance of 1 m to strike a hardwood surface as described in 15.4.3. Following the drop test, each battery is to be examined for electrolyte that has been released.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

14.10.6 DU External battery

Revised 14.10.6 effective May 18, 2007

An apparatus intended for use with an external battery shall be provided with an overcurrent protective device in the battery-supply circuit.

Alternatively, the overcurrent protective device in the apparatus battery-supply circuit is not required if the apparatus is intended to be connected to a vehicle power outlet using a vehicle battery adapter. The vehicle battery adapter shall comply with the requirements of UL 2089.

14.11 DC Optocouplers

Component power supplies and their optocouplers complying with the construction and test requirements of UL 1310, UL 1950, Third Edition, or UL 60950 are considered to fulfill the construction and test requirements of this sub-clause.

Optocouplers shall comply with the ~~constructional~~ requirements of clause 8 in UL 1577.

Optocouplers bridging REINFORCED INSULATION shall comply with the applicable requirements for double protected optocouplers as specified in UL 1577.

~~Internal and External CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES of optocouplers shall comply with 13.1. As an alternative, it is permitted to use 13.6 for testing jointed insulation.~~

14.12 DC Surge suppression varistors

Surge suppression varistors used in order to prevent MAINS overvoltages coming into the apparatus shall comply with IEC 61051-2 UL 1449.

Such components shall not be connected between parts connected to the MAINS and ACCESSIBLE conductive parts or parts connected to them, except for earthed parts of PERMANENTLY CONNECTED APPARATUS.

Reference is made to IEC 61051-2 where the following requirements apply:

- ~~— preferred climatic categories (2.1.1 of IEC 61051-2)~~
 - maximum lower temperature: -10°C
 - minimum upper temperature: $+85^{\circ}\text{C}$
 - minimum duration of climatic tests: 21 days
- ~~– maximum continuous voltages (2.1.2 of IEC 61051-2)~~

The minimum value of the maximum continuous a.c. voltage shall be 1,2 times the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE of the apparatus.

- ~~– current pulse rating (IEC 61051-2, subclause 2.1.2)~~

Surge suppression varistors shall withstand a combination pulse of 6 kV/3 kA with voltage waveform of 1,2/50 μs and current waveform of 8/20 μs .

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Compliance is checked by applying the test of IEC 61051-2, group 1 UL 1449. After the test, the varistor voltage (as defined in IEC 61051 UL 1449) shall not have changed by more than 10 % when measured with the manufacturer's specified current.

- fire hazard (IEC 61051-2, table 1, group 6)

The coating of surge suppression varistors shall have a flammability category V-0 or better according to IEC 60707 UL 94.

Compliance is checked according to IEC 60707 or according to clause G.1.1 of annex G.

- thermal stress

For apparatus with nominal MAINS voltage of <150 V, the apparatus and a test resistor connected in series with the apparatus shall be energised from an a.c. source of 250 V.

The voltage source shall be applied for 4 h or until the circuit path through the varistor opens for each of the test series resistance values: 2 000 Ω , 500 Ω , 250 Ω , 50 Ω . A separate apparatus shall be used for each resistor value, unless damage from the previous test has been repaired.

At the end of each test, the apparatus shall comply with clause 11.

15 TERMINALS

15.1 Plugs and sockets

15.1.1 DC DR DU Plugs and appliance couplers for the connection of the apparatus to the MAINS and socket-outlets and interconnection couplers for providing MAINS power to other apparatus shall comply with the relevant IEC UL standards for plugs and socket-outlets, appliance couplers or interconnection couplers. The attachment plug shall have a current rating no lower than 125 % of the current drawn by the apparatus under normal operating conditions and a voltage rating appropriate for the rated voltage for the apparatus. When the apparatus is capable of being adapted for use on two or more different supply voltages by means of an input selector, the attachment plug provided with the apparatus shall be rated for the voltage for which the apparatus is intended to be connected when it is shipped from the factory.

The attachment plug cap shall be a polarized type when the apparatus is provided with a manually operated, line connected, single-pole switch for apparatus on-off operation; an Edison-base lampholder; or a 15- or 20-ampere socket-outlet.

The identified grounded circuit conductor (neutral) shall be connected to the screw shell of the lampholder and/or to the wide blade of a socket outlet. A manually operated, MAINS connected, single-pole on-off switch shall not be connected to the identified grounded circuit conductor.

Examples of the relevant IEC publications are: IEC 60083 [1], IEC 60320, IEC 60884 and IEC 60906.

NOTE 1 In Australia, Denmark, Israel, Japan, New Zealand, South Africa, Switzerland and the United Kingdom, special national conditions are valid for plugs and socket-outlets.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

NOTE 2 In South Africa, where a cordset is used as the means of connection to the supply MAINS, this cordset may be provided with a rewirable plug, provided that the plug complies with the national regulations.

MAINS socket-outlets and interconnection couplers mounted on CLASS II apparatus shall only permit connection of other CLASS II apparatus.

MAINS socket-outlets and interconnection couplers mounted on CLASS I apparatus shall either allow connection of CLASS II apparatus only or shall be provided with protective earthing contacts which are reliably connected to the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL or contact of the apparatus.

NOTE 3 For CLASS I apparatus, provision for both kinds of socket-outlets and interconnection couplers is allowed on the same apparatus.

NOTE 4 Socket-outlets allowing only the connection of CLASS II apparatus can be designed, for instance, similar to IEC 60906-1, standard sheets 3-1 or 3-2, or according to IEC 60320-2-2, standard sheets D or H.

For apparatus with socket-outlets providing MAINS power to other apparatus, measures shall be taken to ensure that plugs or appliance inlets for the connection of the apparatus to the MAINS cannot be overloaded, if the rated current of the plug or appliance connector is less than 16 A.

NOTE 5 Marking of the socket-outlets is not considered to be a suitable measure to prevent overloading.

Conductors of internal wiring of socket-outlets providing MAINS power to other apparatus either directly or via a MAINS SWITCH shall have a nominal cross-sectional area as specified in 16.2 for external flexible cords based upon the marked rating of the socket-outlet, but not less than 18 AWG, except where the apparatus complies with Clause 11 when 4.3.9 is applied.

Compliance is checked according to the relevant standards, by inspection and according to 16.2.

15.1.1 revised November 18, 2005

15.1.2 DU Connectors other than for connecting MAINS power, shall be so designed that the plug has such a shape that insertion into a MAINS socket-outlet or appliance coupler is unlikely to occur.

NOTE Examples of connectors meeting this requirement are those constructed according to IEC 60130-2, IEC 60130-9 [2], IEC 60169-2 or IEC 60169-3 [3], when used as prescribed. ~~An example of a connector not meeting the requirements of this subclause is the so-called "banana" plug.~~

Sockets for audio and video circuits of LOAD TRANSDUCERS indicated with the symbol of 5.2 b) shall be so designed, that a plug for antenna and earth, for audio and video circuits of LOAD TRANSDUCERS and SOURCE TRANSDUCERS and for data and similar circuits which are not indicated with the symbol of 5.2 b), cannot be inserted into them.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

15.1.3 TERMINALS and connectors used in output circuits of SUPPLY APPARATUS, whose output voltage is not a standard nominal MAINS voltage according to IEC 60038, table I, shall not be compatible with those specified for household and similar general purposes, for example those described in IEC 60083 [1], IEC 60320, IEC 60884, IEC 60906.

Compliance is checked by inspection and by manual tests.

The TERMINAL or connector shall be designed for the loading which may appear under normal operating conditions and during intended use.

Compliance is checked according to IEC 60320 as far as safety is concerned, for instance with regard to shock hazard and heating.

15.1.3.1 DR An AUDIO AMPLIFIER having an open-circuit audio output voltage not limited to 120 V that is permanently connected to the MAINS shall be provided with a means for connection complying with U.21.1.1 – U.21.1.7, and wire-binding screws, No. 6-32 (3.5 mm diameter) or larger, quick-connect TERMINALS, or leads. When wire-binding screws are provided, the screws shall comply with the requirements in U.21.3.1 – U.21.3.5.

When quick-connect TERMINALS are provided, the TERMINALS shall comply with the following requirements:

- a) Male tabs shall be firmly mounted in place.
- b) Mating female connectors shall be provided with the apparatus.
- c) Strain relief that complies with 16.5, and associated installation instructions, shall be provided to prevent stress being transmitted to the TERMINALS when a disconnected TERMINAL can contact a HAZARDOUS LIVE part or an accessible dead metal part.
- d) The installation instructions shall include information for assembly of a TERMINAL to a conductor, and the utilization of strain relief as follows:
 - 1) the tool designation, if a tool is to be used during the assembly.
 - 2) instruction for the preparation of conductors, such as twisting strands of conductors together before assembly.
 - 3) the size and type of wire (solid or stranded), and
 - 4) identification of the strain relief means and instruction for its use if required by c) above, and
- e) The quick connect TERMINALS shall be appropriate for the use with the size and type (solid or stranded) of wire specified.

15.1.3.2 DR An AUDIO AMPLIFIER having an open-circuit audio output voltage not limited to 120 V that is connected to the MAINS by means of a flexible cord shall be provided with one of the following:

- a) A length of permanently attached Type SPT-2, NISPT-2, SV, SJ flexible cord or the equivalent, and an appliance coupler. The cord shall be provided with strain relief and a bushing complying with the requirements in 16.3 – 16.5, or

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

b) An opening that permits the field installation of a flexible cord and wire-binding screws, quick connect TERMINALS or leads as described in 15.1.3.1. Such an opening shall be provided with an insulating bushing as described in 16.5, or

c) A receptacle for plug-in connections.

15.2 DR Provisions for protective earthing

15.2 revised November 18, 2005

ACCESSIBLE conductive parts of CLASS I apparatus, which might assume a hazardous voltage in the event of a single insulation fault in BASIC INSULATION, and the protective earthing contacts of socket-outlets shall be reliably connected to a PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL within the apparatus.

Protective earthing circuits shall not contain switches or fuses.

The earthing conductor in a supply cord, or in an interconnecting cable shall have an equivalent or larger cross-sectional area than the current-carrying conductors in the supply cord or cable.

Protective earthing conductors may be bare or insulated. If insulated, the insulation shall be green or green/yellow except in the following two cases:

- a) for earthing braids, the insulation shall be either green or green/yellow or transparent;
- b) for internal protective conductors in assemblies such as ribbon cables, busbars, flexible printed wiring, etc., any colour may be used provided that no misinterpretation of the use of the conductor is likely to arise.

Wires identified by the colour green or combination green/yellow shall be used only for protective earthing connections.

For PERMANENTLY CONNECTED APPARATUS and for apparatus provided with a non-detachable flexible cord or cable, a separate PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL shall be used, located adjacent to the MAINS TERMINALS, and shall comply with the requirements of 15.3 and, moreover, shall not serve to fix any other component.

If parts removable BY HAND have a protective earthing connection, this connection shall be made before the current-carrying connections are established when placing the part in position, and the current-carrying connections shall be separated before the protective earthing connection is interrupted when removing the part.

Conductive parts in contact with protective earthing connections shall not be subject to significant corrosion due to electrochemical action. Combinations above the line in annex F shall be avoided.

The PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL shall be resistant to significant corrosion.

NOTE 1 Corrosion resistance may be achieved by a suitable plating or coating process.

Compliance is checked by inspection and by reference to the table of electro-chemical potentials in annex F.

The resistance of the connection between the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL or contact, and parts required to be connected thereto, shall not exceed 0,1 Ω .

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Compliance is checked by the following test:

The test shall be carried out for 1 min with a test current of 25 A a.c. or d.c. The test voltage shall not exceed 12 V.

NOTE 2 In Canada, a 30 A test current is used.

The voltage drop between the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL or contact and the part to be connected thereto shall be measured and the resistance is calculated from the current and this voltage drop. The resistance of the protective earthing conductor of the power supply cord shall not be included in the resistance measurement.

NOTE 3 Care should be taken that the contact resistance between the tip of the measuring probe and the metal part under test does not influence the test result.

15.3 TERMINALS for external flexible cords and for permanent connection to the MAINS supply

15.3.1 PERMANENTLY CONNECTED APPARATUS shall be provided with TERMINALS in which connection is made by means of screws, nuts or equally effective devices, for example screwless type clamping units according to IEC 60998-2-2 or TERMINALS according to IEC 60999.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

For inlet openings, reference is made to IEC 60335-1.

15.3.2 For apparatus with non-detachable MAINS supply cords, the connection of the individual conductors to the internal wiring of the apparatus shall be accomplished by any means that will provide a reliable electrical and mechanical connection, except that the supply conductors and the protective earthing conductor of a non-detachable MAINS cord or cable shall not be soldered directly to the conductors of a PRINTED BOARD.

Soldered, crimped and similar connections may be used for the connection of external conductors. For soldered or crimped connections, barriers shall be provided so that CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES cannot be reduced to less than the values specified in clause 13 and annex J respectively, should the conductor break away at a soldered joint or slip out of a crimped connection. Alternatively, the conductors shall be positioned or fixed in such a way that reliance is not placed upon the connection alone to maintain the conductors in position.

Compliance is checked by inspection, and, in case of doubt, by applying a pull of 5 N in any direction to the connection.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

No Text on This Page

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

15.3.3 Screws and nuts which clamp external MAINS supply conductors shall have a thread conforming with ISO 261 or ISO 262, or a thread comparable in pitch and mechanical strength. They shall not serve to fix any other component, except that they may also clamp internal conductors if these are so arranged that they are unlikely to be displaced when fitting the MAINS supply conductors.

NOTE The terminations of a component (for example a switch) built into the apparatus may be used as TERMINALS for the supply of MAINS power to the apparatus, provided that they comply with the requirements of 15.3.1.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

15.3.4 For the purpose of applying the requirements for MAINS supply cords:

- it is assumed that two independent fixings will not become loose at the same time;
- conductors connected by soldering are not considered to be adequately fixed unless they are held in place near to the termination, independently of the solder. However, "hooking-in" before the soldering is, in general, considered to be a suitable means for maintaining the conductors of a MAINS supply cord in position, provided that the hole through which the conductor is passed is not unduly large;
- conductors connected to TERMINALS or terminations by other means are not considered to be adequately fixed unless an additional fixing is provided near to the TERMINAL or termination; this additional fixing may clamp both the insulation and the conductor.

15.3.5 DR TERMINALS for external flexible cords shall allow the connection of conductors having nominal cross-sectional areas as shown in table 15.

For rated currents exceeding 16 ~~13~~ A, reference is made to IEC 60950, ~~table 3D~~ Article 310 of the National Electrical Code, ANSI/NFPA 70.

Compliance is checked by inspection, by measurement and by fitting cords of the smallest and largest cross-sectional areas of the appropriate range shown in table 15.

Table 15 DR – Nominal cross-sectional area to be accepted by TERMINALS

RATED CURRENT CONSUMPTION of the apparatus ^a A	Nominal cross-sectional area mm ² AWG
Up to and including 3 2 ^b	0,5 to 0,75 20
Over 3 up to and including 6	0,75 to 1
Over 6 2 up to and including 10 ^a	1 to 1,5 18
Over 10 up to and including 16 13 ^a	1,5 to 2,5 16
^a The RATED CURRENT CONSUMPTION includes currents which can be drawn from socket-outlets providing MAINS power for other apparatus. ^b MAINS plug is provided with a 2 A fuse and the apparatus is not provided with a socket outlet.	

15.3.6 TERMINALS according to 15.3.3 shall have minimum sizes as shown in table 16.

Stud TERMINALS shall be provided with washers.

For rated currents over 16 A, reference is made to IEC 60950, table 3E.

Compliance is checked by measurement and inspection.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Table 16 – Minimum nominal thread diameter

RATED CURRENT CONSUMPTION of the apparatus ^a	Minimum nominal thread diameter	
	mm	
A	Pillar type or stud type	Screw type
Up to and including 10	3	3,5
Over 10 up to and including 16	3,5	4

^a The RATED CURRENT CONSUMPTION includes currents which can be drawn from socket-outlets providing MAINS power for other apparatus.

15.3.7 TERMINALS shall be so designed that they clamp the conductor between metal surfaces with sufficient contact pressure and without damage to the conductor.

TERMINALS shall be so designed or located that the conductor cannot slip out when the clamping screws or nuts are tightened.

TERMINALS shall be so fixed that, when the means of clamping the conductor is tightened or loosened,

- the TERMINAL itself does not work loose;
- internal wiring is not subjected to stress;
- CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES are not reduced below the values specified in clause 13 and annex J.

Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement.

15.3.8 TERMINALS in circuits carrying a current exceeding 0,2 A under normal operation conditions shall be so designed that contact pressure is not transmitted through insulating material other than ceramic, unless there is sufficient resiliency in the metallic parts to compensate for any possible shrinkage of the insulating material.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

15.3.9 For non-detachable MAINS supply cords, each TERMINAL shall be located in proximity to its corresponding TERMINALS of different potential and to the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL, if any.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

TERMINALS shall be so located, guarded or insulated that, should a strand of a flexible conductor escape when the conductor is fitted, there is no risk of accidental contact between such a strand and:

- ACCESSIBLE conductive parts or conductive parts connected to them;

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

- conductive parts not connected to the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL and separated from ACCESSIBLE conductive parts by SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION only.

Compliance is checked by inspection and, unless a special cord is prepared in such a way as to prevent the escape of strands, by the following test.

An 8 mm length of insulation shall be removed from the end of a flexible conductor having the appropriate nominal cross-sectional area. One wire of the stranded conductor shall be left free and the other wires shall be fully inserted into, and clamped in the TERMINAL.

Without tearing the insulation back, the free wire shall be bent in every possible direction, but without making sharp bends round a guard.

If the conductor is HAZARDOUS LIVE, the free wire shall not touch any conductive part which is ACCESSIBLE or is connected to an ACCESSIBLE conductive part or, in the case of apparatus with DOUBLE INSULATION, any conductive part which is separated from ACCESSIBLE conductive parts by SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION only.

If the conductor is connected to an earthing TERMINAL, the free wire shall not touch any HAZARDOUS LIVE part.

15.4 DC Devices forming a part of the MAINS plug

Component power supply adapters and their blades complying with the construction and test requirements of UL 1310, UL 1950, Third Edition, or UL 60950 are considered to fulfill the construction and test requirements of 15.4.1 – 15.4.3.

15.4.1 A device provided with pins intended to be introduced into fixed socket-outlets shall not impose undue strain on these socket-outlets.

Compliance is checked by engaging the device, as during intended use, with the socket-outlet of a test apparatus as shown in figure 11. The balancing arm of the test apparatus pivots about a horizontal axis through the centre lines of the contact tubes of the socket-outlet at a distance of 8 mm behind the engagement face of the socket-outlet.

With the device not in engagement, the balancing arm is in equilibrium, the engagement face of the socket-outlet being in the vertical position.

After the device has been engaged, the torque to be applied to the socket-outlet to maintain its engagement face in the vertical plane is determined by the position of a weight on the balancing arm. The torque shall not exceed 0,25 Nm.

NOTE 1 This test is compatible with the test described in the IEC 60884-1.

NOTE 2 The testing device shown in figure 11 is intended for the testing of devices forming a part of the MAINS plug. Examples of MAINS plugs are given in IEC 60083 [1]. For devices forming a part of the MAINS plug with other dimensions, other testing devices and requirements may be necessary.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

15.4.2 The MAINS plug part of the device shall comply with the standards for the dimensions of the MAINS plugs. The overall shape of the device shall be such, that it can not be mistaken as a standard MAINS plug.

Compliance is checked by measurement in accordance with the relevant standard.

NOTE The dimensions of some types of MAINS plugs are given in IEC 60083 [1].

For any particular plug, care should be taken to check the current edition of any relevant national standard.

15.4.3 The device shall have adequate mechanical strength.

Compliance is checked by inspection and by the following tests:

a) The device shall be subjected to a drop test.

A sample of the complete device shall be subjected to three impacts that result from being dropped 1 m on to a horizontal surface in positions likely to produce the most adverse results.

The horizontal surface shall consist of hardwood of at least 13 mm thick, mounted on two layers of plywood each 19 mm to 20 mm thick, all supported on a concrete or equivalent non-resilient floor.

After the test, the specimen shall comply with the requirements of this standard, but it need not be operational.

NOTE 1 Small pieces may be broken off, provided that the protection against electric shock is not affected.

NOTE 2 Distortion of pins and damage to the finish and small dents which do not reduce the CLEARANCES OR CREEPAGE DISTANCES below the values specified in clause 13, are neglected.

b) The pins shall not turn when a torque of 0,4 Nm is applied, first in one direction for 1 min and then in the opposite direction for 1 min.

NOTE 3 This test is not carried out if rotation of the pins does not impair safety in the sense of this standard.

c) A pull force as given in table 17 is applied, without jerks, for 1 min on each pin in turn, in the direction of the longitudinal axis of the pin.

The pull force is applied within a heating cabinet at a temperature of (70 ± 2) °C, 1 h after the device has been placed in the heating cabinet.

After the test, the device is allowed to cool down to ambient temperature, no pin shall have been displaced in the body of the device by more than 1 mm.

For the purpose of this test, protective earthing contacts, irrespective of their number, are considered as one pole.

Tests b) and c) are made separately, each with new samples.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Table 17 – Pull force on pins

Rating of the equivalent plug type	Number of poles	Pull force N
Up to and including 10 A 130/250 V	2	40
	3	50
Over 10 A up to and including 16 A 130/250 V	2	50
	3	54
Over 10 A up to and including 16 A 440 V	3	54
	More than 3	70

16 External flexible cords

16.1 DC DR MAINS supply flexible cords shall be of the sheathed a type complying with IEC 60227 for PVC cords or according to IEC 60245 for synthetic rubber cords UL 817, be marked VW-1 and have an ampacity not less than the current drawn by the apparatus. The specific types of flexible cords are to be as indicated in table 17A.

NOTE 1 In Australia and New Zealand special national conditions apply for external flexible cords.

Compliance is checked by testing MAINS supply flexible cords in accordance with IEC 60227 or IEC 60245.

Non-detachable flexible cables and cords of CLASS I apparatus shall be provided with a green or green/yellow core connected to the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL of the apparatus and, if a plug is provided, to the protective earthing contact of the plug.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

NOTE 2 The colour code for cores of flexible MAINS cords is contained in IEC 60173 [4].

16.1 revised November 18, 2005

Table 17A DU – Cords for apparatus

Apparatus type	Cord type	Cord length, m ^b
Portable, table-top, floor standing and rack-mounted audio and video apparatus	NISPT-2 ^a , SPT-2, SV, SVT, SVE, SJ, SJT, SJE	1.5 minimum
Household musical instruments	NISPT-2 ^a , SPT-2, SV, SVT, SVE	3.0 maximum
	SJ, SJT, SJE	7.5 maximum
Coffee table ^c	SV, SVT, SVE, SJ, SJT, SJE	3.0 minimum
Undercabinet and PORTABLE APPARATUS with cord storage compartment	NISPT-2 ^a , SPT-2	1.5 minimum
Commercial amplifier-speakers, musical instruments and sound systems ^d	SJ, SJT, SJE	7.5 maximum
^a Appliance wiring material construction that has been determined to be equivalent is acceptable. ^b The length of a flexible cord on an apparatus intended for a special installation is not prohibited from being less than specified. ^c A coffee-table type apparatus is a type that is finished on all four sides and intended for use in the center of the room. ^d A system comprised of a number of different components found, for example, in a school system or language teaching system.		

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

16.2 DR Power supply cord conductors shall have a nominal cross-sectional area wire size not less than those shown in table 18. An integral earthing conductor, if provided, shall have at least the same wire size as the other conductors in the cord.

For higher currents, reference is made to IEC 60950, table 3B Article 400 of the National Electrical Code, ANSI/NFPA 70.

Compliance is checked by measurement.

NOTE—In the USA and Canada a minimum cross-sectional area of 0,81 mm² is required.

Table 18 DR – Nominal cross-sectional areas of external flexible cords

RATED CURRENT CONSUMPTION of the apparatus^a A	Normal cross-sectional area mm²
Up to and including 3	0,5 ^b
Over 3 up to and including 6	0,75
Over 6 up to and including 10	1
Over 10 up to and including 16	1,5

^a The RATED CURRENT CONSUMPTION includes currents which can be drawn from socket outlets providing MAINS power for other apparatus.

^b This nominal cross-sectional area is allowed only for CLASS II apparatus and provided that the length of the supply cord, measured between the point where the cord or the cord guard enters the apparatus, and the entry to the plug, does not exceed 2 m.

Table 18 DR – Wire sizes of external flexible cords

RATED CURRENT CONSUMPTION of the apparatus^a A	Wire size	
	American Wire Gauge (AWG)	Nominal cross-sectional area mm²
Up to and including 2 ^b	20	0,52
Over 2 up to and including 10	18	0,82
Over 10 up to and including 12	17	1,0
Over 12 up to and including 13	16	1,3
Over 13 up to and including 18	14	2,1
Over 18 up to and including 25	12	3,3
Over 25 up to and including 30	10	5,3

^a The RATED CURRENT CONSUMPTION includes currents which can be drawn from socket outlets providing MAINS power for other apparatus.

^b 20 AWG is acceptable provided that the MAINS plug is provided with a 2 A fuse maximum and the apparatus is not provided with a socket outlet.

16.3 DU

a) Flexible cords, not complying with 16.1, used as a connection between the apparatus and other apparatus used in combination with it, and comprising HAZARDOUS LIVE conductors, shall have adequate dielectric strength.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Compliance is checked by applying the dielectric strength test using a sample of approximately 1 m length and by applying the relevant test voltage according to 10.3 for the grade of insulation under consideration, as follows:

- for insulation of a conductor: by the voltage test method given in IEC 60885-1, subclauses 3.1 and 3.2;*
- for SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION, for example sleeving around a group of conductors: between a conductor inserted into the sleeve and metal foil wrapped tightly round the sleeve for a length of at least 100 mm.*

NOTE Where a power supply cord, whose insulating properties comply with those of the cord types of 16.1, is used inside the apparatus, either as an extension of the external power supply cord or as an independent cable, its sheath is considered to be adequate SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION for the purposes of this subclause.

b) Flexible cords not complying with 16.1, used as connection between the apparatus and other apparatus used in combination with it, and comprising HAZARDOUS LIVE conductors, shall withstand bending and other mechanical stresses occurring during intended use.

Compliance is checked by the test of 3.1 of IEC 60227-2, except that the table 19 applies.

The carrier moves to and fro 15 000 times (30 000 movements).

The voltage U between the conductors is the test voltage according to 10.3.

During and after the test, the specimen shall withstand the dielectric strength test specified in 10.3.

c) Flexible cords not complying with 16.1, used as connection between the apparatus and other apparatus used in combination with it, and comprising HAZARDOUS LIVE conductors, shall be marked VW-1.

Flexible cords not complying with 16.1, used as connection between the apparatus and other apparatus used in combination with it, which exceed the open circuit voltage limit of 35 V (peak) a.c. or d.c. or carrying a current exceeding 0,2 A, shall be rated VW-1.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Table 19 – Mass and pulley diameter for stress test

Overall diameter of the flexible cable or cord mm	Mass kg	Pulley diameter mm
Up to and including 6	1,0	60
Over 6 up to and including 12	1,5	120
Over 12 up to and including 20	2,0	180

16.4 Conductors of flexible cords used as a connection between the apparatus and other apparatus used in combination with it shall have a cross-sectional area such that the temperature rise of the insulation under normal operating conditions and under fault conditions is negligible.

Compliance is checked by inspection. In case of doubt, the temperature rises of the insulation are determined under normal operating conditions and under fault conditions. The temperature rises shall not exceed the values given in the appropriate columns of table 3.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

16.5 DU The apparatus shall allow the external flexible cords, comprising one or more HAZARDOUS LIVE conductors, to be so connected that the connecting points of the conductors are relieved from strain, that the outer covering is protected from abrasion, and that the conductors are prevented from twisting.

Moreover, it shall not be possible to push an external cord back into the apparatus through its aperture if this can impair safety in the sense of this standard.

The method by which the relief from strain and the prevention of twisting is provided shall be clearly seen.

Makeshift methods, such as tying the cord into a knot or tying the cord with a string, are not permitted.

The devices for strain and twist relief shall either be made of insulating material, or have a fixed covering of insulating material other than natural rubber, if an insulation fault of the cord may make ACCESSIBLE conductive parts HAZARDOUS LIVE.

For CLASS I apparatus, the arrangement of the TERMINALS for the MAINS supply flexible cord, or the length of the conductors between the device for strain and twist relief and the TERMINALS, shall be such that the HAZARDOUS LIVE conductors become taut before the conductor connected to the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL, in case the cord slips out of the device for strain and twist relief.

Compliance is checked by inspection and by the following test.

The test is made with the type of flexible cord attached to the apparatus.

The apparatus is fitted with its flexible cord, the device for strain and twist relief being appropriately used. The conductors are introduced into the TERMINALS, and the TERMINAL screws, if any, are slightly tightened, so that the conductors cannot easily change their position.

After this preparation, pushing the cord further into the apparatus shall not be possible or shall cause no hazard in the sense of this standard.

A mark is made on the cord, under strain, near the aperture, and the flexible cord is subjected 100 times to a pull of 40 N for a duration of 1 s each. The pull shall not be applied in jerks.

Immediately afterwards, the cord is subjected for a period of 1 min to a torque of 0,25 Nm.

During the test, the cord shall not be displaced by more than 2 mm, the measurement being made while the cord is still under strain. The ends of the conductors shall not be noticeably displaced in the TERMINALS and no damage to the flexible cord shall be caused by the device for strain and twist relief.

If polymeric materials are involved in the construction, the strain and twist relief test shall be conducted both before and after the stress relief test described in 12.1.5.

16.5 revised November 18, 2005

16.6 Apertures for external flexible cords mentioned in 16.5 shall be so constructed that there is no risk of damage to the cord during its introduction or subsequent movement.

NOTE This can be done, for example, by rounding the edges of the aperture or by using an appropriate bushing of insulating material.

Compliance is checked by inspection and by fitting flexible cords.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

16.7 TRANSPORTABLE APPARATUS shall have an appliance inlet according to IEC 60320-1 for connection to the MAINS by detachable cord sets or shall have a means of stowage to protect the MAINS cord when not in use, for example a compartment, hooks or pegs.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

17 Electrical connections and mechanical fixings

17.1 DE Screw TERMINALS providing electrical contact and screw fixings which during the life of the apparatus will be loosened and tightened several times shall have adequate strength.

Screws exerting contact pressure and screws with a nominal diameter less than 3 mm which form part of the above-mentioned screw fixings shall screw into a metal nut or a metal insert.

However, screws having a nominal diameter less than 3 mm, which do not exert contact pressure, need not be screwed into metal, provided that the screw fixing withstands the torque specified in table 20 for screws of 3 mm diameter.

Screw fixings which during the life of the apparatus will be loosened and tightened several times include TERMINAL SCREWS, screws for fixing covers (as far as they must be loosened to open the apparatus), screws for fixing handles, knobs, legs, stands and the like.

Compliance is checked by the following test.

The screws are loosened and then tightened, with a torque according to table 20:

- 5 times in the case of screws operating in a thread of metal;*
- 10 times in the case of screws operating in wood, WOOD-BASED MATERIAL or in a thread in insulating material.*

In the latter case, the screws are to be completely removed and reinserted each time.

The screws shall not be tightened in jerks.

After the test, there shall be no deterioration impairing safety in the sense of this standard.

The material in which the screws are inserted is verified by inspection.

The test is made by means of a suitable test screwdriver, spanner or key, applying a torque as shown in table 20, the appropriate column being

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

- for metal screws without heads, if the screw, when tightened, does not protrude from the hole: **I**
- for other metal screws and for nuts: **II**
- for screws of insulating material:
 - having a hexagonal head with the dimension across flats exceeding the overall thread diameter, or
 - with a cylindrical head and a socket for a key, the socket having a dimension across flats not less than 0,83 times the overall thread diameter, or
 - with a head having a slot or cross slots, the length of which exceeds 1,5 times the overall thread diameter: **II**
- for other screws of insulating material: **III**

Table 20 – Torque to be applied to screws

Nominal diameter of screw mm	Torque Nm		
	I	II	III
Up to and including 2,8	0,2	0,4	0,4
Over 2,8 up to and including 3,0	0,25	0,5	0,5
Over 3,0 up to and including 3,2	0,3	0,6	0,6
Over 3,2 up to and including 3,6	0,4	0,8	0,6
Over 3,6 up to and including 4,1	0,7	1,2	0,6
Over 4,1 up to and including 4,7	0,8	1,8	0,9
Over 4,7 up to and including 5,3	0,8	2,0	1,0
Over 5,3 up to and including 6,0	–	2,5	1,25

17.2 Means shall be provided to ensure the correct introduction of screws into female threads in non-metallic material, if they will be loosened and tightened several times during the life of the apparatus and contribute to safety in the sense of this standard.

Compliance is checked by inspection and by manual test.

NOTE This requirement is deemed to be met if introduction in a slanting manner is prevented, for example by guiding the screw in the part to be fixed by a recess in the nut or a lead to the screw.

17.3 Screws or other fixing devices intended to fix covers, legs, stands or the like, shall be captive in order to prevent replacement during servicing by screws or other fixing devices, which might cause a reduction of CLEARANCES OR CREEPAGE DISTANCES between ACCESSIBLE conductive parts or parts connected to them and HAZARDOUS LIVE parts below the values given in clause 13.

Such screws need not be captive if, when replaced by screws having the same nominal diameter, pitch and sharpness with a length of 10 times their nominal diameter, using the torque of table 20, the distances are not less than those stated in clause 13.

Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

17.4 Conductive parts permanently fixed together and carrying a current exceeding 0,2 A across their interface under normal operating conditions shall be secured in such a way that loosening is prevented.

Compliance is checked by inspection and by manual test.

NOTE 1 Sealing by compound or the like provides satisfactory locking only for screw connections not subject to torsion.

NOTE 2 If the fixing consists of more than one screw or rivet, only one of them need be locked.

NOTE 3 For rivets, a non-circular shank or an appropriate notch may be a sufficient guard against rotation.

17.5 Electrical connections in circuits carrying a current exceeding 0,2 A under normal operation conditions shall be so designed that contact pressure is not transmitted through insulating material other than ceramic, unless there is sufficient resiliency in the metallic parts to compensate for any possible shrinkage of the insulating material.

Compliance is checked by inspection

17.6 Stranded conductors of flexible supply cords carrying a current exceeding 0,2 A under normal operating conditions, which are connected to SCREW TERMINALS, shall not be consolidated by lead-tin soldering where they are subject to contact pressure, unless the clamping means is so designed that there is no risk of a bad contact due to cold flow of the solder.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

17.7 Cover-fixing devices which may be operated during the life of the apparatus, shall have adequate mechanical strength, if the failure of such devices would impair safety in the sense of this standard.

The locked and unlocked positions of these devices shall not be ambiguous, and it shall not be possible to unlock the devices inadvertently.

Compliance is checked by inspection, by operating the device and by one of the following tests:

– *In the case of devices the operation of which is effected by a combination of rotary and linear movements, the device is locked and unlocked and the torques or forces necessary for this operation are measured. While the device is in the locked position, a torque or force of twice the value necessary to lock the device, with a minimum of 1 Nm or 10 N is applied in the locking direction, unless it is unlocked by a smaller torque or force in the same direction.*

This operation is performed 10 times.

The torque or force necessary to unlock the device shall be at least 0,1 Nm or 1 N.

– *In the case of covers fixed by means of snap fasteners, the cover is removed and replaced 10 times in the intended way.*

After this test the cover shall still comply with the tests by means of the rigid test finger and the test hook described in 9.1.7 a) and b).

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

17.8 DU Detachable legs, or stands, casters, brackets and similar objects supplied by the manufacturer of the apparatus shall be delivered with the relevant fixing means and suitable assembly instructions.

Relevant fixing means are not required when installation is to be done by a SKILLED PERSON.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

17.9 Internal pluggable connections shall be so designed that unintended loosening is unlikely, if the loosening can impair the safety in the sense of this standard.

Compliance is checked by inspection and in case of doubt by applying a pull of 2 N in any direction to the connection.

NOTE For other internal connections, see 8.11.

17.10 DU Aluminum conductors, insulated or uninsulated, used as internal wiring, such as for interconnection between current carrying parts or as transformer windings, shall be terminated by a method capable of being used in the combination of metals involved at the connection point.

17.11 DU An ACCESSORY shall be investigated to determine that:

a) the ACCESSORY, and the combination of the ACCESSORY and the apparatus shall present no hazard in the sense of this standard and

b) the ACCESSORY is provided with installation instructions.

17.11.1 DU The installation of an ACCESSORY by a SKILLED PERSON shall be such that:

a) the mechanical positioning is accomplished by means of tools normally available or by means of special tools provided by the organization responsible for providing the apparatus as part of the installation kit, and

b) the electrical connections are made by using existing TERMINALS and connections in the apparatus or the building wiring.

18 DU Mechanical strength of picture tubes and protection against the effects of implosion

18 revised November 18, 2005

Non-intrinsically protected picture tubes shall comply with the requirements of 18.1, 18.2.2 and 18.3. As an alternative, for intrinsically protected tubes, manufacturers may choose the picture tubes to with a maximum face dimension exceeding 7.5 cm shall comply with IEC 61965 UL 61965.

NOTE The present test of 18.2 will be replaced by a full reference to IEC 61965 in the forthcoming Amendment 2 to IEC 60065.

A bulb of a picture tube having a face diameter of 7.5 cm or more shall be mounted in an enclosure. The enclosure shall have no opening that exceeds 130 mm² unless the minor dimension of the opening is 10 mm or less.

18.1 DU General

18.1 revised November 18, 2005

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Picture tubes with a maximum face dimension exceeding 16 cm either shall be intrinsically protected with respect to effects of implosion and to mechanical impact, or mounted such that the enclosure of the apparatus shall provide adequate protection against the effects of an implosion of the tube.

A protective film, attached to the faceplate of the picture tube as part of the implosion protection system, shall be covered on all edges by the enclosure of the apparatus.

A non-intrinsically protected picture tube shall be provided with an effective protective screen, which cannot be removed BY HAND. If a separate screen of glass is used, it shall not be in contact with the surface of the tube.

Compliance is checked by inspection, by measurement, and by the tests of:

- 18.2 for intrinsically protected tubes, including those having integral protective screens;*
- 18.3 for apparatus having non-intrinsically protected tubes.*

NOTE 1 A picture tube is considered to be intrinsically protected with respect to the effects of implosion if, when it is correctly mounted, no additional protection is necessary.

NOTE 2 To facilitate the tests, the tube manufacturer may indicate the most vulnerable area on the tubes to be tested.

~~18.2 DU Intrinsically protected picture tubes, including those having integral protective screens~~

Each of the tests of 18.2.2 and 18.2.3 is made on six tubes, three of which are tested as received and the others after having been subjected to the ageing process of 18.2.1.

No failure is allowed.

For the tests of 18.2.2 and 18.2.3, the tubes are mounted in a test cabinet, according to the instructions given by the manufacturer of the tube, the cabinet being placed on a horizontal support at a height of (75 ± 5) cm above the floor.

Care is taken that, during the tests, the cabinet does not slide on the support.

NOTE—The following description of a test cabinet is given as an example:

- the cabinet is made of plywood, with a thickness of about 12 mm for tubes having a maximum face dimension not exceeding 50 cm and of about 19 mm for larger tubes;*
- the outside dimensions of the cabinet are approximately 25 % larger than the overall dimensions of the tube;*
- the front of the cabinet is provided with an opening closely surrounding the tube when mounted. The back of the cabinet is provided with an opening, 5 cm in diameter, and rests against a wooden bar, about 25 mm high, which is fixed to the support and prevents the cabinet from sliding.*

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

18.2.1 DU Ageing process

The ageing processes is as follows:

a) Damp heat conditioning:

24 h at (25 ± 2) °C and 90 % to 95 % relative humidity

24 h at (45 ± 2) °C and 75 % to 80 % relative humidity

24 h at (25 ± 2) °C and 90 % to 95 % relative humidity

b) Change of temperature consisting of two cycles, each comprising:

1 h at $(+20 \pm 2)$ °C

1 h at (-25 ± 2) °C

1 h at $(+20 \pm 2)$ °C

1 h at $(+50 \pm 2)$ °C

NOTE—The change of temperature is not intended to cause severe thermal stress on the picture tube, and may be achieved using one or two chambers.

c) Damp heat conditioning as indicated under a).

18.2.2 Implosion test

Cracks are propagated in the envelope of each tube by the following method:

An area on the side or on the face of each tube is scratched (see figure 12) with a diamond stylus and this place is repeatedly cooled with liquid nitrogen or the like until a fracture occurs. To prevent the cooling liquid from flowing away from the test area, a dam of modelling clay or the like should be used.

After this test, no particles having a mass exceeding 2 g shall have passed a 25 cm high barrier placed on the floor 50 cm from the projection of the front of the tube and no particles shall have passed a similar barrier at 200 cm.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

18.2.3 ~~DU Mechanical strength test~~

Each tube is subjected to one impact of a hardened steel ball having a Rockwell hardness of at least R62 and a diameter of 40 (+1, 0) mm, and which is suspended from a fixed point by means of a string.

Keeping the string straight, the ball is raised and then allowed to fall onto any place on the face of the tube from a height such that the vertical distance between the ball and the point of impact is:

- 210 cm for tubes having a maximum face dimension exceeding 40 cm;*
- 170 cm for other tubes.*

The point of impact on the face of the tube shall be at least 20 mm from the border of its useful area.

After this test, no particles having a mass exceeding 10 g shall have passed a 25 cm high barrier, placed on the floor, 150 cm from the projection of the front of the tube.

18.3 Non-intrinsically protected picture tubes

The apparatus, with the picture tube and the protective screen in position, is placed on a horizontal support at a height of (75 ± 5) cm above the floor, or directly on the floor if the apparatus is obviously intended to be positioned on the floor.

The tube is made to implode inside the enclosure of the apparatus by the method described in 18.2.2.

After this test, no particles having a mass exceeding 2 g shall have passed a 25 cm high barrier, placed on the floor, 50 cm from the projection of the front of the apparatus, and no particle shall have passed a similar barrier at 200 cm.

19 DU Stability and mechanical hazards

19 revised November 18, 2005

Apparatus having a mass of 7 kg or more shall have adequate stability. In addition, the stability shall be ensured when legs, ~~carts or stands~~ supplied or recommended by the manufacturer are fitted.

Compliance is checked by the tests of 19.1, 19.2, 19.2.1 and 19.3.

Apparatus intended whose functionality requires it to be fastened in place is not required to be subjected to these tests, and the test of 19.3 applies only to:

- ~~– apparatus with a direct-view CRT having a diagonal dimension of 48 cm or greater, or~~
- ~~– apparatus, excluding loudspeaker systems, with a mass of 25 greater than 47 kg or more, or~~
- ~~– apparatus, excluding loudspeaker systems, with a mass of 25 kg or more, having a height of 1 m or more, or~~
- ~~– apparatus, excluding loudspeaker systems, in combination with a supplied or recommended cart or stand with a total height of 1 m or more.~~

During the tests in 19.1, 19.2 and 19.3, the apparatus shall not overturn.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

During the test in 19.2.1, the apparatus shall not slide.

If polymeric materials are involved in the construction, the applicable test described in 19.1 – 19.6 shall be conducted both before and after the stress relief test described in 12.1.5.

19.1 DU ~~The apparatus, or apparatus in combination with a supplied or recommended cart or stand, is placed in its intended position of use on a plane, inclined at an angle at 10° to the horizontal, and then rotated slowly through an angle of 360° about its normal vertical axis.~~

All doors, drawers, casters, adjustable feet and other appurtenances are arranged in any combination that results in the least stability. ~~The apparatus, or apparatus in combination with a supplied or recommended cart or stand, shall be blocked, if necessary, by means of a stop of the smallest dimensions possible, to keep it from sliding or rolling.~~

~~If, however, the apparatus, or apparatus in combination with a supplied or recommended cart or stand, is such that, were it to be tilted through an angle of 10° when standing on a horizontal plane, a part of it not normally in contact with the supporting surface would touch the horizontal plane, the apparatus is placed on a horizontal support and the combination is tilted in the most unfavourable direction through an angle of 10°.~~

NOTE The test on the horizontal support may be necessary, for example, for apparatus provided with small feet, casters or the like.

19.2 DU ~~The apparatus or apparatus in combination with a supplied or recommended cart or stand, is placed on a non-skid surface that is at an angle not exceeding 1° to the horizontal with lids, flaps, drawers, doors, casters, wheels, adjustable feet and other appurtenances in the most unfavourable position.~~

A force of 100 N directed vertically downwards is applied in such a way as to produce the maximum overturning moment, to any point of any horizontal surface, protrusion or recess, provided that the distance from that point to the non-skid surface does not exceed 75 cm.

19.2.1 DU A table-top apparatus with a CRT or other type of viewing screen having a diagonal dimension of 48 cm or greater is placed on a clean, dry, glass-covered horizontal surface such that only the supporting feet are in contact with the glass. The glass-covered surface is then tilted in the most unfavourable direction through an angle of 10°.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

19.3 DU *The apparatus or apparatus in combination with a supplied or recommended cart or stand is placed on a horizontal non-skid surface. All doors, drawers, casters, adjustable feet and other moveable parts are arranged in any combination that results in the least stability.*

The apparatus or apparatus in combination with a supplied or recommended cart or stand shall be blocked, if necessary, by means of a stop of the smallest dimensions possible, to keep it from sliding or rolling.

An externally, applied horizontal force of 13 % of the weight of the apparatus or 100 N, whichever is less, is applied in a horizontal direction to that point on the apparatus that will result in the least stability. The force shall not be applied more than 1,5 m above floor level.

If the apparatus or apparatus in combination with a supplied or recommended cart or stand becomes unstable, it shall not overturn at a tilt of less than 15° from the vertical.

The apparatus is placed on a non-skid surface with lids, flaps, drawers, doors, casters, wheels, adjustable feet (levelers) and other appurtenances in the most unfavorable position.

A force as described in table 20A is to be directed horizontally in such a way as to produce the maximum overturning moment to a point on the apparatus as identified in table 20A. The flowchart in figure 24 provides information identical to that in table 20A.

19.3 revised November 18, 2005

Table 20A DU – Values for horizontal force test

Apparatus description	Value of force	Application of force
<u>An apparatus with a direct view CRT having a diagonal dimension of 48 cm or greater with a mass not greater than 30 kg</u>	<u>A force of 20 % of the weight of the apparatus</u>	<u>Applied at any point on the apparatus not exceeding 1.5 m above the non-skid surface until the apparatus is tipped 15 degrees off vertical</u>
<u>An apparatus with a direct view CRT having a diagonal dimension of 48 cm or greater with a mass greater than 30 kg and not greater than 47 kg</u>	<u>60 N</u>	<u>Applied at any point on the apparatus not exceeding 1.5 m above the non-skid surface until the apparatus is tipped 15 degrees off vertical</u>
<u>An apparatus, other than a speaker, having a height of 1 m or greater and a mass of 25 kg or greater and less than or equal to 47 kg.</u>	<u>60 N</u>	<u>Applied at the highest point not exceeding 1.5 m above the non-skid surface until the apparatus is tipped 15 degrees off vertical</u>
<u>An apparatus, other than a speaker, having a mass greater than 47 kg and not greater than 70 kg</u>	<u>A force of 13 % of the weight of the apparatus.</u>	<u>Applied at any point on the apparatus not exceeding 1.5 m above the non-skid surface until the apparatus is tipped 15 degrees off vertical</u>
<u>An apparatus, other than a speaker, having a mass greater than 70 kg</u>	<u>90 N</u>	<u>Applied at any point on the apparatus not exceeding 1.5 m above the non-skid surface until the apparatus is tipped 15 degrees off vertical</u>

19.4 Edges or corners, except those required for proper apparatus functioning, shall be smoothed (no abrupt discontinuity) when they could otherwise be hazardous to the USER because of location or application in the apparatus.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

19.5 DU Glass, with the exception of picture tubes and laminated glass, with a surface area exceeding 0,1 m² or with a major dimension exceeding 450 mm, shall not be shattered in a manner likely to result in a skin lacerating injury.

Compliance is checked by the test of 12.1.3 using the impact hammer only.

If thereby the glass breaks or cracks, an additional test according to 19.5.1 is made on a separate test sample.

19.5 revised November 18, 2005

19.5.1 Fragmentation test

The test sample is supported over its whole area and precautions shall be taken to ensure that particles will not be scattered upon fragmentation. Then the test sample is shattered with a centre punch placed approximately 15 mm in from the midpoint of one of the longer edges of the test sample. Within 5 min of fracture, and without using any aid to vision, except spectacles if normally worn, the particles are counted in a square of 50 mm side located approximately at the centre of the area of coarsest fracture and excluding any area within 15 mm of any edge or hole.

The test sample shall fragment in such a way that the number of particles counted in a square of 50 mm side shall not be less than 45.

NOTE A suitable method of counting the particles is to place a square of 50 mm side of transparent material over the test sample and mark a spot of ink as each particle within the square is counted. To count particles at the edges of the square, select any two adjacent sides of the square and count all the particles intersected by these, and exclude all other intersected particles.

19.6 DU Wall or ceiling or equipment rack mounting means

The mounting means of apparatus intended for wall or ceiling or equipment rack mounting shall be adequate.

Compliance is checked by inspection of the construction and of available data, or where necessary, by the following test.

The apparatus is mounted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, a force in addition to the weight of the apparatus is applied downwards through the centre of gravity, for 1 min. The additional force shall be equal to three times the weight of the apparatus but not less than 50 N. The apparatus and its associated mounting means shall remain secure during the test.

20 Resistance to fire

The apparatus shall be so designed that the start and spread of fire is prevented as far as possible, and shall not give rise to danger of fire to the surroundings of the apparatus.

This is achieved as follows:

- by using good engineering practice in design and production of the apparatus to avoid
POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES,

and

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

- by using materials of low flammability for internal parts in the vicinity of POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES,

and

- by using FIRE ENCLOSURES to limit the spread of fire.

The requirements are considered to be fulfilled, if the apparatus complies with the requirements of 20.1 and 20.2.

NOTE 1 It is recommended that the quantity of environmentally unfriendly flame retardant materials should be kept as low as possible in order to minimise environmental pollution.

NOTE 2 In Australia and New Zealand special national conditions apply which include tests based on reconciliation with the philosophy of IEC 60695 [9] with respect to glow-wire testing, needle-flame testing, consequential testing and end-product consequential testing.

20.1 DU Electrical components and mechanical parts

20.1 revised November 18, 2005

Electrical components and mechanical parts with the exception of those in a) and b), shall comply with the requirements of 20.1.1, 20.1.2, 20.1.3 and 20.1.4.

~~a) Components that are contained in an enclosure having a flammability category of V-0 according to IEC 60695-11-10 and having openings only for the connecting wires filling the openings completely, and for ventilation not exceeding 1 mm in width regardless of length.~~

b) The following parts which would contribute negligible fuel to a fire:

- small mechanical parts, such as mounting parts, gears, cams, belts and bearings, if the mass of the non-metallic material of each part does not exceed 4 g, excluding metal, glass and ceramic;

~~– parts such as projection TV lenses, loudspeaker parts, external accessories, and fibrous materials less than 0.25 mm thick;~~

- small electrical components such as:

- integrated circuits, transistors, optocoupler packages;
- capacitors with a volume not exceeding 1 750 mm³,

provided these components are mounted on material of flammability category V-1 or better according to ~~IEC 60695-11-10~~ UL 94.

NOTE 1 Connectors are regarded as electrical components.

NOTE 2 In considering how to minimise propagation of fire and what "small parts" are, account should be taken of the cumulative effect of small parts adjacent to each other for the possible effect of propagating fire from one part to another.

NOTE 3 In the forthcoming Amendment 2 of IEC 60065, other occurrences of IEC 60707 will be replaced.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

20.1.1 Electrical components

Electrical components shall comply with the relevant flammability requirement of clause 14.

Where there are no applicable flammability requirements in clause 14, the requirements of 20.1.4 apply.

Compliance is checked by appropriate tests of clause 14 or 20.1.4.

20.1.2 DC Internal wiring

Sleeving, extruded tubing and insulation on wiring shall not contribute to the spread of fire shall be rated VW-1, under following conditions:

- a) ~~wiring working at voltages exceeding 4 kV (peak) a.c. or d.c. located in a circuit that is considered a POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE, OR~~
- b) ~~wiring leaving an internal FIRE ENCLOSURE with the exception of insulation consisting of PVC, TFE, PTFE, FEP or neoprene not located in a circuit that is a POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE but is in contact with wiring located in a circuit that is a POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE.~~
- c) ~~wiring within the areas mentioned in table 21, unless they are shielded by a barrier according to table 21, with the exception of insulation consisting of PVC, TFE, PTFE, FEP or neoprene.~~

NOTE—Reference is made to ISO 1043-1 [19] for the meaning of the abbreviations.

Compliance is checked by the tests of clause G.2, annex G inspection.

Tape in contact with parts of circuits that are POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES shall be flame retardant.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

No Text on This Page

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

20.1.3 DC Printed boards

Base material of PRINTED BOARDS, on which the AVAILABLE POWER at a connection exceeds 15 W or the operating at a voltage exceeding ~~exceeds~~ 50 V up to and including 400 V (peak) a.c. or d.c. under normal operating conditions, shall be of flammability category V-1 or better according to IEC 60707, unless the PRINTED BOARDS are protected by an enclosure meeting the flammability category V-0 according to IEC 60707, or be made of metal, having openings only for connecting wires which fill the openings completely UL 94.

Base material of PRINTED BOARDS on which the AVAILABLE POWER at a connection exceeds 15 W operating at a voltage exceeding 400 V (peak) a.c. or d.c. under normal operating conditions, and base material of PRINTED BOARDS supporting spark gaps which provide protection against overvoltages, shall be of flammability category V-0 according to IEC 60707, unless the PRINTED BOARDS are contained in a metal enclosure, having openings only for connecting wires which fill the openings completely UL 94.

Compliance is checked for the smallest thickness of PRINTED BOARD used, in accordance with IEC 60707 or with clause G.1 of annex G after a preconditioning of 24 h at a temperature of (125 ± 2) °C in an air-circulating oven and a subsequent cooling period of 4 h at room temperature in a desiccator over anhydrous calcium chloride UL 94.

20.1.4 DC DU Components and parts not covered by 20.1.1, 20.1.2 and 20.1.3

This clause does not apply to FIRE ENCLOSURES.

Component power supplies complying with the construction requirements of UL 1310, UL 1950, Third Edition, or UL 60950 are considered to fulfill the flammability requirements of this sub-clause.

When the distance between ~~POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES~~ and components or parts mentioned in the heading does not exceed the values specified in table 21, then these Components and parts shall comply with the relevant flammability category according to IEC 60707 UL 94 as specified in table 21. unless shielded from ~~POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES~~ by a barrier made of metal or meeting the flammability category specified in table 21. The barrier shall be solid and rigid and shall have dimensions covering at least the areas specified in table 21 and shown in figure 13. The dimensions of a non-metallic barrier shall be sufficient to prevent ignition of its edges and of the edges of openings in the barrier.

NOTE—Requirements for barriers consisting of composite material or a combination of layers are under consideration.

Compliance is checked by inspection, measurement and by the test of clause G.3, annex G.

~~PRINTED BOARDS carrying POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES are not considered to be a barrier for the purpose of this subclause.~~

~~POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES inside electrical components are not included in this subclause.~~

Wood and ~~WOOD-BASED MATERIAL~~ with a thickness of at least 6 mm is considered to fulfill the V-1 requirement of this subclause.

~~For apparatus containing voltages exceeding 4 kV under normal operating conditions and where protection is based on distances exceeding those as specified in table 21, the material of the outer enclosure shall comply with the flammability category HB40 or better according to IEC 60707. However, no flammability requirements apply to those parts or areas of the outer enclosure of the apparatus which are protected by barriers or internal FIRE ENCLOSURES.~~

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Compliance is checked for the smallest thickness used in accordance with IEC 60707 or clause G.1 of annex G.

Table 21 DU – Distances from POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES and consequential flammability categories

Open-circuit voltage of the POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE V (peak) a.c. or d.c.	For apparatus containing voltages not exceeding 4 kV				For apparatus containing voltages exceeding 4 kV			
	Minimum distance from POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES to the components or parts (see figure 13)		Flammability category of components and parts according to IEC 60707, if the distance is less than the minimum distance required in the previous column	Minimum distance from POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE to non-metallic barrier Barrier flammability category, if other than metal	Minimum distance from POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES to the components or parts (see figure 13)		Flammability category of components and parts according to IEC 60707, if the distance is less than the minimum distance required in the previous column	Minimum distance from POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE to non-metallic barrier. Barrier flammability category, if other than metal
	Downwards or sideways	Upwards			Downwards or sideways	Upwards		
>50 up to and including 400	13 mm	50 mm	HB75	No requirement	13 mm	50 mm	V-1	5 mm V-1
>400 up to and including 4 000	13 mm	50 mm	V-1	5 mm V-1	20 mm	50 mm	V-1	5 mm V-0
>4 000					See 20.2			

Table 21 DU – Flammability categories for components and parts

Revised Table 21 effective May 18, 2007

Application	Flammability category ^a
<u>Internal barriers for apparatus with voltages exceeding 4 kV peak</u>	V-2, V-1, V-0, VTM-2, VTM-1, VTM-0
<u>Polymeric or fiber parts in contact with a component located in a potential ignition source circuit</u>	V-2, V-1, V-0, HF-2, HF-1, HF-0, VTM-2, VTM-1, VTM-0
<u>Sound-deadening material in contact with speaker connections capable of producing greater than 240 W audio power</u>	V-2, V-1, V-0, HF-2, HF-1, HF-0
<u>Grille covering material, cloth, and reticulated foam</u>	Tablet ^b
<u>Transportable SPECIAL BATTERY pack exterior case</u>	V-1, V-0
<u>Polymeric and fiber materials used in applications other than those specified above</u>	HB, V-2, V-1, V-0, HBF, HF-2, HF-1, HF-0, VTM-2, VTM-1, VTM-0
^a Does not apply to the internal insulating systems of components, except for inductors and windings. See 14.3.2.	
^b The part is to be supported so that its thinnest outside solid surface is in a horizontal position. A tablet comprised of hexamethylene-tetramine (C ₆ H ₁₂ N ₄) having a burning time of at least 100 s, is to be placed on the thinnest section of the part. The tablet is then to be ignited with a match applied to the top of the tablet. The tablet is to be permitted to burn until it is completely consumed or until it burns through the part and falls to the surface below. The test is concluded when the part ceases to flame or glow. When all burning and glowing ceases, the part shall not have burned further than 5 cm from the center of the tablet.	

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

20.2 FIRE ENCLOSURE

20.2.1 DU ~~POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES~~ Each of the following shall be contained in a FIRE ENCLOSURE: (1) circuits and their associated components where the AVAILABLE POWER exceeds 15 W, (2) inductors and windings CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS, and (3) apparatus with open circuit voltages exceeding 4 kV (peak) a.c. or d.c., under normal operating conditions. shall be contained in a FIRE ENCLOSURE which The FIRE ENCLOSURE shall comply with the flammability category V-1 or better in table 22 according to IEC 60707 UL 94 or UL 746C as specified.

A FIRE ENCLOSURE is not required if

- the open-circuit voltage of the ~~POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE~~ is limited to a value < 4 kV by means of an electronic protective circuit, or
- the open-circuit voltage of the ~~POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE~~ does not exceed 4 kV at the moment the faulty connection or interruption occurs:

The voltage is measured with the smallest distance across a faulty connection or interruption by which arcing could start.

Wood and ~~WOOD-BASED MATERIAL~~ with a thickness of at least 6 mm is considered to fulfill the V-1 requirement of this subclause.

Compliance is checked for the smallest thickness used in accordance with IEC 60707 or clause G.1 of annex G UL 94 or UL 746C.

Table 22 DU – Flammability categories for FIRE ENCLOSURES

<u>Enclosure material/application</u>	<u>Flammability category</u>
<u>Wood and metal</u>	<u>None</u>
<u>Polymeric:</u>	
<u>a) apparatus using high voltage components^a</u>	
MAJOR ENCLOSURE PART	<u>V-0</u>
<u>Parts other than MAJOR ENCLOSURE PARTS</u>	<u>V-1 or V-0</u>
<u>b) commercial audio STATIONARY APPARATUS and PERMANENTLY CONNECTED APPARATUS</u>	<u>5VA</u>
<u>c) other than apparatus itemized in a) and b) above^a</u>	<u>V-2, V-1 or V-0</u>
<u>Hardboard back cover – apparatus using high voltage components</u>	<u>V-1 or 746 5VS</u>
^a A MAJOR ENCLOSURE PART that is not fabricated at the apparatus manufacturing location shall be identified according to the requirements in UL 746D.	

20.2.2 DU Internal FIRE ENCLOSURES shall not have openings for ventilation exceeding 1 mm in width regardless of length that permit accessibility to components, wiring, connections, or PRINTED BOARD conductive patterns where the AVAILABLE POWER exceeds 15 W and to inductors and windings CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS and shall comply with the material requirements in table 22.

Openings for connecting wires shall be filled completely by the wires.

Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement and using the articulated finger probe, figure 18.

20.2.2 revised November 18, 2005

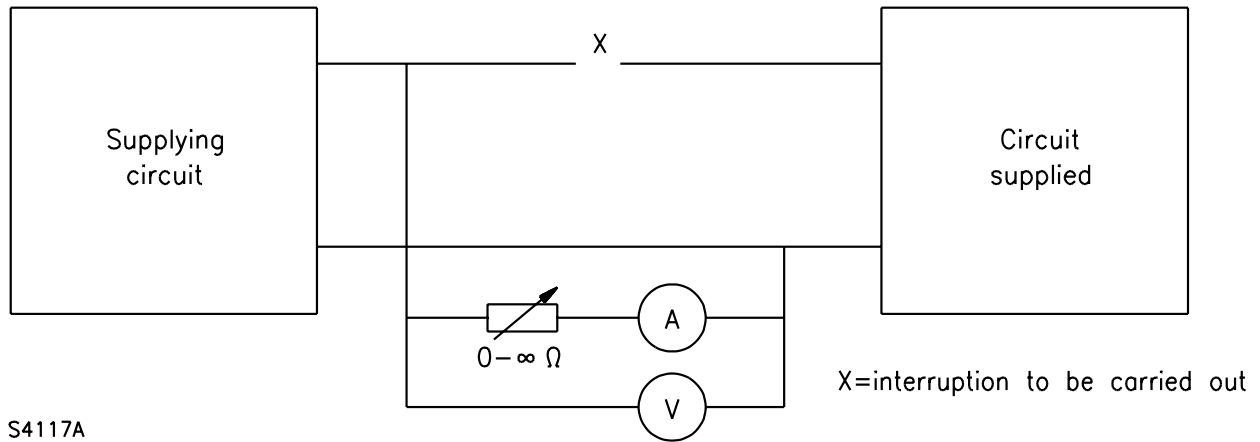
**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

20.2.3 DU If the requirements of 20.2.1 and 20.2.2 are met by an internal FIRE ENCLOSURE, ~~no flammability requirements apply to the outer enclosure of the apparatus and no passive flammability requirements apply to components or parts outside the internal FIRE ENCLOSURE, unless required elsewhere in the standard shall have a rating of HB or better in accordance with UL 94.~~

Insulation of internal wiring complying with 20.1.2 is considered to constitute part of an internal FIRE ENCLOSURE.

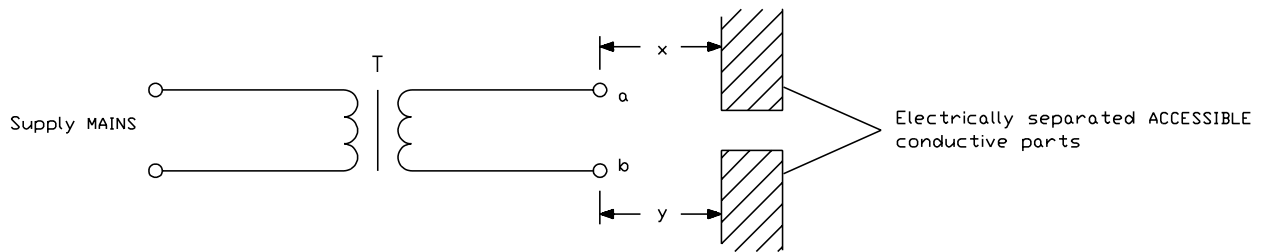
Compliance is checked by inspection.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**



NOTE See 4.3.

Figure 1 – Test circuit for fault conditions



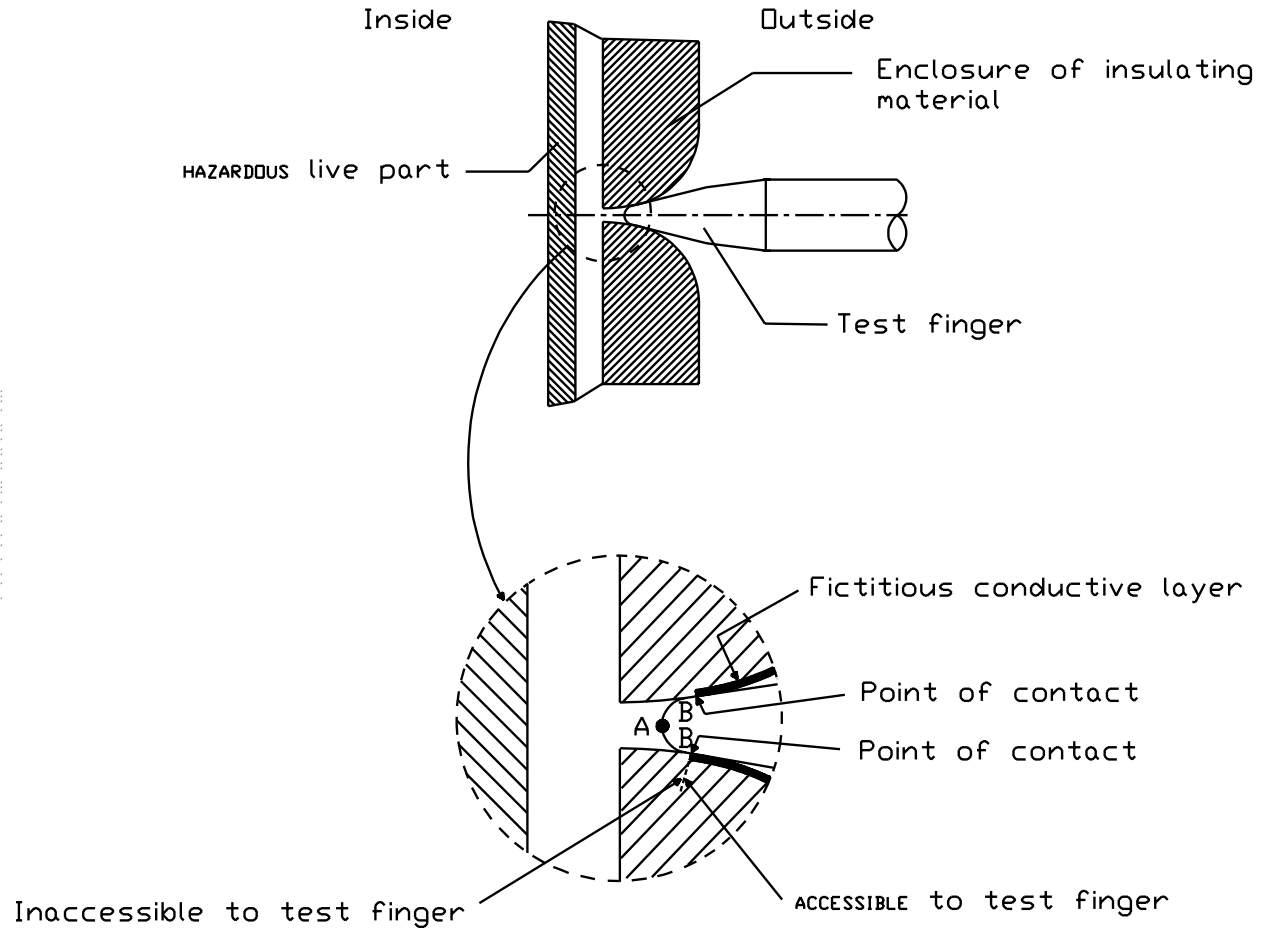
SM1064A

The diagram shows a SEPARATING TRANSFORMER T, where point a is HAZARDOUS LIVE relative to point b. If a and b are inside the apparatus, the sum of the distances x and y is taken into account for the purpose of checking compliance with 8.6.

NOTE See 8.6.

Figure 2 – Example of an assessment of REINFORCED INSULATION

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**



SM970C

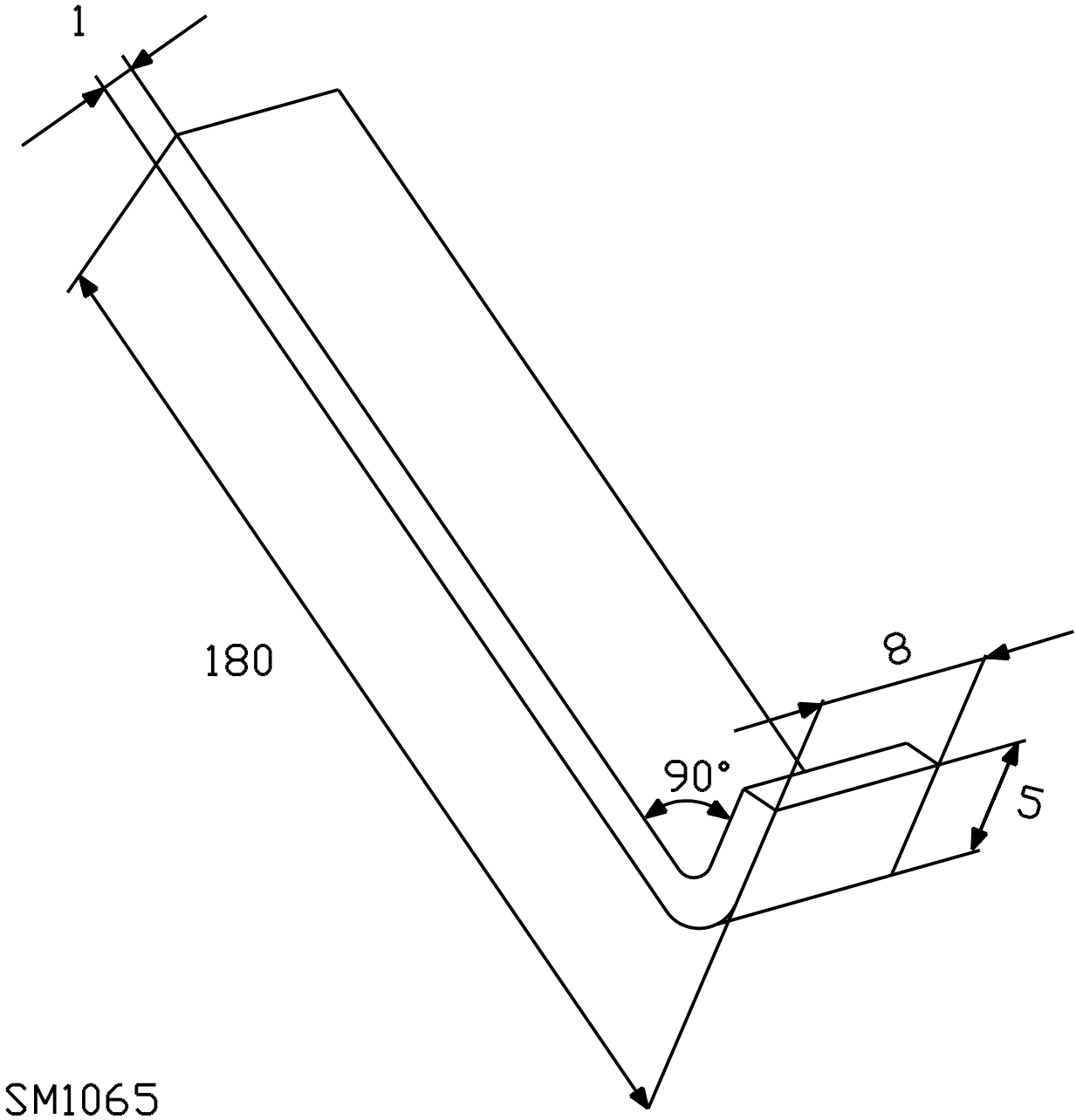
Point A is used for determining accessibility (see 9.1.1.2)

Point B is used for measurements of CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES (see clause 13)

NOTE See 9.1.1.2 and 13.3.1.

Figure 3 – Example of ACCESSIBLE parts

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

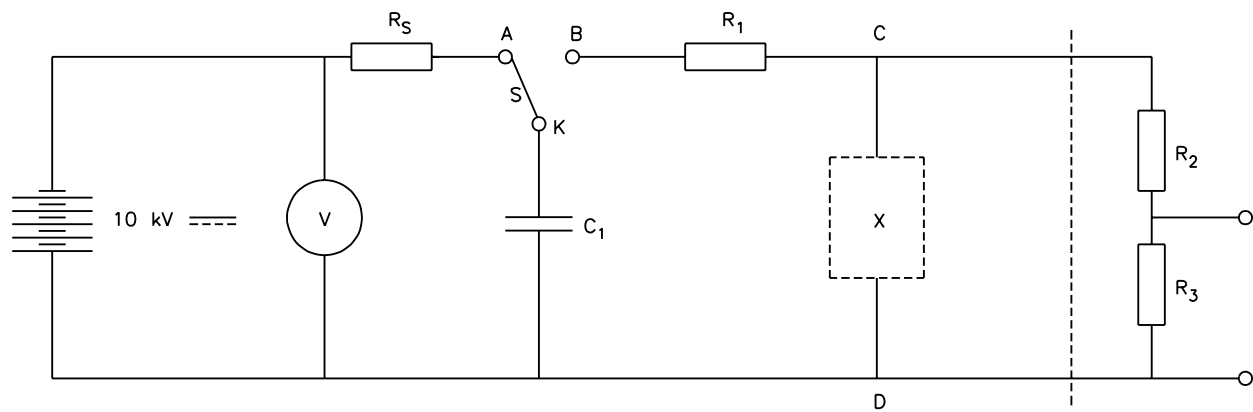


Dimensions in millimetres

NOTE See 9.1.7.

Figure 4 – Test hook

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**



SM10388

$C_1 = 1 \text{ nF}$ $R_1 = 1 \text{ k}\Omega$ $R_2 = 100 \text{ M}\Omega$ $R_3 = 0,1 \text{ M}\Omega$ $R_s = 15 \text{ M}\Omega$

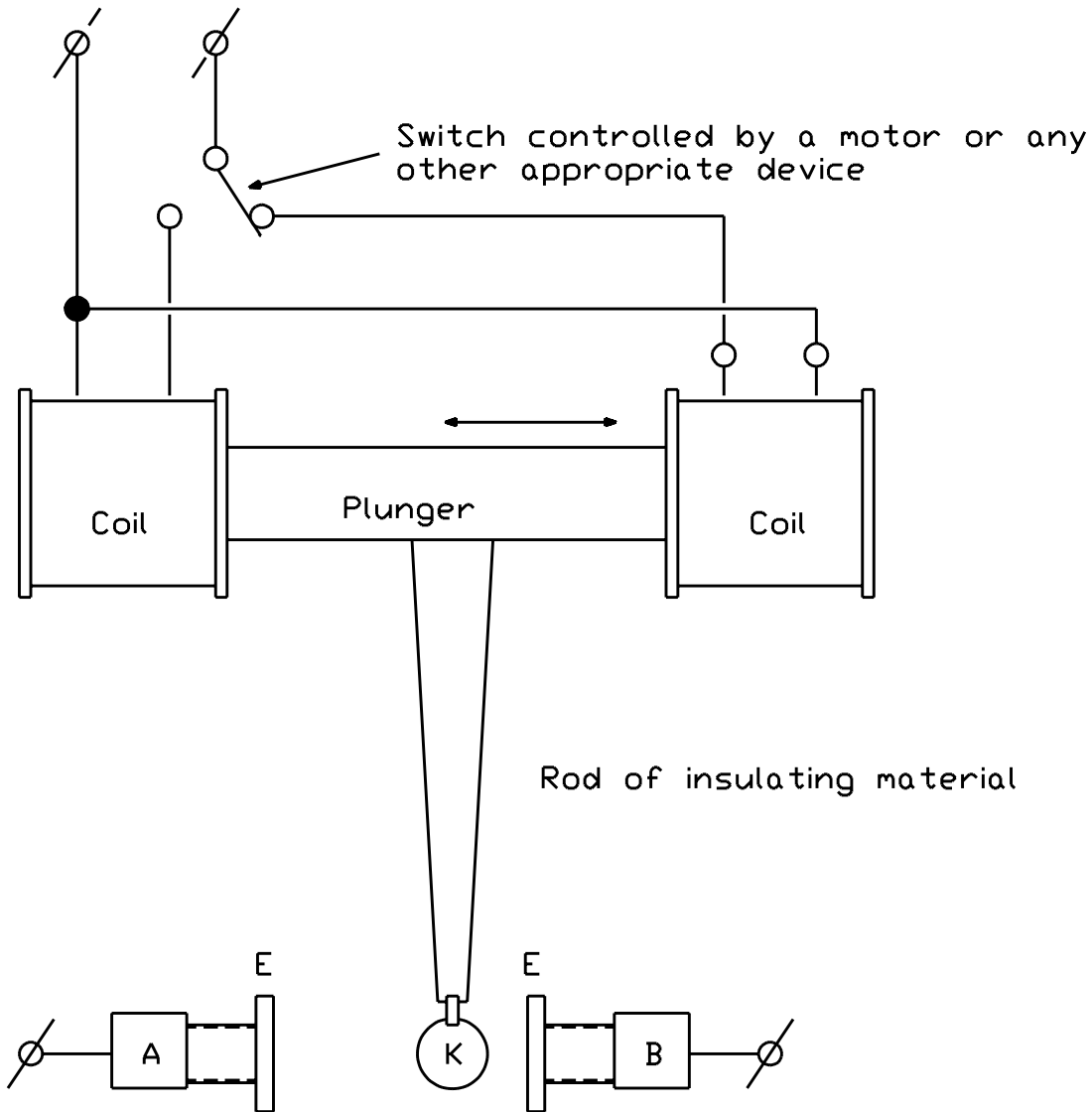
The switch S is a critical part of the circuit. It must be so designed that as little as possible of the available energy is dissipated in arcing or inadequate insulation. An example of such a switch is given in figure 5B.

The component X under test is connected to the terminals C and D. Optionally the voltage divider R_2 , R_3 may be provided so that an oscilloscope connected across R_3 permits the observation of the voltage waveform across the component under test. This voltage divider is compensated so that the observed waveform corresponds with that across the component under test.

NOTE See 10.1 and 14.1.

Figure 5A – Surge test – Test circuit

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**



SM1050A

The switch (S in figure 5A) comprises the following parts:

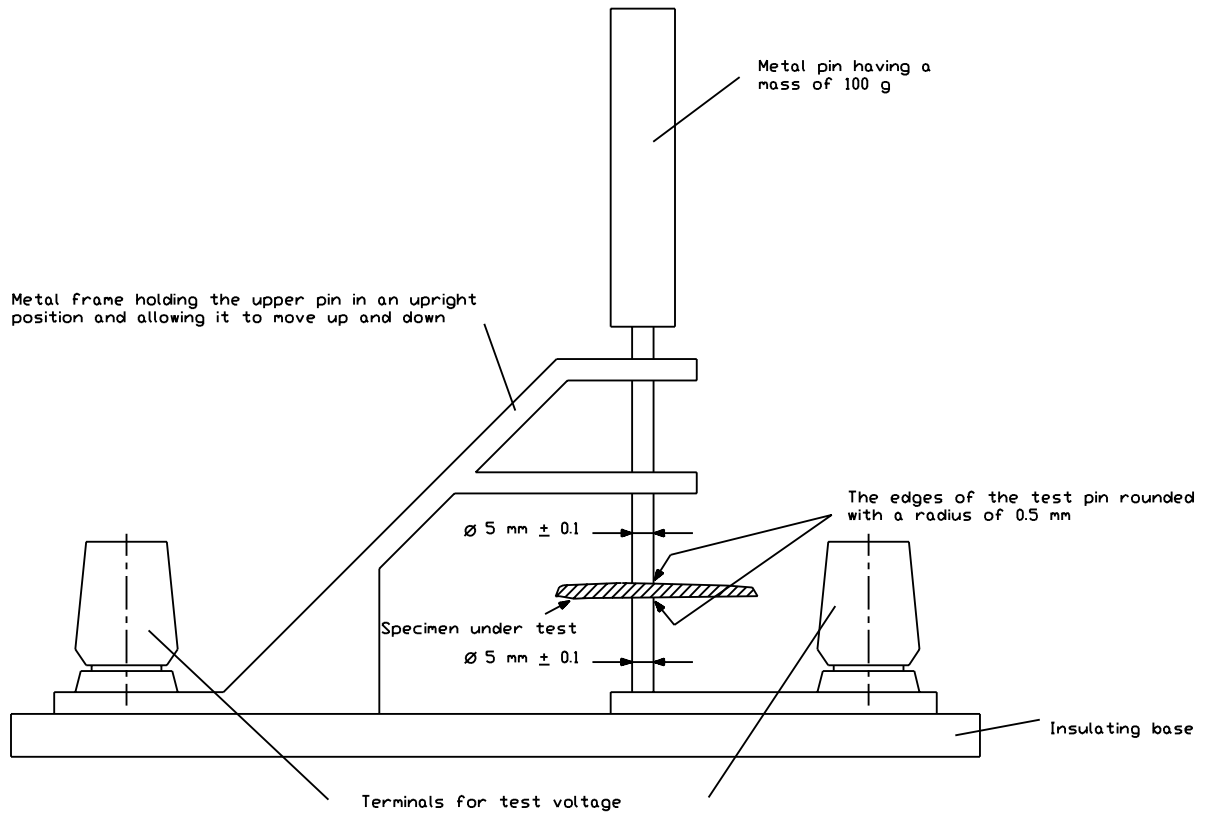
- the brass pillars A and B support circular electrodes E spaced at a distance of 15 mm;
- K is a brass sphere of 7 mm diameter and is supported on a rigid rod of insulating material approximately 150 mm long.

A, B and K are connected as shown in figure 5A, K by means of a flexible wire.

Care shall be taken to avoid bouncing of sphere K.

Figure 5B – Surge test – Example of a switch to be used in the test circuit

*UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL*

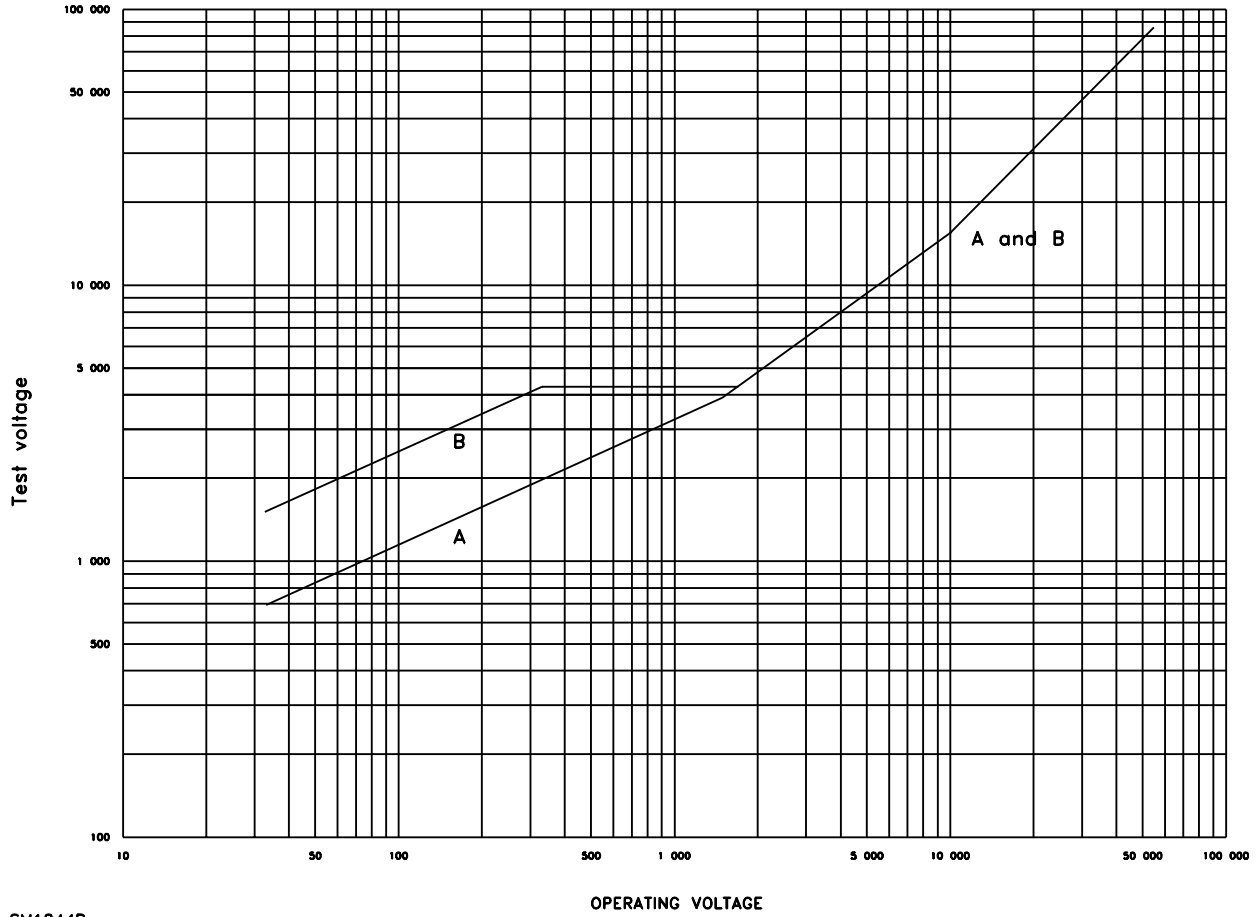


SM1053

NOTE See 10.3.2.

Figure 6 – Dielectric strength test instrument

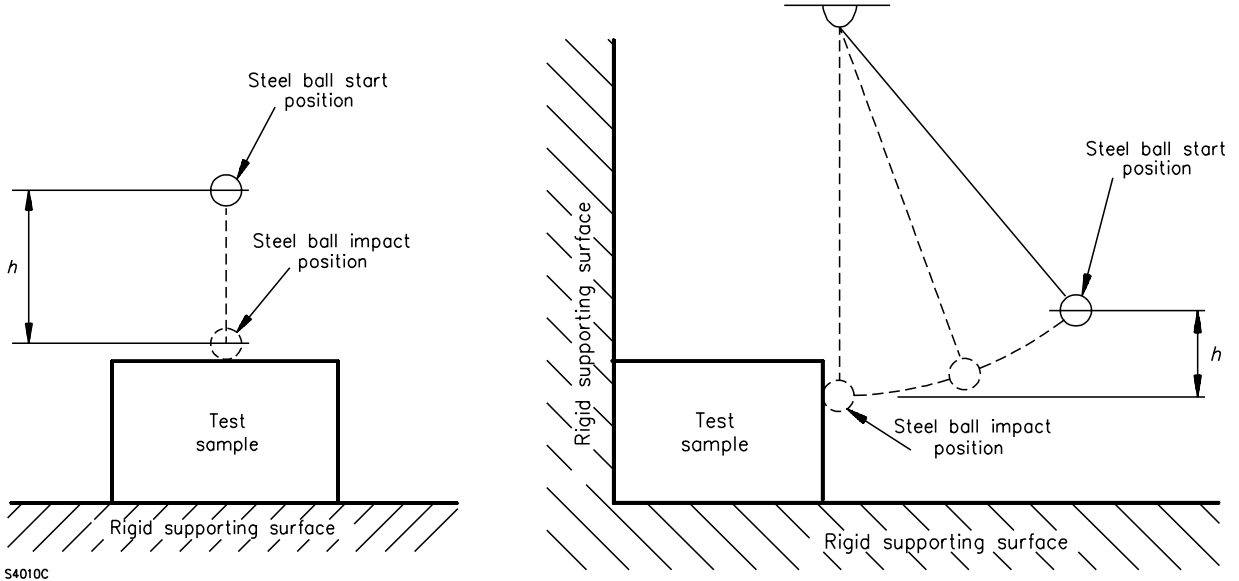
**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**



NOTE See 10.3.2 and table 5.

Figure 7 – Test voltages

*UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL*

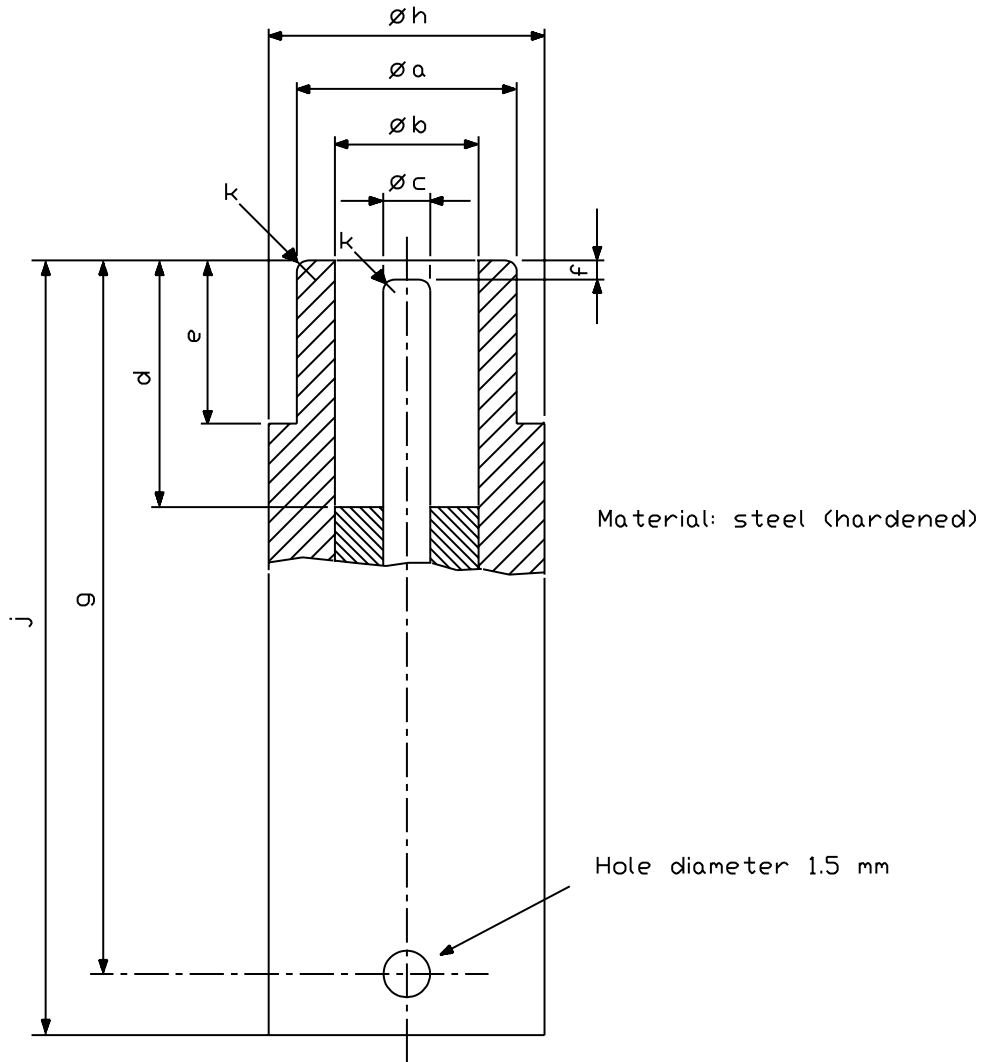


S4010C

NOTE See 12.1.3

Figure 8 – Impact test using a steel ball

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**



SM1056

Dimensions in millimetres

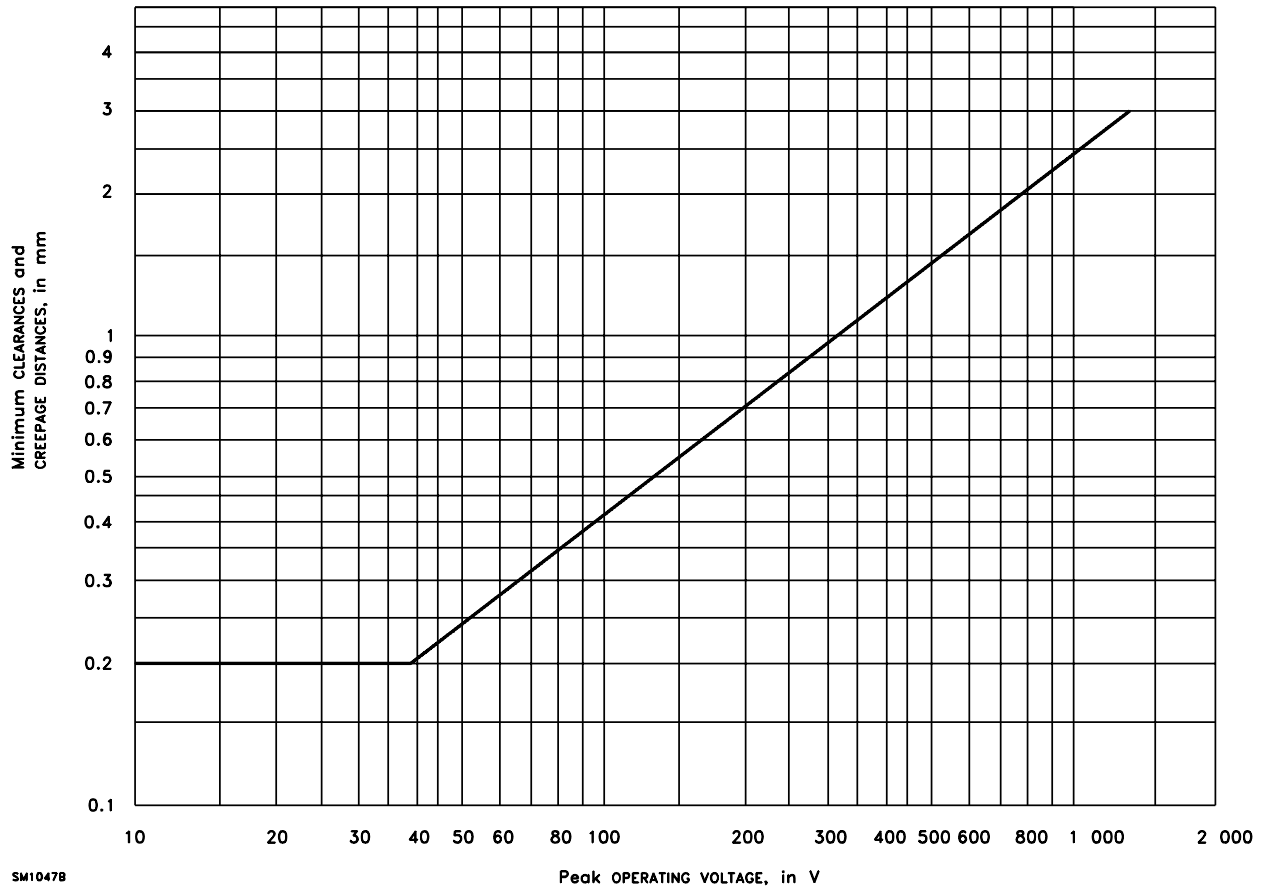
a	b min.	c	d min.	e min.	f	g	h	j	k min.
0 9,576 -0,1	8,05	0 2,438 -0,1	9,1	7,112	0,8 ± 0,4	40 ± 0,4	12 ± 0,4	43 ± 0,4	0,3 radii

The mating section of the test plug is in accordance with IEC 60169-2 [3], figure 7.

NOTE See 12.5.

Figure 9 – Test plug for mechanical tests on antenna coaxial sockets

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**



The curve is defined by the formula:

$$\log d = 0,78 \log (U/300)$$

with a minimum of 0,2 mm

where

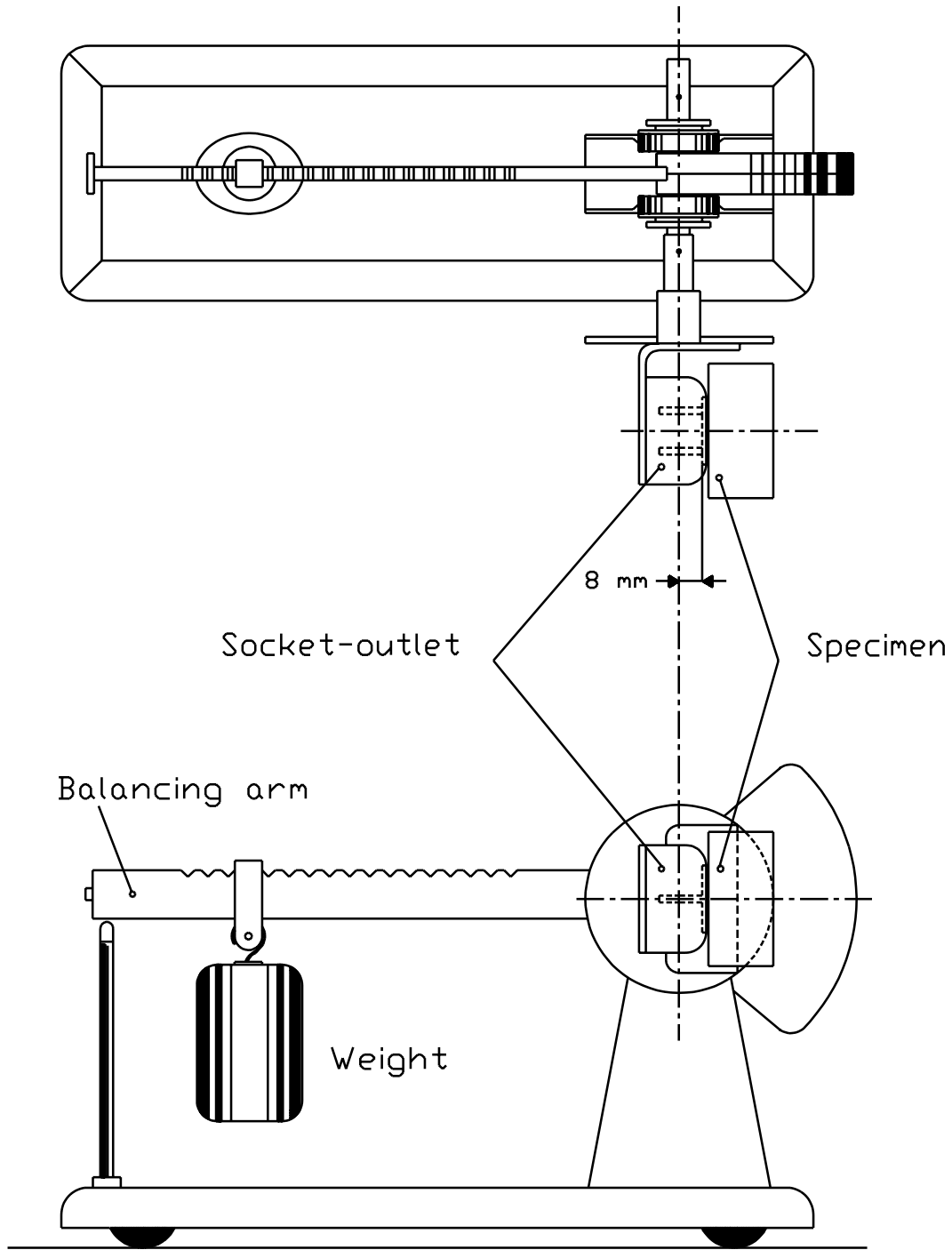
d is the distance;

U is the peak voltage (V).

NOTE See 13.5.1.

Figure 10 – Minimum CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES on PRINTED BOARDS

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

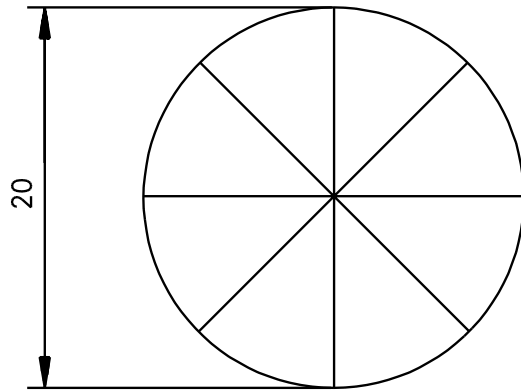


SM1055B

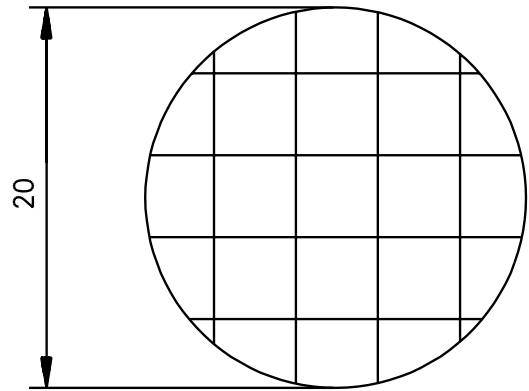
NOTE See 15.4.1.

Figure 11 – Test apparatus for devices forming a part of the MAINS plug

*UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL*



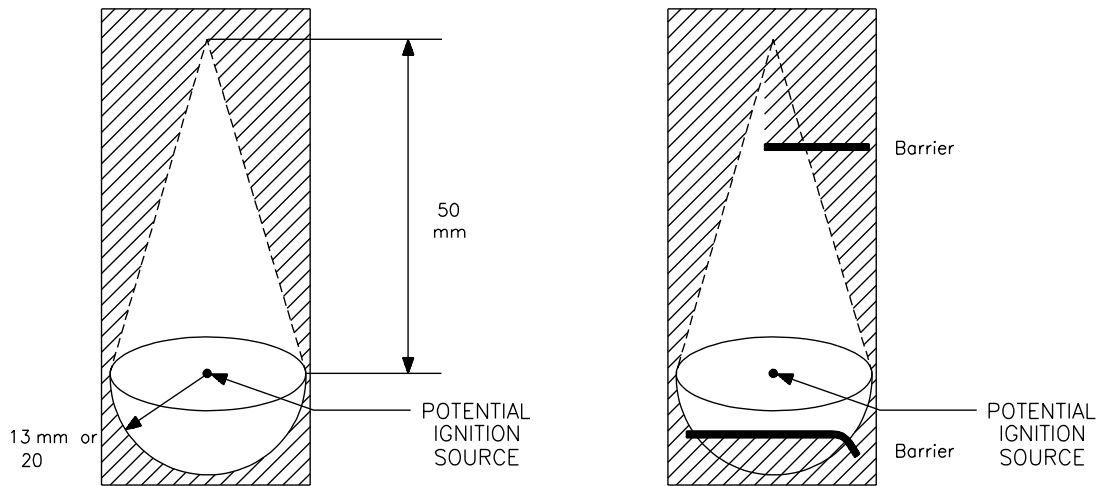
SM1040



Dimensions in millimetres

NOTE See 18.2.2.

Figure 12 – Scratch patterns for implosion test



S4466

NOTE In the shaded areas, the requirements of 20.1.4 but not covered by table 21, apply.

NOTE See 20.1.4.

Figure 13 – Distances from a POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE and an example for the design of barriers

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Figure 14 Mandrel

Figure 14 added November 18, 2005

Dimensions in millimeters

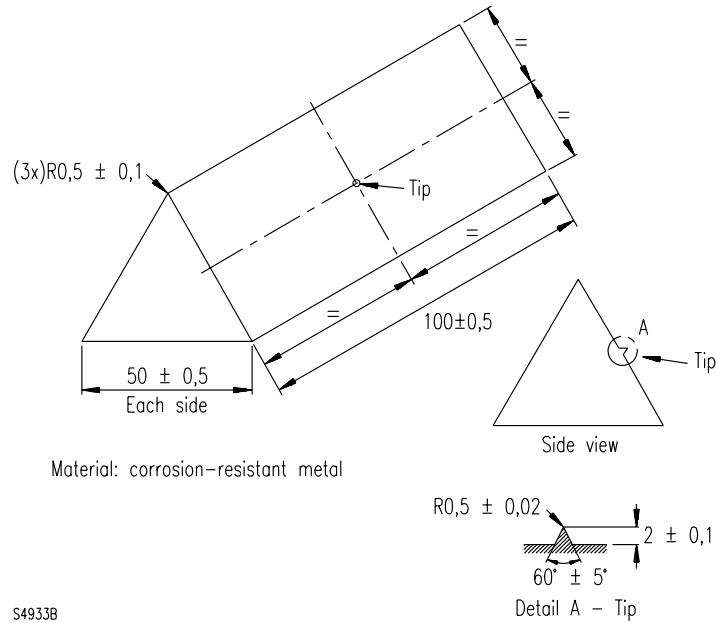
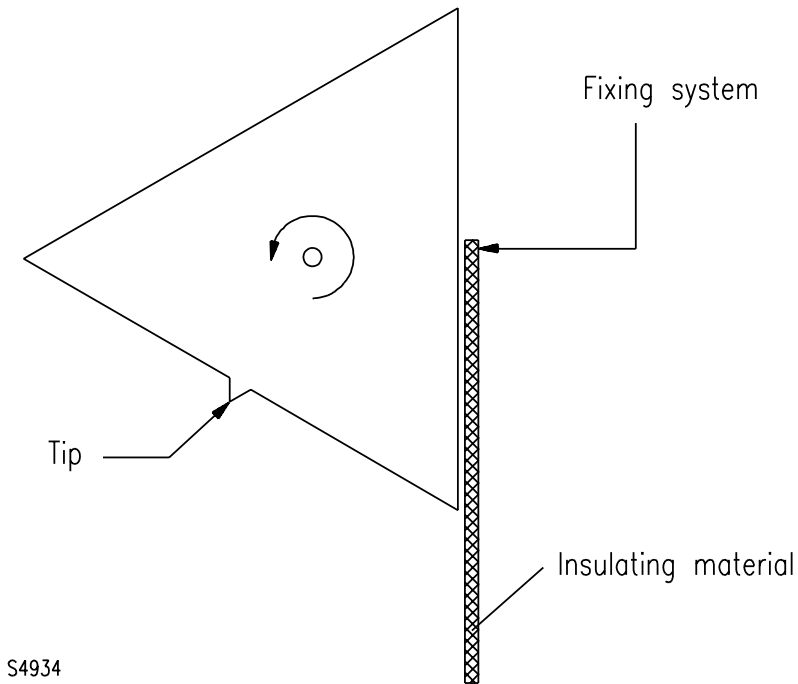


Figure 15 Initial position of mandrel

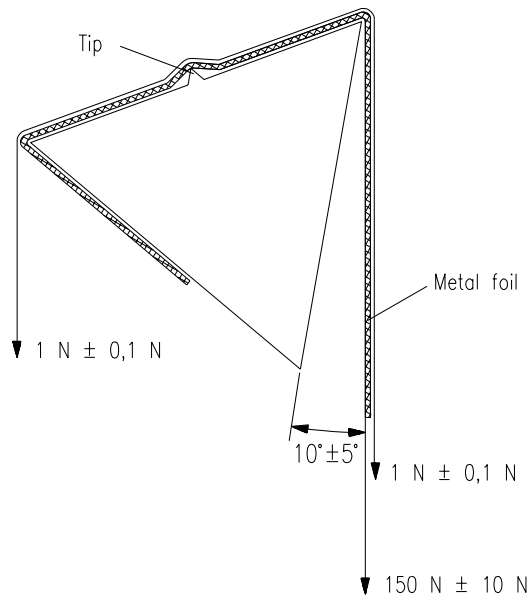
Figure 15 added November 18, 2005



UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL

Figure 16
Final position of mandrel

Figure 16 added November 18, 2005



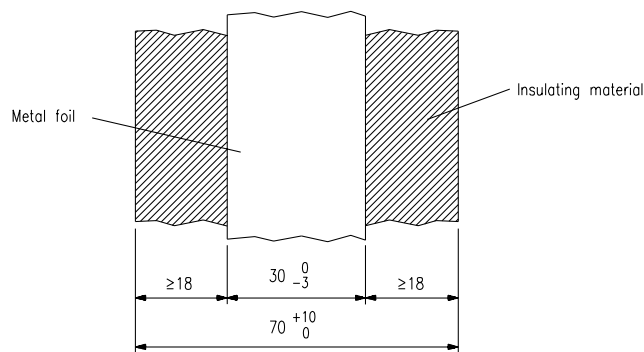
The final position of the mandrel is rotated $230^\circ \pm 5^\circ$ from the initial position

S4935B

Figure 17
Position of metal foil on insulating material

Figure 17 added November 18, 2005

Dimensions in millimeters



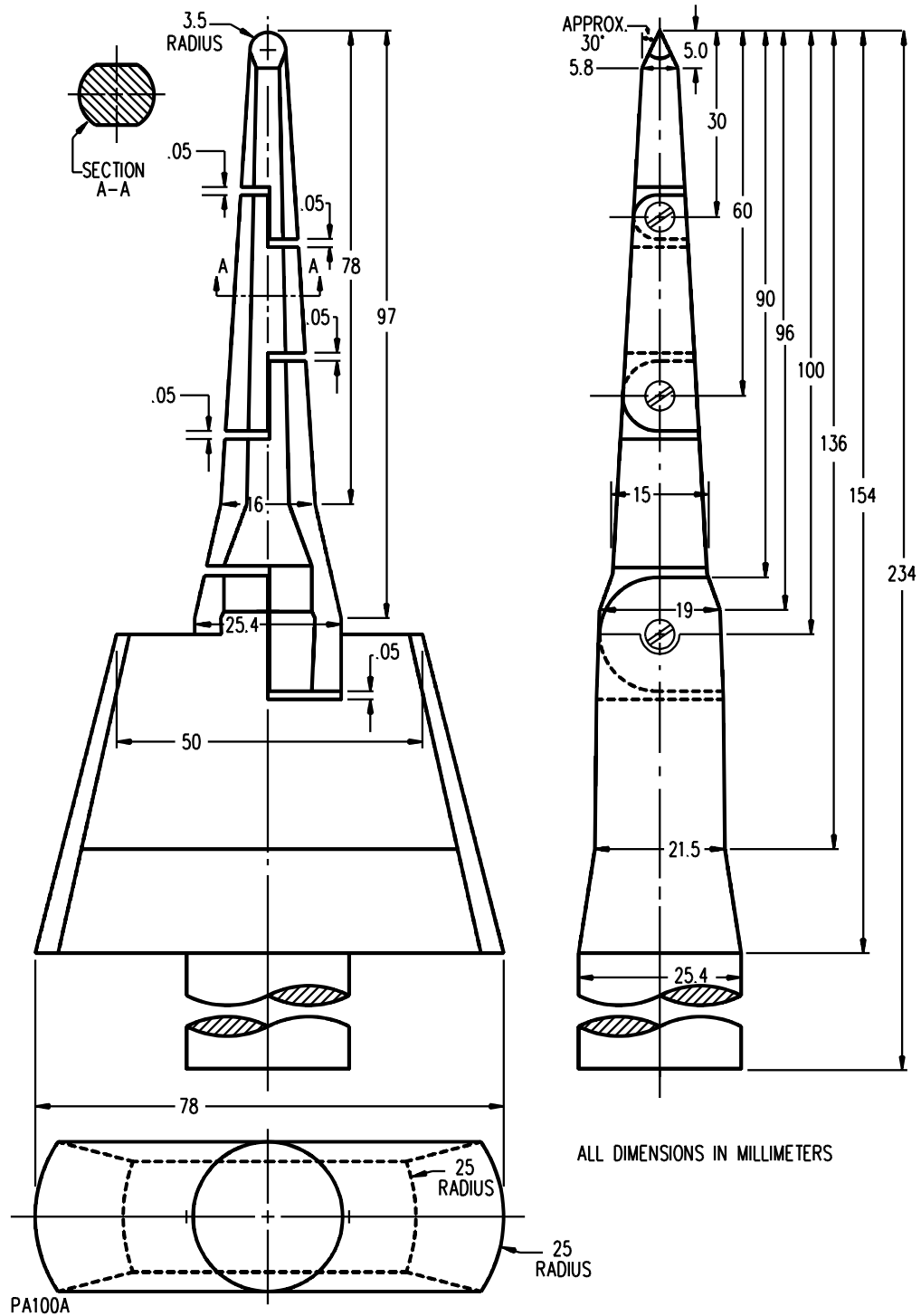
S4936A

NOTE 1 Figure 17 is the same as Figure 6c of IEC 61558-1.

Figures 15 and 16 are slightly modified compared with the Figure 6b of IEC 61558-1.

NOTE 2 See 8.22.

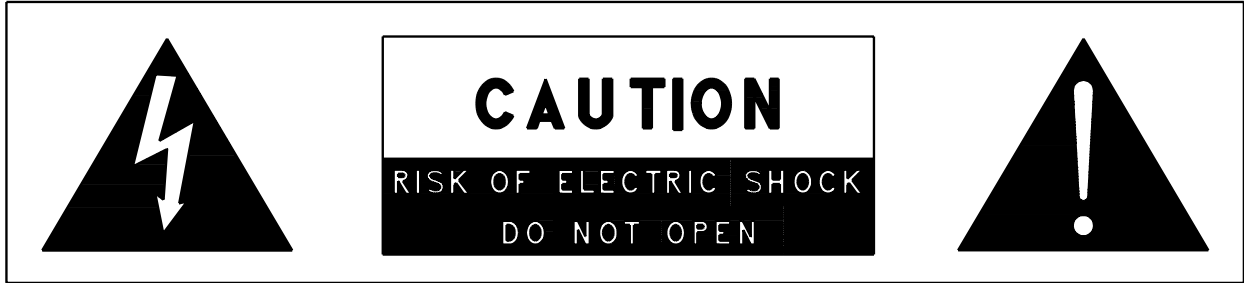
**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**



NOTE See 9.1.1.2.

Figure 18 DU – Articulated finger probe

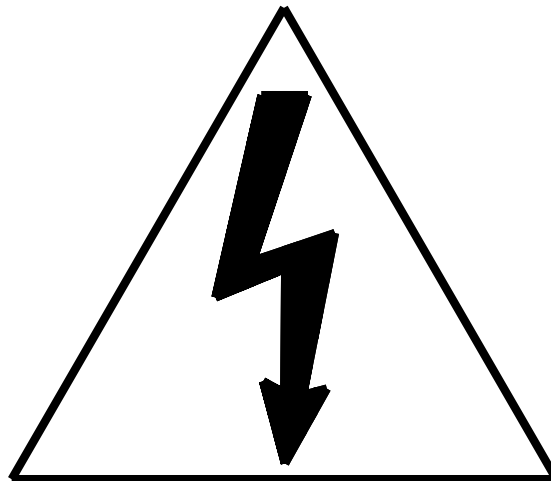
UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL



SB1977A

NOTE See 5.1.

Figure 19 DU – Shock hazard marking and associated graphical symbols



SA1965

NOTE See 5.1.

Figure 20 DU – Shock hazard graphical symbol

*UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL*

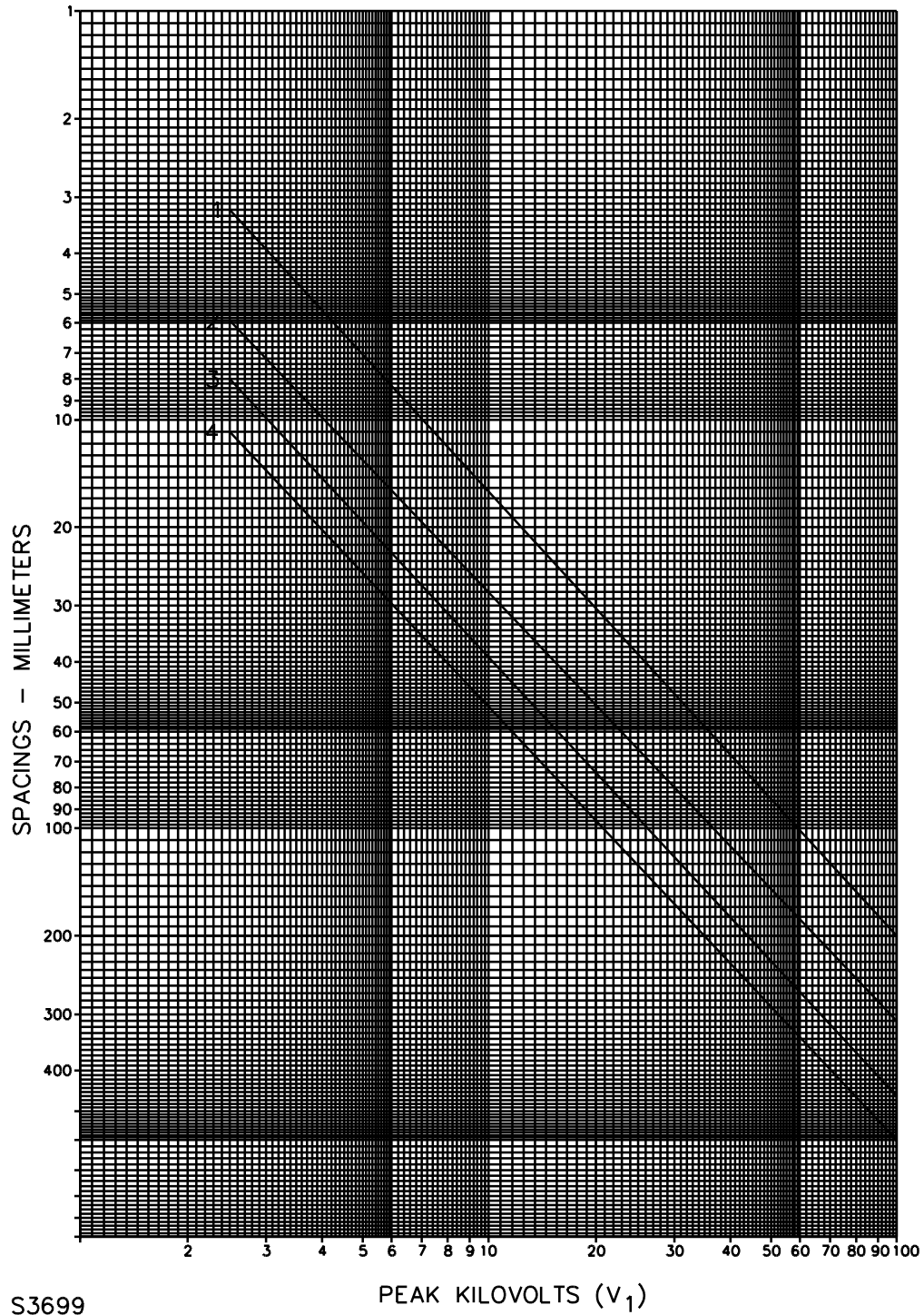


S3125A

NOTE See 5.4.

Figure 21 DU – Portable cart warning

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***



Refer to text and Notes for figure 22 on following page.

Figure 22 DU – High voltage spacings

*UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL*

Notes for figure 22:

V₁ – Measured as described in 14.4.1.

Curve 1 – Clearance spacings.

Curve 2 – Creepage spacings – insulating materials having an arc-tracking Performance Level Category (PLC) of 0, 1, 2, 3, or 4.

Curve 3 – Creepage spacings – insulating materials having an arc-tracking PLC of 5.

Curve 4 – Creepage spacings – insulating materials having an arc-tracking PLC of 6 or 7.

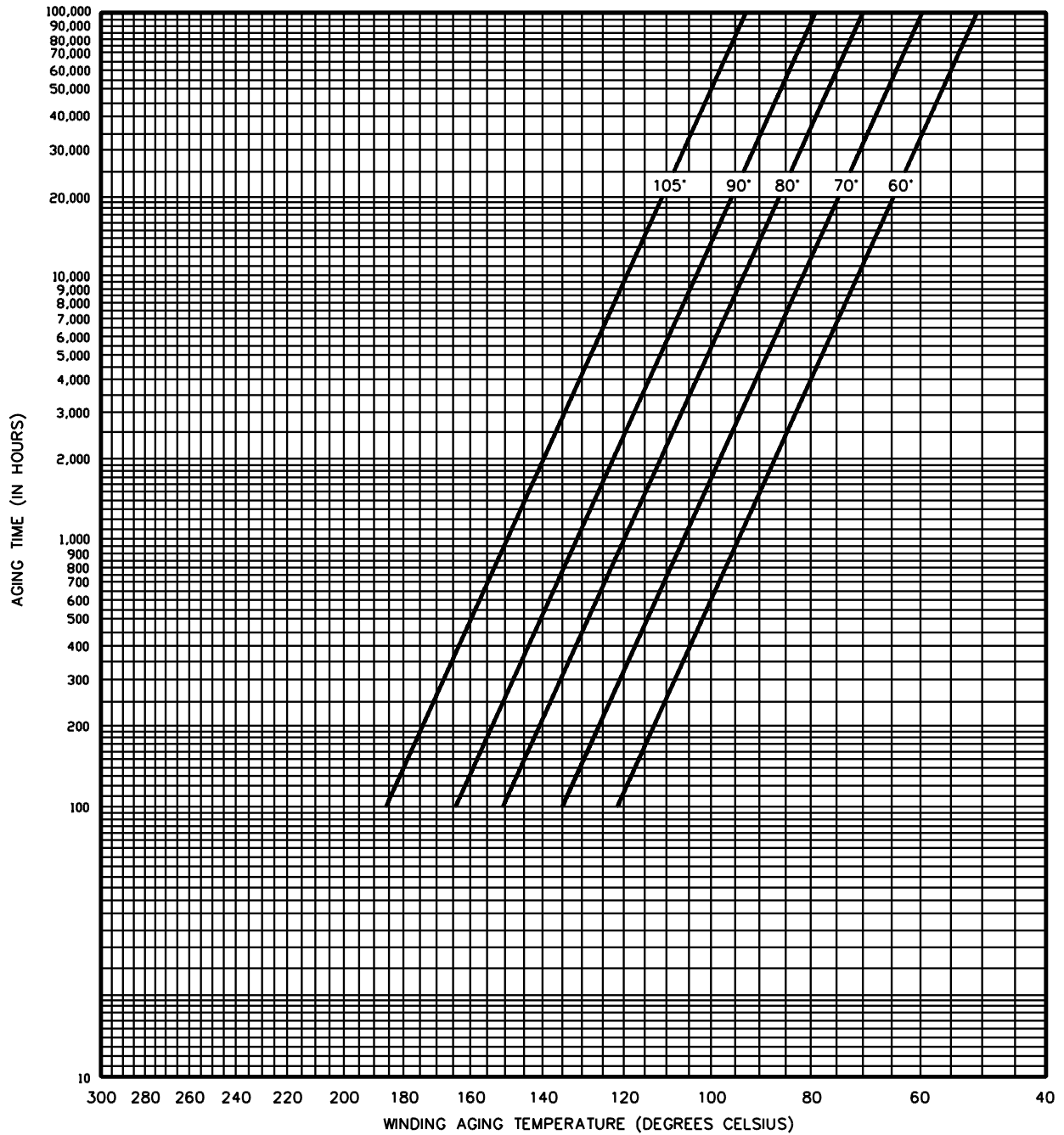
NOTE 1 Use voltage value of $2 V + 1\,000$ for through-air spacings referred to in 14.4.1 and the peak measured voltage for spacings referred to in 14.4.1.

NOTE 2 The arc-tracking characteristics of insulating materials are to be determined by the tests described in ASTM D495.

NOTE 3 Performance Level Category (PLC) refers to an integer that defines a range of test values for a given electrical/mechanical property test as described in UL 746C.

NOTE 4 See 14.4.1

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

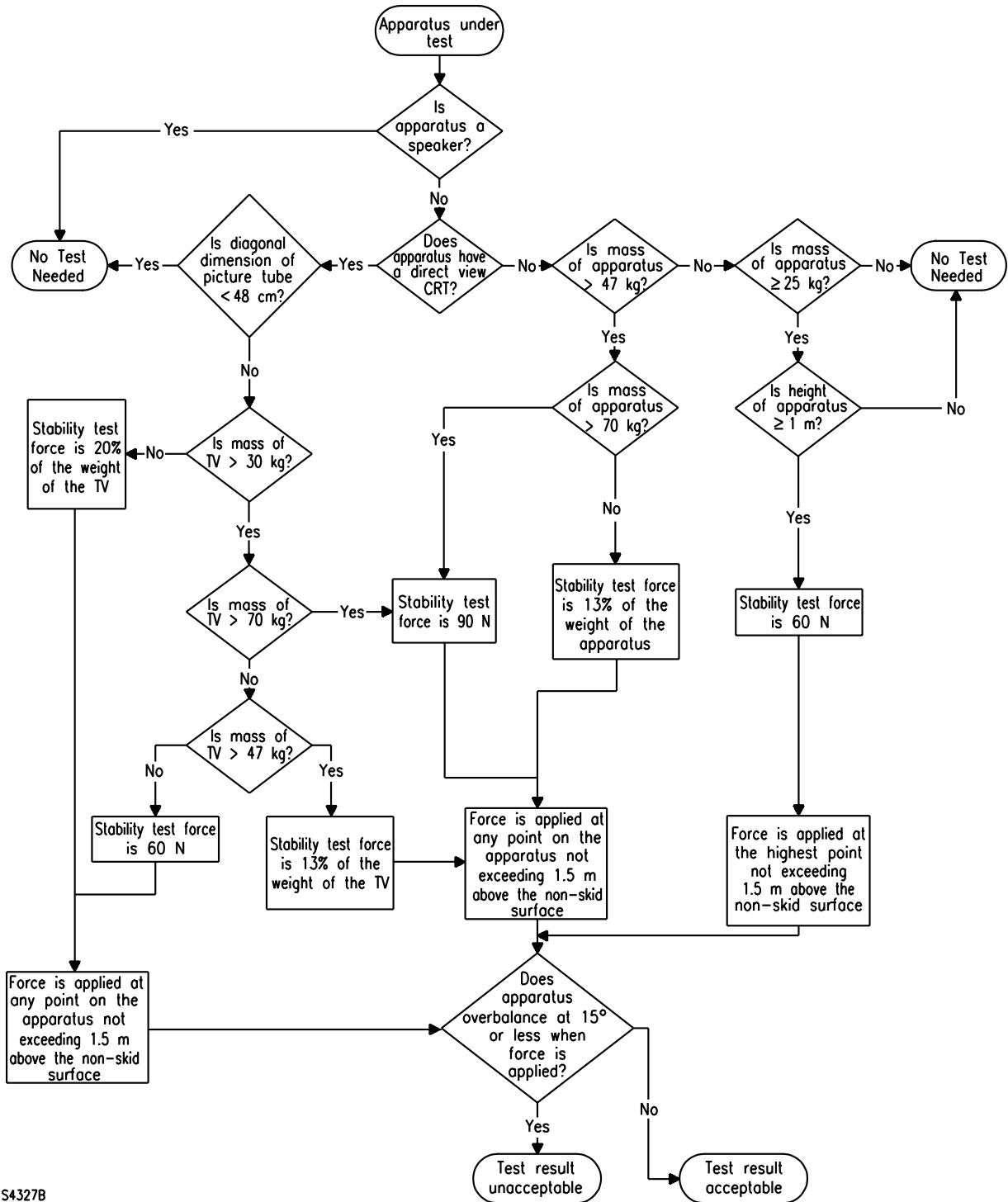


S3295B

NOTE See 14.4.4

Figure 23 DU – Class 105 insulation aging temperatures

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

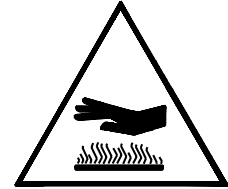
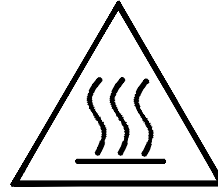
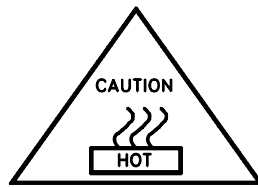


S4327B

NOTE See table 20A

Figure 24 DU – Horizontal force test flowchart

UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
 NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
 DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL



S4070

NOTE See 5.1 and T.5.4.5.

Figure 25 DU – Hot surface marking symbols

Figure 25 added January 24, 2006

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

Annex A
(normative)

Additional requirements for apparatus with protection against splashing water for outdoor use and wet locations

The requirements of this standard, supplemented or replaced by those contained in this annex, apply to apparatus ~~provided with protection against splashing water~~ intended for OUTDOOR LOCATION USE, WET LOCATION use, or permanent OUTDOOR LOCATION use. An apparatus is determined to be intended for OUTDOOR LOCATION use or for use in a WET LOCATION when it has any one of the following attributes:

- a) It is provided with a means (handles, wheels, casters, etc.) making it transportable.
- b) Its mass is less than 35 kg.
- c) It is capable of being operated from a battery.
- d) The literature provided with the apparatus indicates or implies use in an OUTDOOR LOCATION OR a WET LOCATION.

An apparatus as described in a), b), or c) above that is marked as specified in 5.4.1 a) is not intended for use in an OUTDOOR LOCATION OR WET LOCATION.

An apparatus is determined to be for permanent OUTDOOR LOCATION use when its use entails that it be permanently installed outdoors.

A.2.8.14 DU

OUTDOOR LOCATION

an unprotected location exposed to weather

A.2.8.15 DU

WET LOCATION

in direct connect with earth, and locations subject to saturation with water

A.5 DU Marking and instructions¹⁾

Add the following item after 5.1 i):

¹⁾ The clause numbering of this annex refers to the clauses of this standard.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

No Text on This Page

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

A.5.1—DU j) Protection against splashing water

Apparatus provided with protection against splashing water shall be marked at least with the designation IPX4 in accordance with IEC 60529.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

A.5.4.1—DU a) Subclause 5.4.1 a) does not apply.

A.9.1.1.1 DU General

The following supplements 9.1.1.1:

After being subjected to the conditions described in A.11.1.1, the touch current of an apparatus that is intended for use in an OUTDOOR LOCATION or WET LOCATION shall not be more than 0.5 MIU when the open-circuit potential between any ACCESSIBLE part and earth or any other ACCESSIBLE part is more than 21.2 V peak.

A.10—DU Insulation requirements

Modify 10.2 as follows:

A.10.2—DU Splash and humidity treatment**A.10.2.1—DU Splash treatment**

The enclosure shall provide adequate protection against splashing water.

Compliance is checked by the treatment specified below, which is made on the apparatus fitted with external flexible cords in accordance with the requirements of clause 16.

The apparatus is subjected to the test described in 14.2.4a), of IEC 60529.

Immediately after this treatment, the apparatus shall comply with the tests of 10.3 and inspection shall show that water, which may have entered the apparatus, does not cause any damage in the sense of this standard; in particular, there shall be no trace of water on insulations for which CREEPAGE DISTANCES are specified.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

A.10.2.2 DU Humidity treatment

Subclause 10.2 applies, *except that the duration of the test is seven days (168 h).*

A.11.1.1 DU The apparatus is to be positioned, but not operating, as in actual service and subjected for 1 hour to a water spray supplied by the rain test apparatus specified in UL 1598.

A.11.1.1 revised January 24, 2006

A.16.1 DU Flexible cords shall be suitable for outdoor use.

A.20.2.1 DU Enclosures for apparatus intended for permanent OUTDOOR LOCATION shall comply with the requirements for Type 3 enclosures in UL 50.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Annex B DU
(normative)
Apparatus to be connected to the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS

The requirements of this standard supplemented by the requirements of IEC 62151 as referenced in this annex apply to apparatus within the scope of this standard intended to be connected to TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS.

NOTE 1 In countries listed in IEC 62151, special national conditions apply.

NOTE 2 Attention is drawn to the fact that the telecommunication authorities may impose additional requirements on apparatus to be connected to TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS. Those requirements generally concern the protection of the networks as well as the USERS of the apparatus.

IEC 62151 clause 1, except for subclause 1.4, and clause 2 apply.

IEC 62151 clause 3 applies, with the following modification:

Replace 3.5.4 by the definition 2.4.10 of this standard.

IEC 62151 clause 4 applies, with the exception of 4.1.2, 4.1.3, 4.2.1.1 and 4.2.1.2.

The requirements of 4.1.2 shall be replaced by the following requirements:

In a single TNV-0 CIRCUIT or in interconnected TNV-0 CIRCUITS, the voltage between any two conductors of the TNV-0 CIRCUIT or CIRCUITS and, between any one such conductor and earth shall not exceed the values given in clause 9.1.1.1 a) of this standard.

NOTE 3 A circuit that meets the above requirements, but that is subject to overvoltages from a TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK, is a TNV-1 CIRCUIT.

The requirements of 4.1.3 shall be replaced by the following requirements:

In the event of a single failure of BASIC INSULATION OR SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION, or of a component (excluding components with DOUBLE OR REINFORCED INSULATION), the voltages between any two conductors of the TNV-0 CIRCUIT or CIRCUITS and between any one such conductor and earth shall not exceed the values given in 9.1.1.1 a) of this standard for more than 0,2 s. Moreover, the limit values as given in 11.1 shall not be exceeded.

Except as permitted in 4.1.4, one of the methods specified in 4.1.3.1, 4.1.3.2, or 4.1.3.3 shall be used.

Parts of the interface circuit that do not comply with the requirements for TNV-0 CIRCUITS under normal operating conditions shall therefore not be USER ACCESSIBLE.

The requirements of 4.2.1.1 shall be replaced by the requirements of 2.3.1 of UL 60950, Third Edition.

The requirements of 4.2.1.2 shall be replaced by the following requirements:

NOTE 4 See also clauses 5 and 6.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Separation of TNV-0 CIRCUITS, TNV-1 CIRCUITS and ACCESSIBLE conductive parts from TNV-2 CIRCUITS and TNV-3 CIRCUITS shall be such that

- under normal operating conditions, the limits specified in 4.2.1.1 a) for TNV-1 CIRCUITS (35 V peak, or 60 V d.c.) are not exceeded on the TNV-0 CIRCUITS, TNV-1 CIRCUITS and ACCESSIBLE conductive parts.
- in the event of a single insulation fault, the limits specified in 4.2.1.1 b) for TNV-2 CIRCUITS and TNV-3 CIRCUITS under normal operating conditions (70 V peak, or 120 V d.c.) are not exceeded voltages on the TNV-0 CIRCUITS, TNV-1 CIRCUITS and ACCESSIBLE conductive parts shall not exceed the values given in 9.1.1.1 a) of this standard for more than 0.2 s. Moreover, the limit values as given in 11.1 shall not be exceeded. However, after 0,2 s the voltage limits of 4.1.2 (35 V peak, or 60 V d.c.) shall apply.

The separation requirements will be met if BASIC INSULATION is provided as indicated in table B.1, which also shows where 6.1 applies; other solutions are not excluded.

Table B.1 – Separation of TNV circuits

Parts being separated		Separation
TNV-0 CIRCUIT OR ACCESSIBLE conductive parts	TNV-1 CIRCUIT	6.1
	TNV-2 CIRCUIT	BASIC INSULATION
	TNV-3 CIRCUIT	BASIC INSULATION and 6.1
TNV-1 CIRCUIT	TNV-2 CIRCUIT	BASIC INSULATION and 6.1
TNV-2 CIRCUIT	TNV-3 CIRCUIT	6.1
TNV-1 CIRCUIT	TNV-3 CIRCUIT	BASIC INSULATION
TNV-1 CIRCUIT	TNV-1 CIRCUIT	FUNCTIONAL INSULATION
TNV-2 CIRCUIT	TNV-2 CIRCUIT	FUNCTIONAL INSULATION
TNV-3 CIRCUIT	TNV-3 CIRCUIT	FUNCTIONAL INSULATION

BASIC INSULATION is not required provided that all of the following are met:

- the TNV-0 CIRCUIT, TNV-1 CIRCUIT OR ACCESSIBLE conductive part shall be connected to a PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL in accordance with this standard; and
- the installation instructions specify that the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL shall be permanently connected to earth; and
- the test of 4.2.1.5 shall be carried out if the TNV-2 OR TNV-3 CIRCUIT is intended to receive signals or power that are generated externally during normal operation (for example in a TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK).

At the choice of the manufacturer, it is permitted to treat a TNV-1 CIRCUIT OR a TNV-2 CIRCUIT as a TNV-3 CIRCUIT. In this case, the TNV-1 CIRCUIT OR TNV-2 CIRCUIT shall meet all the separation requirements for a TNV-3 CIRCUIT.

Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement and, where necessary, by simulation of failures of components and insulation such as are likely to occur in the apparatus. Prior to the tests, insulation that does not meet the requirements for BASIC INSULATION is short-circuited.

NOTE 5 Where BASIC INSULATION is provided and 6.1 also applies to this insulation, the test voltage prescribed in 6.2 is in most cases higher than that for BASIC INSULATION.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Clause 5 of IEC 62151 applies, with the following modification in 5.3.1:

The value 1,6 shall be replaced by the value 1,8.

Apparatus intended to be connected to TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS and having ringing voltages applied to the equipment shall be subjected to requirements for Limitation of Touch Current due to Ringing Signals per 5.1.8.1.1 of UL 60950, Third Edition.

Clauses 6 and 7 of IEC 62151 apply.

Apparatus intended to be connected to TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS that uses outside cable subject to overvoltage from power line failures shall comply with requirements for Protection Against Overvoltages from Power Line Crosses per 6.4 of UL 60950, Third Edition.

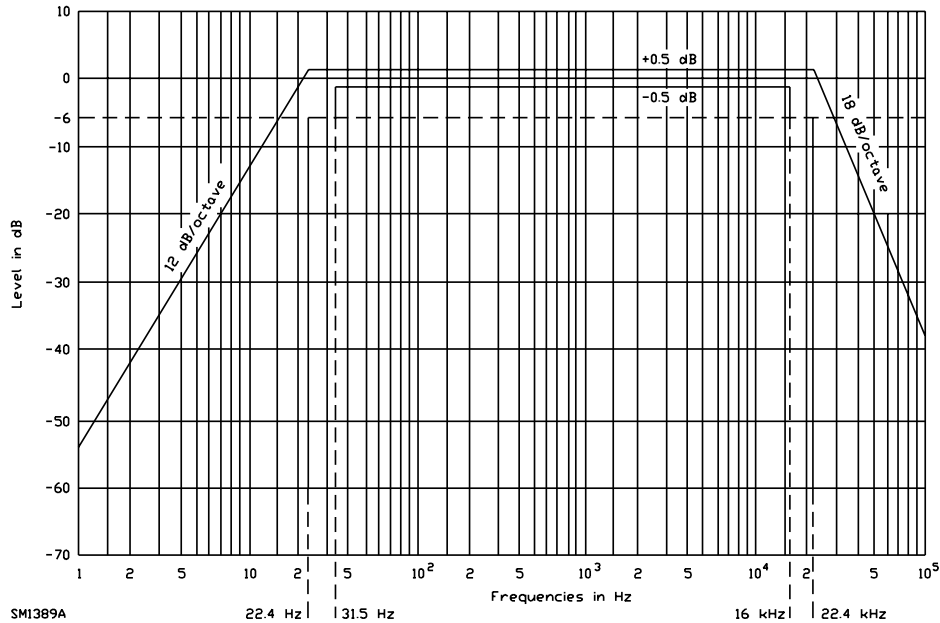
Apparatus intended to be connected directly or indirectly to TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS and containing an earphone which is held against or in the ear shall be subjected to Acoustic Tests per 6.5 of UL 60950, Third Edition.

Annex A up to and including annex C of IEC 62151 apply.

Apparatus intended to be connected to TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS shall be provided with the appropriate markings and instructions described in Annex NAA (6) of UL 60950, Third Edition.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Annex C
(normative)
Band-pass filter for wide-band noise measurement
(Extract from IEC 60268-1)



**Figure C.1 – Band-pass filter for wide-band noise measurement
(amplitude/frequency response limits)**

Wide-band measurement (see 6.1 of IEC 60268-1)

The filter shall be a band-pass filter having a frequency response within the limits shown in figure C.1.

A band-pass filter which has a substantially constant transmission factor between 22,4 Hz and 22,4 kHz, decreasing outside this frequency band at the rates specified for octave-band filters having mid-band frequencies of 31,5 Hz and 16 000 Hz specified in IEC 61260, has a response falling within the limits of this specification.

NOTE 1 Care should be taken when there may be strong signals just above or below the band-limits since in this case the results will depend, to some degree, on the individual frequency response of the filter actually used.

NOTE 2 See 4.1.6.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Annex D DR
(normative)
Measuring network for TOUCH CURRENTS

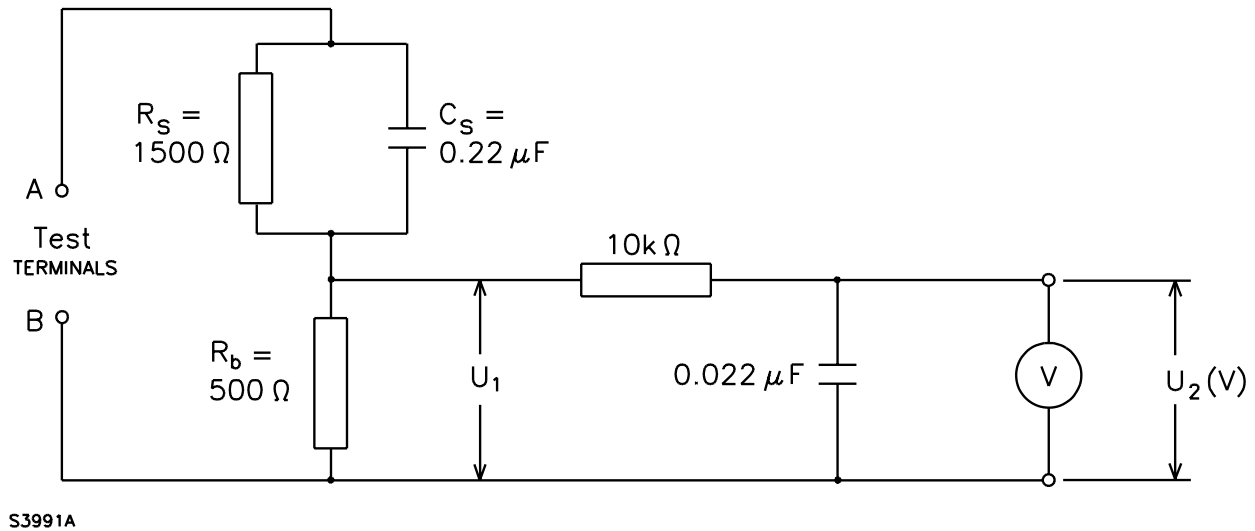


Figure D.1 – Measuring network for TOUCH CURRENTS according to IEC 60990 UL 101

Resistance values in ohms (Ω)

V: Voltmeter or oscilloscope

(r.m.s. or peak reading)

Input resistance: $\geq 1 \text{ M}\Omega$

Input capacitance: $\leq 200 \text{ pF}$

Frequency range: 15 Hz to 1 MHz and d.c. respectively

NOTE Appropriate measures should be taken to obtain the correct value in case of non-sinusoidal waveforms.

The measuring instrument is calibrated by comparing the frequency factor of U_2 with the solid line in figure F.2 of IEC 60990 at various frequencies. A calibration curve is constructed showing the deviation of U_2 from the ideal curve as a function of frequency, in accordance with UL 101.

TOUCH CURRENT = $U_2/500$ (peak value).

MIU = $U_2 \times 2$ (r.m.s value)

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

NOTE See 9.1.1.1.

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

Annex E
(normative)
Measurement of CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES

The methods of measuring CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES which are specified in the following figures are used in interpreting the requirements of this standard.

In the following figures, the value of X is given in table E.1. Where the distance shown is less than X, the depth of the gap or groove is disregarded when measuring a CREEPAGE DISTANCE.

Table E.1 is valid only if the required minimum CLEARANCE is 3 mm or more. If the required minimum CLEARANCE is less than 3 mm, the value X is the lesser of

- the relevant value in table E.1, or
- one-third of the required minimum CLEARANCE.

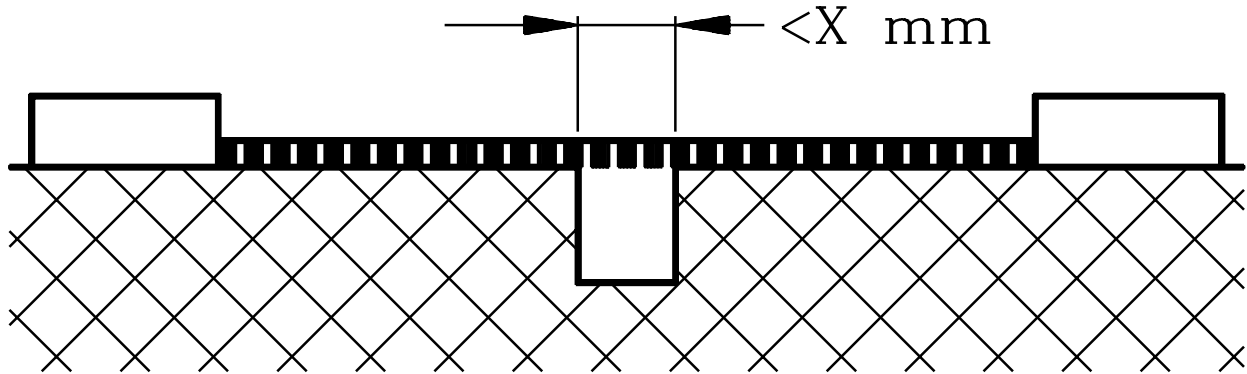
Table E.1 – Value of X

Pollution degree (see 13.1)	X mm
1	0,25
2	1,0
3	1,5

In the following figures, CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES are shown as follows:

..... CREEPAGE DISTANCE _____ CLEARANCE

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

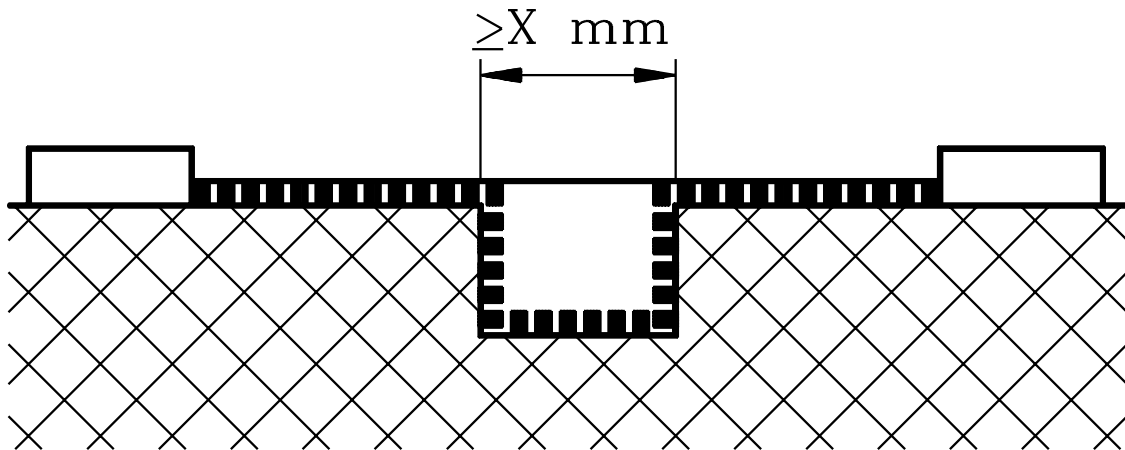


S3409A

Condition: Path under consideration includes a parallel or converging-sided groove of any depth with width less than X mm.

Rule: CLEARANCE and CREEPAGE DISTANCE are measured directly across the groove.

Figure E.1 – Narrow groove



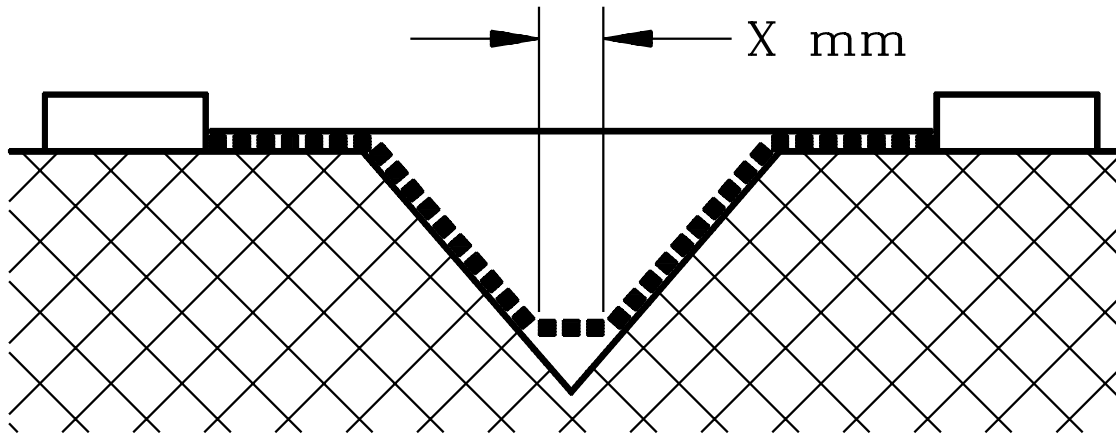
S3410A

Condition: Path under consideration includes a parallel-sided groove of any depth, and equal to or more than X mm wide.

Rule: CLEARANCE is the "line of sight" distance, CREEPAGE DISTANCE path follows the contour of the groove.

Figure E.2 – Wide groove

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

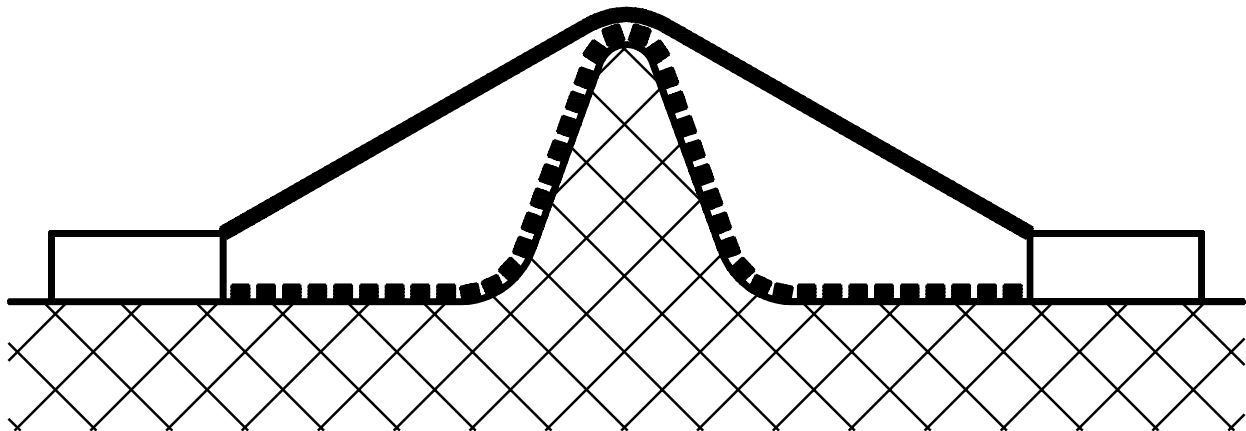


S3411A

Condition: Path under consideration includes a V-shaped groove with internal angle of less than 80° and a width greater than X mm

Rule: CLEARANCE is the "line of sight" distance. CREEPAGE DISTANCE path follows the contour of the groove but "short circuits" the bottom of the groove by a link X mm long.

Figure E.3 – V-shaped groove



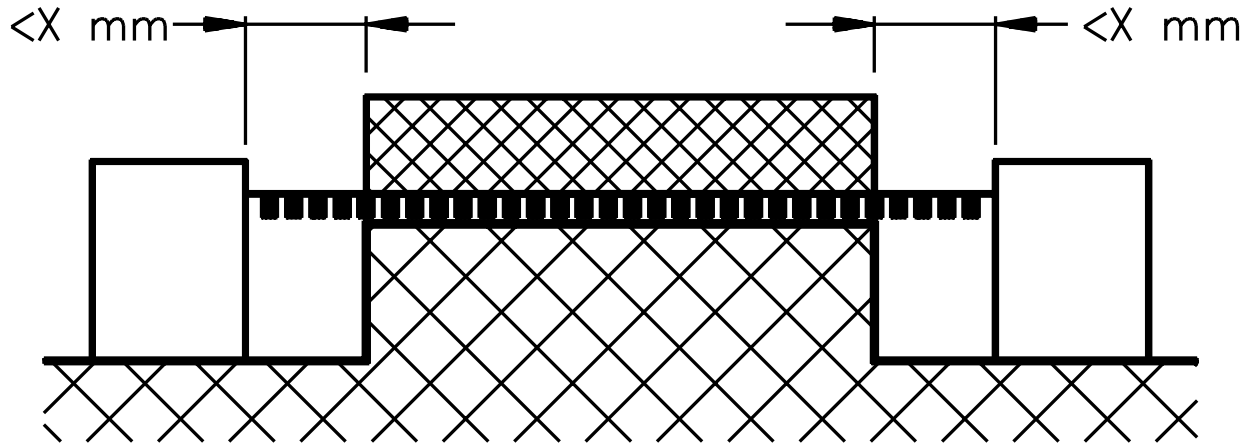
S3412

Condition: Path under consideration includes a rib.

Rule: CLEARANCE is the shortest direct air path over the top of the rib. CREEPAGE DISTANCE path follows the contour of the rib.

Figure E.4 – Rib

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

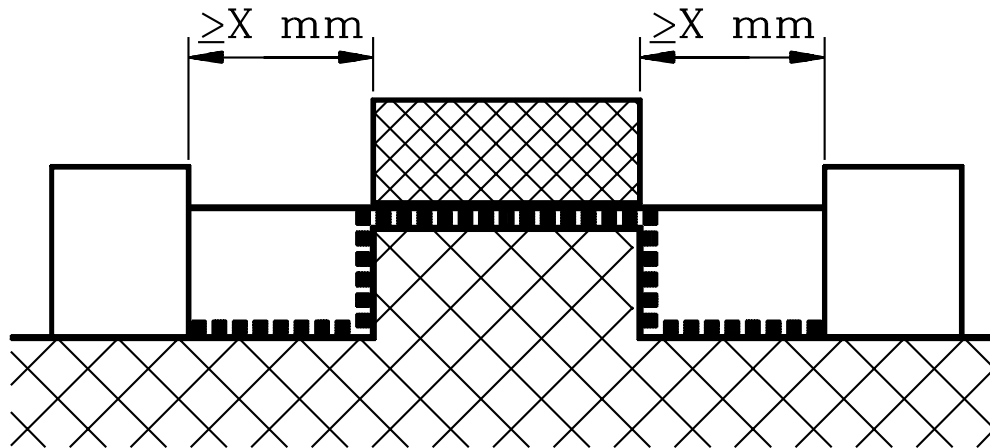


S3413D

Condition: Path under consideration includes an uncemented joint with grooves less than X mm wide on either side.

Rule: CREEPAGE DISTANCE and CLEARANCE path is the "line-of-sight" distance shown.

Figure E.5 – Uncemented joint with narrow groove



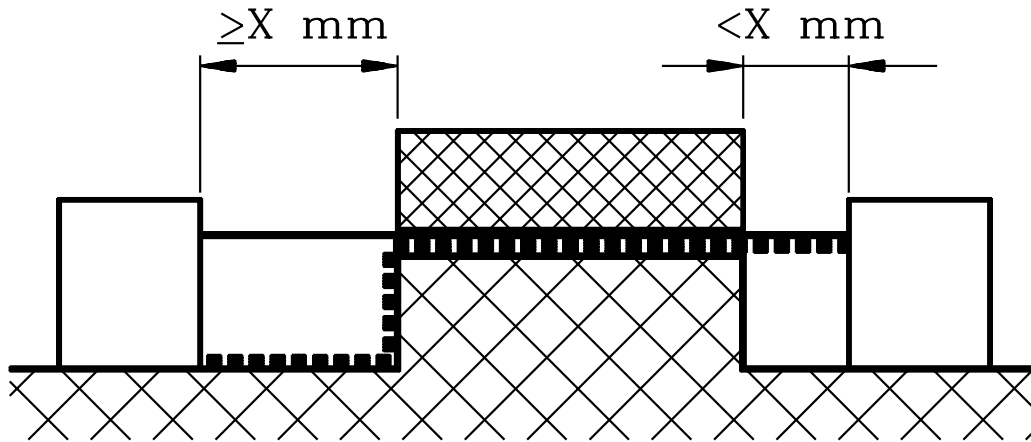
S3414A

Condition: Path under consideration includes an uncemented joint with a groove equal to or more than X mm wide each side.

Rule: CLEARANCE is the "line-of-sight" distance. CREEPAGE DISTANCE path follows the contour of the groove.

Figure E.6 – Uncemented joint with wide groove

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

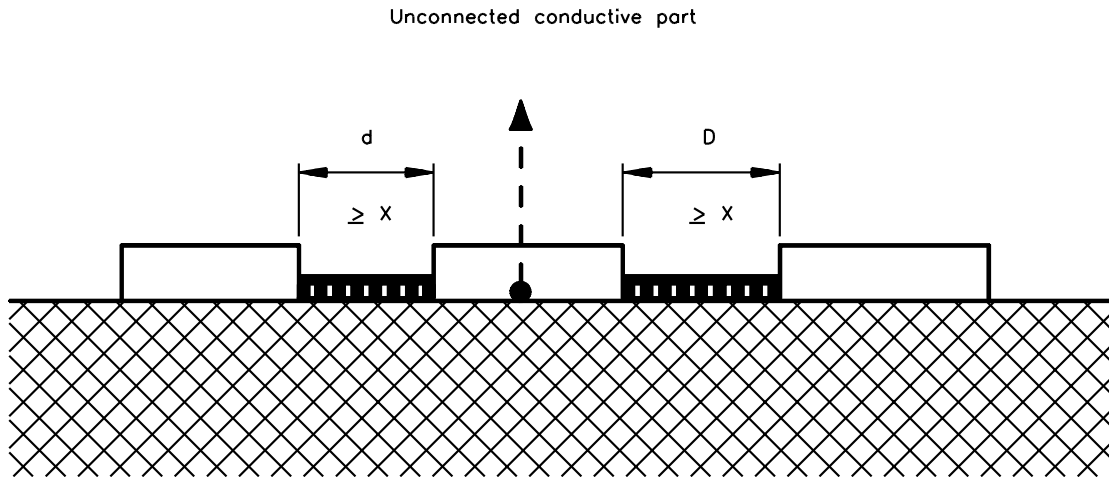


S3415A

Condition: Path under consideration includes an uncemented joint with a groove on one side less than X mm wide and a groove on the other equal to or more than X mm wide.

Rule: CLEARANCE and CREEPAGE DISTANCE paths are as shown in figure E.7.

Figure E.7 – Uncemented joint with narrow and wide grooves



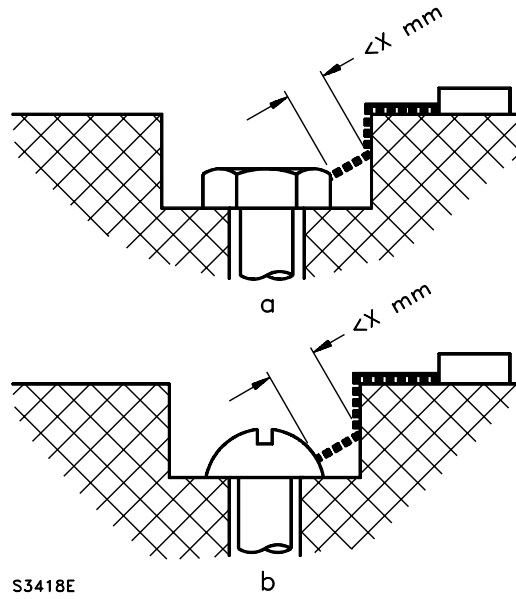
SM1115

Condition: Insulation distance with intervening, unconnected conductive part.

Rule: CLEARANCE is the distance $d + D$, CREEPAGE DISTANCE is also $d + D$. Where the value of d or D is smaller than X it shall be considered as zero.

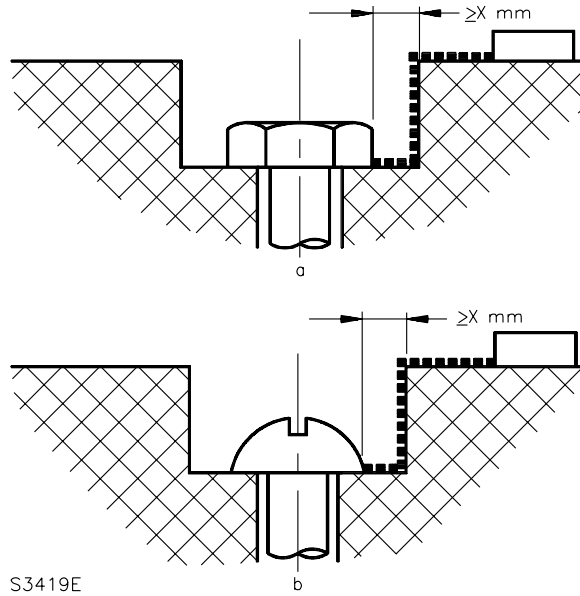
Figure E.8 – Intervening, unconnected conductive part

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**



Gap between head of screw and wall of recess too narrow to be taken into account.

Figure E.9 – Narrow recess



Gap between head of screw and wall of recess wide enough to be taken into account.

Figure E.10 – Wide recess

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Annex F
(normative)
Table of electrochemical potentials

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

Magnesium, magnesium alloys	0	0.05	0.55	0.7	0.8	0.85	0.9	1.0	1.05	1.1	1.15	1.25	1.35	1.4	1.45	1.6	1.65	1.7	1.75
Zinc, zinc alloys	0	0.05	0.2	0.35	0.4	0.5	0.55	0.6	0.65	0.6	0.55	0.5	0.45	0.4	0.35	0.3	0.25	0.2	0.15
80 tin/20 zinc on steel, zinc on iron or steel	0	0.05	0	0.15	0.25	0.3	0.35	0.45	0.5	0.55	0.6	0.7	0.8	0.85	0.9	1.05	1.1	1.15	1.2
Aluminium	0	0.05	0	0.15	0.2	0.3	0.35	0.4	0.45	0.35	0.45	0.55	0.65	0.7	0.75	0.9	0.95	1.0	1.05
Cadmium on steel	0	0.05	0	0.05	0.1	0.2	0.25	0.3	0.35	0.45	0.55	0.6	0.65	0.6	0.65	0.8	0.85	0.9	0.95
Aluminum/magnesium alloy	0	0.05	0	0.05	0.15	0.2	0.25	0.3	0.4	0.5	0.55	0.6	0.65	0.6	0.75	0.8	0.85	0.9	0.95
Mild steel	0	0.05	0	0	0.05	0.15	0.2	0.25	0.35	0.45	0.5	0.55	0.6	0.7	0.75	0.8	0.85	0.85	0.85
Duralumin	0	0.05	0	0	0.05	0.15	0.2	0.25	0.35	0.45	0.5	0.55	0.6	0.65	0.7	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75
Lead	0	0.05	0	0	0.05	0.1	0.2	0.25	0.35	0.4	0.45	0.55	0.6	0.65	0.7	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75
Chromium on steel, soft solder	0	0.05	0	0	0.05	0.1	0.2	0.25	0.35	0.4	0.45	0.55	0.6	0.65	0.7	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75
Cr on Ni on steel, tin on steel, 12% Cr stainless steel	0	0.05	0	0	0.05	0.15	0.2	0.25	0.35	0.4	0.45	0.55	0.6	0.65	0.7	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75
High chromium stainless steel	0	0.05	0	0	0.05	0.1	0.2	0.25	0.35	0.4	0.45	0.55	0.6	0.65	0.7	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75
Copper, copper alloys	0	0.05	0	0	0.05	0.1	0.2	0.25	0.35	0.4	0.45	0.55	0.6	0.65	0.7	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75
Silver solder, austenitic stainless steel	0	0.05	0	0	0.05	0.1	0.2	0.25	0.35	0.4	0.45	0.55	0.6	0.65	0.7	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75
Nickel on steel	0	0.05	0	0	0.05	0.1	0.2	0.25	0.35	0.4	0.45	0.55	0.6	0.65	0.7	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75
Silver	0	0.05	0	0	0.05	0.1	0.2	0.25	0.35	0.4	0.45	0.55	0.6	0.65	0.7	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75
Rhodium on silver on copper, silver/gold alloy	0	0.05	0	0	0.05	0.1	0.2	0.25	0.35	0.4	0.45	0.55	0.6	0.65	0.7	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75
Carbon	0	0.05	0	0	0.05	0.1	0.2	0.25	0.35	0.4	0.45	0.55	0.6	0.65	0.7	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75
Gold, platinum	0	0.05	0	0	0.05	0.1	0.2	0.25	0.35	0.4	0.45	0.55	0.6	0.65	0.7	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75

Cr = Chromium
Ni = Nickel

NOTE 1 Corrosion due to electrochemical action between dissimilar metals which are in contact is minimized if the combined electrochemical potential is below about 0.6 V. In the above table, the combined electrochemical potentials are listed for a number of pairs of metals in common use.

NOTE 2 See 15.2.

S3426F

UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL

Annex G DU
(normative)
Flammability test methods

NOTE—In Australia and New Zealand special national conditions apply which include tests based on reconciliation with the philosophy of IEC 60695 [9] with respect to glow wire testing, needle flame testing, consequential testing and end product consequential testing.

G.1 *If no test specimens in accordance with IEC 60707, clause 4 are available, the following test methods may be applied.*

The test is made according to IEC 60695-2-2 on three specimens of end products as used in the apparatus.

For the purpose of this standard, the following applies with regard to IEC 60695-2-2:

Clause 7—Initial measurements; not applicable

Clause 8—Test procedure

—Subclause 8.2

The first sentence is replaced by the following:

The test specimens are mounted in such a way as to simulate the conditions obtained when installed in the apparatus.

—Subclause 8.4

Replace the third paragraph by the following:

The test flame is applied to several points of the specimen, so that all critical areas are tested.

Clause 9—Observation and measurements.

—Subclause 9.2

The second paragraph is replaced by the following:

Duration of the burning denotes the time interval from the moment the test flame is removed until any flame has been extinguished.

G.1.1 *If flammability category V-0 according to IEC 60707 is required, in addition, the following applies with regard to IEC 60695-2-2:*

Clause 5—Severities

The values of duration of application of the test flame are as follows:

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

The test flame is applied for 10 s. If a self-sustaining flame does not last longer than 15 s, the test flame is applied again for 1 min at the same point or at any other point. If again a self-sustaining flame does not last longer than 15 s, the test flame is then applied for 2 min at the same point or at any other point.

Clause 10—*Evaluation of test results*

The existing text is replaced by the following:

After the first application of the test flame, the test specimens shall not be consumed completely. After any application of the test flame, the duration of the burning of any specimen shall not exceed 15 s, while the average burning time shall not exceed 10 s. The tissue paper shall not ignite and the board shall not scorch.

G.1.2 *If flammability category V-1 according to IEC 60707 is required, in addition, the following applies with regard to IEC 60695-2-2:*

Clause 5—*Severities*

The values of duration of application of the test flame are as follows:

The test flame is applied for 10 s. If a self-sustaining flame does not last longer than 30 s, the test flame is applied again for 1 min at the same point or at any other point. If again a self-sustaining flame does not last longer than 30 s, the test flame is then applied for 2 min at the same point or at any other point.

Clause 6—*Preconditioning (only applicable to components of 14.4.1)*

The existing text is replaced by:

The specimens are stored for 2 h in an oven at a temperature of (100 ± 2) °C.

Clause 10—*Evaluation of test results*

The existing text is replaced by the following:

After the first application of the test flame, the test specimen shall not be consumed completely. After any application of the test flame, any self-sustaining flame shall extinguish within 30 s. No burning of the tissue paper shall occur and the board shall not scorch.

G.1.3 *If flammability category V-2 according to IEC 60707 is required, in addition, the following applies with regard to IEC 60695-2-2:*

Clause 5—*Severities*

The values of duration of application of the test flame are as follows:

The test flame is applied for 10 s. If a self-sustaining flame does not last longer than 30 s, the test flame is applied again for 1 min at the same point or at any other point. If again a self-sustaining flame does not last longer than 30 s, the test flame is then applied for 2 min at the same point or at any other point.

Clause 10—*Evaluation of test results*

UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL

The existing text is replaced by the following:

After the first application of the test flame, the test specimen shall not be consumed completely.

After any application of the test flame any self-sustaining flame shall extinguish within 30 s.

G.1.4 *If flammability category HB75 or HB40 according to IEC 60707 is required, the following applies with regard to IEC 60695-11-10.*

Three specimens, 125 mm +/- 5 mm in length by 13 mm +/- 0.5 mm in width, cut from the thinnest part to be tested, are subjected to the burning test as described in IEC 60695-11-10, clause 8, Test method A.

The material shall be classified HB75 or HB40 respectively as described in 8.4 of IEC 60695-11-10.

G.2 *Compliance of cables and insulation of wires is checked according to IEC 60695-2-2.*

For the purpose of this standard, the following applies with regard to IEC 60695-2-2.

Clause 5—Severities

The values of duration of the application of the test flame are as follows:

—first specimen: 10 s

—second specimen: 60 s

—third specimen: 120 s

Clause 7—Initial measurements: not applicable

Clause 8—Test procedure

—Add the following to 8.4:

The burner is supported so that its axis is in an angle of 45° to the vertical. The cable or wire is held in an angle of 45° to the vertical, its axis being in a vertical plane perpendicular to the vertical plane containing the axis of the burner.

—Subclause 8.5 is replaced by the following:

The test is made on three specimens taken from each type of cable or wire as used in the apparatus, for example with additional screening and sleeves.

Clause 9—Observations and measurements

—Subclause 9.1 does not apply.

—Subclause 9.2

The second paragraph is replaced by the following:

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Duration of the burning denotes the time interval from the moment the test flame is removed until any flame has extinguished.

Clause 10 — Evaluation of the results

The existing text is replaced by the following:

During the test, any burning of the insulating materials shall be steady and shall not spread appreciably. Any flame shall self-extinguish in 30 s from the removal of the test flame.

G.3 *A barrier shall comply with the following requirements.*

Three specimens are subjected to the following tests:

1) In case of a non-metallic barrier, each test specimen is fixed horizontally and a needle flame as specified in IEC 60695-2-2 is applied from below with an angle of 45°.

The top of the flame shall be:

a) applied to the barrier as used in the appliance, at a location likely to become ignited because of its actual proximity and distance to the potential ignition source

or

b) applied to a sample plate with the same thickness and made of the same material, touching the undersurface of this sample plate in the middle.

The flame shall be applied for 60 s in the same position.

The needle flame shall not penetrate the test specimen and after the application there shall be no hole in the test specimen.

No failure is allowed.

2) In case of openings in a barrier regardless of its material, the requirements shown in figure 13 apply, unless it is not possible for the needle flame as specified in IEC 60695-2-2 to penetrate the barrier.

Compliance is tested according to 1) above. After the test there shall be no change with regard to the openings in the barrier. No failure is allowed.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Annex H
(normative)
Insulated winding wires for use without interleaved insulation
(see 8.17)

The annex specifies winding wires whose insulation may be used to provide BASIC, SUPPLEMENTARY, DOUBLE OR REINFORCED INSULATION in wound components without interleaved insulation.

This annex covers round winding wires having diameters between 0,05 mm and 5,0 mm.

H.1 *Intentionally kept free*

H.2 Type tests

The wire shall pass the following type tests, carried out at a temperature between 15 °C and 35 °C and a relative humidity between 45 % and 75 %, unless otherwise specified.

H.2.1 Dielectric strength

The test sample is prepared according to 4.4.1 of IEC 60851-5 (for a twisted pair). The sample is then subjected to the relevant test of 10.3 of this standard, without the humidity treatment of 10.2, with a test voltage not less than twice the appropriate voltage in table 5 of this standard, with a minimum of

- 6 kV r.m.s. or 8,4 kV (peak) for REINFORCED INSULATION, OR*
- 3 kV r.m.s. or 4,2 kV (peak) for BASIC OR SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION.*

H.2.2 Flexibility and adherence

Test 8 of IEC 60851-3, 5.1.1, using the mandrel diameters of table H.1.

The test sample is then examined in accordance with IEC 60851-3, 5.1.1.4, followed by the relevant test of 10.3 of this standard, without the humidity treatment of 10.2, except that the test voltage is applied between the wire and the mandrel. The test voltage shall be not less than the appropriate voltage in table 5 of this standard, with a minimum of

- 3 kV r.m.s. or 4,2 kV (peak) for REINFORCED INSULATION, OR*
- 1,5 kV r.m.s. or 2,1 kV (peak) for BASIC OR SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION.*

The tension to be applied to the wire during winding on the mandrel is calculated from the wire diameter to be equivalent to 118 MPa ± 10 % (118 N/mm² ± 10 %)

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Table H.1 – Mandrel diameter

Nominal conductor diameter mm	Mandrel diameter mm ± 0,2 mm
0,05 – 0,34	4,0
0,35 – 0,49	6,0
0,50 – 0,74	8,0
0,75 – 2,49	10,0
2,50 – 5,00	4 times the conductor diameter ^a

^a In accordance with IEC 60317-43.

H.2.3 Heat shock

Test 9 of IEC 60851-6, followed by the dielectric strength test of table 5 of this standard except that the test voltage is applied between the wire and the mandrel. The test voltage shall be not less than the appropriate voltage in table 5 of this standard, with a minimum of

- 3 kV r.m.s. or 4,2 kV (peak) for REINFORCED INSULATION, OR
- 1,5 kV r.m.s or 2,1 kV (peak) for BASIC OR SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION.

The oven temperature is the relevant temperature of the thermal class of insulation in table H.2.

The mandrel diameter and tension applied to the wire during winding on the mandrel are as in H.2.2.

The dielectric strength test is conducted at room temperature after removal from the oven.

Table H.2 – Oven temperature

Thermal class	A (105)	E (120)	B (130)	F (155)	H (180)
Oven temperature °C ± 5 °C	200	215	225	240	260

H.2.4 Retention of dielectric strength after bending

Five samples are prepared as in H.2.2 above and tested as follows. Each sample is removed from the mandrel, placed in a container and positioned so that it can be surrounded by at least 5 mm of metal shot. The ends of the conductor in the sample shall be sufficiently long to avoid flash-over. The shot shall be not more than 2 mm in diameter and shall consist of balls of stainless steel, nickel or nickel plated iron. The shot is gently poured into the container until the sample under test is covered by at least 5 mm of shot. The shot shall be cleaned periodically with a suitable solvent (for example 1,1,1-trichloroethane).

NOTE The above test procedure is reproduced from 4.6.1 c) of IEC 60851-5, second edition, including amendment 1, now withdrawn. It is not included in the third edition of that standard.

The test voltage shall be not less than the appropriate voltage in table 5 of this standard, with a minimum of

- 3 kV r.m.s. or 4,2 kV (peak) for REINFORCED INSULATION, OR
- 1,5 kV r.m.s. or 2,1 kV (peak) for BASIC OR SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

The test voltage is applied between the shot and the conductor.

H.3 Testing during manufacture

The wire shall be subjected by the wire manufacturer to dielectric strength tests during manufacture as specified in H.3.1 and H.3.2.

H.3.1 ROUTINE TEST

The test voltage for ROUTINE TEST shall be the appropriate voltage in table 5 of this standard, with a minimum of

- 3 kV r.m.s. or 4,2 kV (peak) for REINFORCED INSULATION, OR
- 1,5 kV r.m.s. or 2,1 kV (peak) for BASIC OR SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION.

H.3.2 Sampling test

Twisted pair samples shall be tested in accordance with 4.4.1 of IEC 60851-5. The minimum breakdown voltage shall be twice the appropriate voltage in table 5 of this standard, but not less than

- 6 kV r.m.s. or 8,4 kV (peak) for REINFORCED INSULATION, OR
- 3 kV r.m.s. or 4,2 kV (peak) for BASIC OR SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Annex J
(normative)
Alternative method for determining minimum CLEARANCES

This annex contains the alternative method for determining minimum CLEARANCES referred to in 13.3.

There is no dielectric strength test to verify CLEARANCES.

J.1 Summary of the procedure for determining minimum CLEARANCES

NOTE The minimum CLEARANCES for BASIC, SUPPLEMENTARY and REINFORCED INSULATION, whether in a primary circuit or another circuit, depend on the REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE. The REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE depends in turn on the combined effect of the normal OPERATING VOLTAGE (including repetitive peaks due to internal circuitry such as switch mode power supplies) and non-repetitive overvoltages due to external transients.

To determine the minimum value for each required CLEARANCE, the following steps shall be used.

- a) Measure the peak OPERATING VOLTAGE across the CLEARANCE in question.
- b) If the apparatus is MAINS operated:
 - determine the MAINS transient voltage (J.2); and
 - calculate the peak value of the nominal a.c. MAINS voltage.
- c) Use the rules in J.4 a) and the above voltage values to determine the REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE for a.c. MAINS supply transients and internal transients. In the absence of transients coming from a TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK, go to step g).
- d) If the apparatus is to be connected to a TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK, determine the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK TRANSIENT VOLTAGE (J.3).
- e) Use the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK TRANSIENT VOLTAGE and the rules in J.4 b) to determine the REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE for TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK transients. In the absence of MAINS and internal transients, go to step g).
- f) Use the rules in J.4 c) to determine the total REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE.
- g) Use the REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE to determine the minimum CLEARANCE (J.6).

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

J.2 Determination of MAINS transient voltage

For apparatus to be supplied from the a.c. MAINS supply, the value of the MAINS transient voltage depends on the overvoltage category and the nominal value of the a.c. MAINS voltage. In general, CLEARANCES in apparatus intended to be connected to the a.c. MAINS supply shall be designed for a MAINS transient voltage in overvoltage category II.

The applicable value of the MAINS transient voltage shall be determined from the overvoltage category and the nominal a.c. MAINS voltage using table J.1.

Table J.1 – MAINS transient voltages

Nominal a.c. MAINS voltage line-to-neutral Up to and including V r.m.s.	MAINS transient voltage V (peak)	
	Overvoltage category	
	I	II
50	330	500
100	500	800
150 ^a	800	1 500
300 ^b	1 500	2 500
600 ^c	2 500	4 000

NOTE 1 In Norway, due to the IT power distribution system used, the a.c. MAINS voltage is considered to be equal to the line-to-line voltage, and will remain 230 V in case of a single earth fault.

NOTE 2 In Japan, the MAINS transient voltage for the nominal 100 V system should be selected from the 150 V line of the table.

^a Including 120/208 V or 120/240 V

^b Including 230/400 V or 277/480 V

^c Including 400/690 V

J.3 Determination of TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK TRANSIENT VOLTAGE

If the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK TRANSIENT VOLTAGE is not known for the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK in question, it shall be taken as:

- 1 500 V_{peak} if the circuit connected to the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK is a TNV-1 CIRCUIT or a TNV-3 CIRCUIT; and
- 800 V_{peak} if the circuit connected to the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK is a TNV-0 CIRCUIT or a TNV-2 CIRCUIT.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

J.4 Determination of REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE

a) MAINS and internal transients

- circuit CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS receiving the unattenuated MAINS transient:

In such a circuit, the effect of transients coming from a TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK is ignored, and the following rules shall be applied:

Rule 1) If the peak OPERATING VOLTAGE U_{po} is less than the peak value of the nominal a.c. MAINS supply voltage, the REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE is the MAINS transient voltage determined in J.2;

$$U_{\text{REQUIRED WITHSTAND}} = U_{\text{MAINS transient}}$$

Rule 2) If the peak OPERATING VOLTAGE U_{po} is greater than the peak value of the nominal a.c. MAINS voltage, the REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE is the MAINS transient voltage determined in J.2, plus the difference between the peak OPERATING VOLTAGE and the peak value of the nominal a.c. MAINS voltage from table J.1.

$$U_{\text{REQUIRED WITHSTAND}} = U_{\text{MAINS transient}} + U_{po} - U_{\text{MAINS peak}}$$

- circuit not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS whose supply circuit is CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS receives the unattenuated MAINS transient:

In such a circuit, the REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE shall be determined as follows, ignoring the effect of transients coming from TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS.

The above rules 1) and 2) are applied, with the MAINS transient voltage determined in J.2 replaced by a voltage that is one step smaller in the following list:

330, 500, 800, 1 500, 2 500 and 4 000 V_{peak} .

However, this reduction is not permitted for a floating circuit not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS unless it is in apparatus with a PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL and is separated from its circuit CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS by an earthed metal screen, connected to protective earth in accordance with 15.2.

Alternatively, the above rules 1) and 2) are applied but the voltage determined by measurement, see J.5 a), is taken as the MAINS transient voltage.

- circuits CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS and circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS not receiving the unattenuated MAINS transient:

In such circuits, the REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE, ignoring the effect of transients coming from any TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK, is determined as follows. The above rules 1) and 2) are applied, but a voltage determined by measurement, see J.5 a), shall be taken as the MAINS transient voltage.

- circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS supplied by a d.c. source having capacitive filtering:

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

In any earthed circuit not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS supplied by a d.c. source with capacitive filtering, the REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE shall be taken as equal to the d.c. voltage.

b) TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK transients

If only transients from a TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK are involved, the REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE is the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK TRANSIENT VOLTAGE determined in J.3, unless a lower level is measured when tested according to J.5 b).

c) Combination of transients

If both transients a) and b) are involved, the REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE is the larger of the two voltages. The two values shall not be added together.

J.5 Measurement of transient levels

The following tests are conducted only where it is required to determine whether or not transient voltage across the CLEARANCE in any circuit is lower than normal, due for example, to the effect of a filter in the apparatus. The transient voltage across the CLEARANCE is measured using the following test procedure.

During the tests, the apparatus is connected to its separate SUPPLY APPARATUS, if any, but is not connected to the MAINS, nor to any TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK, and any surge suppressors in circuits CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS are disconnected.

A voltage-measuring device is connected across the CLEARANCE in question.

a) To measure the reduced level of transients due to MAINS overvoltages, the impulse test generator of annex K is used to generate 1,2/50 μ s impulses, with U_c equal to the MAINS transient voltage determined in J.2.

Three to six impulses of alternating polarity, with intervals of at least 1 s between impulses, are applied between each of the following points where relevant:

- line-to-line;*
- all line conductors conductively joined together and neutral;*
- all line conductors conductively joined together and protective earth;*
- neutral and protective earth.*

b) To measure the reduced level of transients due to TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK overvoltages, the impulse test generator of annex K is used to generate 10/700 μ s impulses, with U_c equal to the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK TRANSIENT VOLTAGE determined in J.3.

Three to six impulses of alternating polarity, with intervals of at least 1 s between impulses, are applied between each of the following TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK connection points of a single interface type:

- each pair of TERMINALS (for example A and B or tip and ring) in an interface;*
- all TERMINALS of a single interface type joined together and earth.*

UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL

Only one of a set of identical circuits is tested.

J.6 Determination of minimum CLEARANCES

Each CLEARANCE shall comply with the minimum dimensions given in table J.2, using the value of REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE determined according to J.4.

The specified CLEARANCES are not applicable to the air gap between the contacts of thermostats, THERMAL CUT-OUTS, overload protection devices, switches of microgap construction and similar components where the air gap varies with the contacts.

NOTE 1 For air gaps between the contacts of disconnect devices, see 8.19.1.

NOTE 2 CLEARANCES should not be reduced below the minimum specified values by manufacturing tolerances or by deformation which can occur due to handling, shock and vibration likely to be encountered during manufacture, transport and normal use.

NOTE 3 For apparatus to be operated at more than 2 000 m above sea level, table A.2 of IEC 60664-1 should be used in addition to table J.2.

Compliance is checked by measurement, taking into account annex E.

The following conditions are applicable.

Movable parts are placed in their most unfavourable positions.

When measuring CLEARANCES from an enclosure of insulating material through a slot or opening in the enclosure, the accessible surface is considered to be conductive as if it were covered by metal foil wherever it can be touched by the test finger, according to test probe B of IEC 61032 (see 9.1.1), applied without appreciable force (see figure 3, point B).

When measuring CLEARANCES, the test forces of 13.3.1 are to be applied.

Table J.2 – Minimum CLEARANCES

CLEARANCES in millimetres			
REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE V peak or d.c.	Minimum CLEARANCES in air		
	BASIC and SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION		REINFORCED INSULATION
up to 400	0,2	(0,1)	0,4 (0,2)
800	0,2	(0,1)	0,4 (0,2)
1 000	0,3	(0,2)	0,6 (0,4)
1 200	0,4	(0,3)	0,8 (0,6)
1 500	0,8	(0,5)	1,6 (1)
2 000	1,3	(1)	2,6 (2)
2 500	2	(1,5)	4 (3)
3 000	2,6	(2)	5,2 (4)
4 000	4	(3)	6
6 000	7,5		11
8 000	11		16
10 000	15		22

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Table J.2 – Minimum CLEARANCES Continued on Next Page

Table J.2 – Minimum CLEARANCES Continued

CLEARANCES in millimetres		
REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE V peak or d.c.	Minimum CLEARANCES in air	
	BASIC and SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION	REINFORCED INSULATION
12 000	19	28
15 000	24	36
25 000	44	66
40 000	80	120
50 000	100	150
60 000	120	180
80 000	173	260
100 000	227	340

NOTE 1 Except in circuits CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS in J.4 a), linear interpolation is permitted between the nearest two points, the calculated minimum CLEARANCES being rounded up to the next higher 0,1 mm increment.

NOTE 2 The values in parentheses are applicable only if manufacturing is subjected to a quality control programme, (an example for such a programme is given in annex M). In particular, DOUBLE and REINFORCED INSULATION shall be subjected to ROUTINE TESTS for dielectric strength.

NOTE 3 Compliance with a value of 8,4 mm or greater for circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS is not required if the CLEARANCE path is

- entirely through air; or
- wholly or partly along the surface of an insulation of material group I (CTI.600);

and the insulation involved passes a dielectric strength test according to 10.3, using

- an a.c. test voltage whose r.m.s. value is equal to 1,06 times the peak OPERATING VOLTAGE; or
- a d.c. test voltage equal to the peak value of the a.c. test voltage prescribed above.

If the CLEARANCE path is partly along the surface of a material that is not material group I, the dielectric strength test is conducted across the air gap only.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Annex K
(normative)
Impulse test generators
(see 13.3.4 and annex J, J.5)

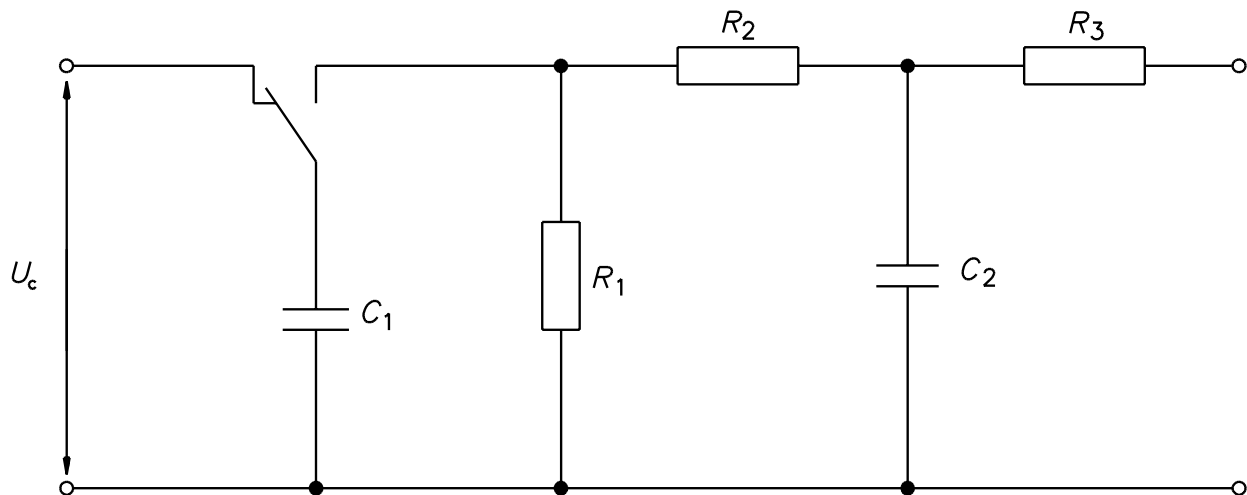
The circuit in figure K.1, using the component values in table K.1, is used to generate impulses, the C_1 capacitor being charged initially to a voltage U_c .

The impulse test circuit for the 10/700 μs (10 μs rise time, 700 μs decay time) impulse is that specified in ITU-T Recommendation K.17 to simulate lightning interference in the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK.

The impulse test circuit for the 1,2/50 μs (1,2 μs rise time, 50 μs decay time) impulse is that specified in ITU-T Recommendation K.21 to simulate transients in power distribution systems.

The impulse wave shapes are under open-circuit conditions and can be different under load conditions.

NOTE Extreme care is necessary when using these generators due to the high electric charge stored in capacitor C_1 .



SM437B

Figure K.1 – Impulse generating circuit

Table K.1 – Component values for impulse generating circuits

Test impulse	C_1	R_1	R_2	C_2	R_3
10/700 μs	20 μF	50 Ω	15 Ω	0,2 μF	25 Ω

*UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL*

Table K.1 – Component values for impulse generating circuits Continued on Next Page

Table K.1 – Component values for impulse generating circuits Continued

Test impulse	C ₁	R ₁	R ₂	C ₂	R ₃
1,2/50 μ F	1 μ F	76 Ω	13 Ω	33 nF	25 Ω

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Annex L DU
(normative)
Additional requirements for electronic flash apparatus for photographic purposes

L added November 18, 2005

The requirements of this standard supplemented or replaced by those contained in this annex, apply to electronic flash apparatus for photographic purposes.

NOTE—This annex replaces IEC Publication 60491:1984.

L.1 General¹⁾

Add the following to 1.1.1:

¹⁾ The clause numbering of this annex refers to the clauses of this standard.

L.1.1.1 This annex applies to the following electronic flash apparatus for photographic purposes, having a stored energy not exceeding 2 000 J, together with associated apparatus and not intended to be subjected to dripping or splashing:

- apparatus of the single-flash type which can have more than one flash head operating at the same time;
- apparatus for the illumination of sequential photographic exposures;
- battery chargers and SUPPLY APPARATUS to be used in connection with electronic flash apparatus for photographic purposes. These auxiliary units may form a part of the MAINS plug;
- accessories specified in the instruction leaflet.

This annex does not apply to stroboscopes.

NOTE 1—As long as no appropriate requirements exist for apparatus having a stored energy exceeding 2 000 J, this annex may be used, in so far as it is applicable. Additional requirements may be necessary, for example, for explosion and thermal radiation.

NOTE 2—This annex is intended to cover apparatus which can be used both in moderate and tropical climates.

NOTE 3—For the modelling lamps combined with electronic flash apparatus for photographic purposes, additional requirements may be taken from IEC 60598-2-9 or IEC 60598-2-17, as far as applicable.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

L.4 General test conditions

Add the following subclauses after 4.2.12:

~~L.4.2.13 The apparatus is tested with or without connection of flash heads, capacitors and other accessories.~~

~~L.4.2.14 If the apparatus can be MAINS-operated, it is switched on for a period of 4 h without flashing; if only battery or rechargeable battery is supplied, it is switched on for 30 s.~~

~~Thereupon as many consecutive flashes as can be produced, with a maximum of 40, are made as quickly as possible. The rate of flashing is determined by the indicator or, if no indicator, by the measured voltage on the flash capacitors, which should be 85 % of the maximum peak voltage. The apparatus is supplied at its RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE.~~

~~A battery charger is connected for 4 h to a fully discharged rechargeable battery for which the charger has been designed.~~

Add the following dashed items to 4.3.3:

~~L.4.3.3~~

~~— interruption of filaments of lamps;~~

~~— short and open circuiting of glow-discharge lamps (used for indication or regulation).~~

Add the following item to 4.3.4:

~~L.4.3.4~~

~~g) self-healing capacitors (for example, of the metallized paper type) as far as overheating is concerned.~~

L.5 Markings and instructions

Add the following to 5.4, after Note 2:

~~L.5.4 Battery chargers and SUPPLY APPARATUS shall be accompanied by an instruction leaflet in which shall be indicated the type or model number of flash apparatus with which they are to be used.~~

~~The flash apparatus shall be accompanied by an instruction leaflet in which shall be indicated the type or model number of SUPPLY APPARATUS or battery charger with which it is to be used.~~

~~NOTE— It is also permitted to give this information on the apparatus themselves.~~

Compliance is checked by inspection.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

L.7 Heating under normal operating conditions

Add the following to 7.1.5 after the first paragraph:

~~L.7.1.5~~ Lithium batteries shall meet the permissible temperature rise in Table 3, "Normal operating conditions", unless such batteries comply with the applicable electrical tests of 6.2.2.1 or 6.2.2.2 of IEC 60086-4.

L.9 Electric shock hazard under normal operating conditions

Add the following to 9.1.1 after Note 1:

~~L.9.1.1~~ TERMINALS for the connection to the synchronizer of the camera shall not be HAZARDOUS LIVE.

Add the following to 9.1.1.1 after the first paragraph:

~~L.9.1.1.1~~ If possible, flashing is made during the measurements.

L.10 Insulation requirements

Add the following to 10.3.2 directly before Table 5:

~~L.10.3.2~~ In the case of apparatus with high frequency pulse ignition, the ignition pulse is ignored in computing the test voltage if the duration of the pulse does not exceed 1 ms.

L.11 Fault conditions

Add the following to 11.2.6 after the first paragraph:

~~L.11.2.6~~ Lithium batteries shall meet the permissible temperature rise in Table 3, "Fault conditions", unless such batteries comply with all electrical tests of 6.3.2 of IEC 60086-4.

L.12 Mechanical strength

Add the following after the fourth paragraph of 12.1.3:

~~L.12.1.3~~ Windows for flash tubes are excluded from the steel ball impact test.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

L.14 Components

Add the following subclause at the end of 14.6:

L.14.6.6 Furthermore, for MAINS SWITCHES, the characteristics of the switch, with reference to the marking, shall be appropriate for the function of the switch in the apparatus under normal conditions.

Compliance is checked by inspection and by measurement.

The rated MAINS current of a flash apparatus is determined by the following formula:

$$I_r = 1/3 \sqrt{\hat{i}_0^2 + \hat{i}_0 \hat{i}_1 + \hat{i}_1^2}$$

where:

\hat{i}_0 is the maximum MAINS current (peak value) immediately after a flash has been made.

\hat{i}_1 is the MAINS current (peak value) at the end of the re-charge period of the flash capacitor. The end of the re-charge period is determined by the indicator or, if there is no indicator, by the measured voltage on the flash capacitor, which shall be 85 % of the maximum peak voltage, the apparatus supplied at its RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE.

The apparatus is operated under normal operating conditions except that the apparatus is connected to its RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE.

\hat{i}_0 and \hat{i}_1 are measured when the apparatus is ready for flash operation and has been connected to the MAINS supply for at least 30 min.

The peak surge current is the maximum peak value of the MAINS current when the flash apparatus is switched on, after the flash capacitor has been discharged completely. Current spikes up to 100 μ s duration are disregarded.

The measured peak surge current and calculated rated MAINS current (I_r) shall not exceed the marked current rating of the MAINS SWITCH.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

L.20 Resistance to fire

Add the following to 20.1:

L.20.1 c) A trigger coil circuit for discharge purposes in a flash apparatus is not considered to be a POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Annex M
(informative)
Examples of requirements for quality control programmes

NOTE This annex gives examples of requirements for quality control programmes as specified in 13.3 and annex J for reduced CLEARANCES.

M.1 Reduced CLEARANCES(see 13.3)

A manufacturer wishing to use reduced CLEARANCES permitted by 13.3 and annex J should implement a quality control programme for those features of the construction listed in table M.1. This programme should include specific quality controls for the tools and materials that affect CLEARANCES.

The manufacturer should also identify and plan the protection and, where applicable, installation processes which directly affect quality and should ensure that these processes are carried out under controlled conditions. Controlled conditions should include the following:

- documented work instructions defining process, apparatus, environment, and manner of production where the absence of such instructions would adversely affect quality, suitable working environment, compliance with reference standards or specifications and quality plans;
- monitoring and control of suitable processes and product characteristics during production and installation in the apparatus;
- criteria for workmanship stipulated to the extent necessary in written specifications or by means of representative samples;
- records maintained for qualified processes, apparatus and personnel as appropriate.

Table M.1 provides the sampling plan for attributes and tests necessary to conform to the requirements of 13.3 and annex J. The number of samples of production parts or assemblies should be based on IEC 60410 [7] or ISO 2859-1 [20] or equivalent national standards.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

No Text on This Page

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

Table M.1 – Rules for sampling and inspection – Reduced CLEARANCES

Tests	BASIC INSULATION	SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION	REINFORCED INSULATION
CLEARANCE ^a	Sampling S2 AQL 4	Sampling S2 AQL 4	Sampling S2 AQL 4
Dielectric strength test ^b	No test	No test	ROUTINE TEST one failure requires evaluation for cause

^a To minimise test and inspection time, it is permitted to replace measurement of CLEARANCES by measurement of breakdown voltage. Initially the breakdown voltage is established for ten samples for which the correct CLEARANCE measurements have been confirmed. The breakdown voltage of subsequent parts or assemblies is then checked against a lower limit equal to the minimum breakdown voltage of the initial ten samples minus 100 V. If breakdown occurs at this lower limit, a part or assembly is considered a failure unless direct measurement of the CLEARANCE conforms to the requirement.

^b The dielectric strength test for REINFORCED INSULATION should consist of one of the following alternatives:
 – six impulses of alternating polarity, using a 1,2/50 µs impulse (see annex K) with a magnitude equal to the peak of the test voltage in table 5 (see 10.3.2);
 – a three cycle pulse of a.c. power frequency with a magnitude equal to the test voltage in table 5 (see 10.3.2);
 – six impulses of alternating polarity, using 10 ms d.c. impulses with a magnitude equal to the peak of the test voltage in table 5 (see 10.3.2).

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
 NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
 DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Annex N
(informative)
ROUTINE TESTS

INTRODUCTION

The tests given in this annex are intended to reveal, as far as safety is concerned, unacceptable variations in material or manufacture. These tests do not impair the properties and the reliability of the apparatus, and should be made by the manufacturer on each apparatus during or at the end of the production.

In general, more tests, such as repetition of TYPE TESTS and sampling tests, have to be made by the manufacturer to ensure that every apparatus is in conformity with the sample that withstood the TYPE TEST of this standard, according to experience gained by the apparatus manufacturer.

The manufacturer may use a test procedure which is better suited to his production arrangements and may make the tests at an appropriate stage during production, provided it can be proved that apparatus which withstand the tests carried out by the manufacturer provide at least the same degree of safety as apparatus that withstand the tests specified in this annex.

NOTE Generally, an appropriate quality assurance system should be employed, for example according to the ISO 9000 series [21].

The following rules are given as an example for ROUTINE TEST:

N.1 Tests during the production process

N.1.1 Correct polarity and connection of components or subassemblies

If incorrect polarity or connection of components or subassemblies might result in a safety hazard, the correct polarity and connection of these components or subassemblies should be checked by measurement or inspection.

N.1.2 Correct values of components

If incorrect values of components might result in a safety hazard, the correct value of these components should be checked by measurement or inspection.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

N.1.3 Protective earthing connection of screens and metal barriers

For CLASS I apparatus with a screen or metal barrier (see 8.5) between HAZARDOUS LIVE parts and TERMINALS regarded as ACCESSIBLE (see 8.4) or ACCESSIBLE conductive parts respectively, the continuity of the protective earthing connection should be checked as late as possible during the production process between the screen or metal barrier and

- the protective earthing contact of the MAINS plug or appliance inlet, or
- the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL in case of a PERMANENTLY CONNECTED APPARATUS.

The test current applied for 1 s to 4 s should be in the order of 10 A a.c., derived from a source having a no-load voltage not exceeding 12 V.

The measured resistance should not exceed

- 0,1 Ω for apparatus with a detachable power supply cord,
- 0,2 Ω for apparatus with a non-detachable power supply cord.

NOTE Care should be taken that the contact resistance between the tip of the measuring probe and the metal parts under test does not influence the test results.

N.1.4 Correct position of internal wiring

If incorrect position of internal wiring might impair the safety, the correct position of internal wiring should be checked by inspection.

N.1.5 Correct fit of internal plug connections

If incorrect fit of internal plug connections might impair the safety, the correct fit of internal plug connections should be checked by inspection or manual test.

N.1.6 Safety relevant markings inside the apparatus

The legibility of markings relevant to safety inside the apparatus, for example with regard to fuse-links, should be checked by inspection.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

N.1.7 Correct mounting of mechanical parts

If incorrect mounting of mechanical parts might impair the safety, the correct mounting should be checked by inspection or manual test.

N.2 Tests at the end of the production process

The following tests should be made on the apparatus when completely assembled and just before packing.

N.2.1 Dielectric strength test

The insulation of the apparatus should be checked by the following tests. In general, these tests are considered to be sufficient.

An a.c. test voltage of substantially sine-wave form, having MAINS frequency, or a d.c. test voltage or a combination of both with a peak value specified in table N.1, is applied between the MAINS supply TERMINALS connected in parallel and:

- TERMINALS regarded as ACCESSIBLE (see 8.4), and
- ACCESSIBLE conductive parts respectively,

which may become HAZARDOUS LIVE in the event of an insulation fault as a result of incorrect assembly.

NOTE 1 TERMINALS regarded as ACCESSIBLE and ACCESSIBLE conductive parts may be connected together during the dielectric strength test.

Before the test voltage is applied, intimate contact should be made with the specimen.

Initially, not more than half of the prescribed test voltage is applied, then it is raised with a steepness not exceeding 1 560 V/ms to the full value which is held for 1 s to 4 s.

NOTE 2 A steepness of 1 560 V/ms corresponds to the steepness of a sine-wave with a MAINS frequency of 60 Hz.

During the test, MAINS SWITCHES and functional switches, if any, CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS, should be in the on-position and it should be secured by suitable means so that the test voltage is completely effective.

No flash-over or breakdown should occur during the test. The test voltage source should be provided with a current sensing (over-current) device which, when activated, gives an indication that the test has been failed. The test voltage source should still deliver the prescribed voltage until current tripping occurs.

NOTE 3 The tripping current should not exceed 100 mA.

NOTE 4 Tripping of the current sensing device is regarded as a flashover or breakdown.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Table N.1 – Test voltage

Application of test voltage	Test voltage V (peak) a.c. or d.c.	
	Rated MAINS voltage ≤ 150	Rated MAINS voltage > 150
BASIC INSULATION	1 130 (800 r.m.s.)	2 120 (1 500 r.m.s.)
DOUBLE OR REINFORCED INSULATION	2 120 (1 500 r.m.s.)	3 540 (2 500 r.m.s.)

N.2.2 Protective earthing connection

For CLASS I apparatus, the continuity of the protective earthing connection should be checked between the protective earthing contact of the MAINS plug or appliance inlet, or the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL in case of a PERMANENTLY CONNECTED APPARATUS, and

- the ACCESSIBLE conductive parts, including TERMINALS regarded as ACCESSIBLE (see 8.4), which should be connected to the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL, and
- the protective earthing contact of socket-outlets respectively, if provided to deliver power to other apparatus.

The test current applied for 1 s to 4 s should be in the order of 10 A a.c., derived from a source having a no-load voltage not exceeding 12 V.

The measured resistance should not exceed

- 0,1 Ω for apparatus with a detachable power supply cord,
- 0,2 Ω for apparatus with a non-detachable power supply cord.

NOTE Care should be taken that the contact resistance between the tip of the measuring probe and the conductive parts under test does not influence the test results.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

N.2.3 Safety relevant markings on the outside of the apparatus

The legibility of safety relevant markings on the outside of the apparatus, for example with regard to the supply voltage, should be checked by inspection.

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

Annex P
(informative)
Bibliography

P revised November 18, 2005

- [1] IEC/TR3 60083:1997, *Plugs and socket-outlets for domestic and similar general use standardized in member countries of IEC*
- [2] IEC 60130 (all parts), *Connectors for frequencies below 3 MHz*
- [3] IEC 60169 (all parts), *Radio-frequency connectors*
- [4] IEC 60173:1964, *Colours of the cores of flexible cables and cords*
- [5] IEC 60335-2-56:1997, *Safety of household and similar electrical appliances – Part 2: Particular requirements for projectors and similar appliances*
- [6] IEC 60335-2-82:1999, – *Safety of household and similar electrical appliances – Part 2: Particular requirements for service machines and amusement machines*
- [7] IEC 60410:1973, *Sampling plans and procedures for inspection by attributes*
- [8] IEC 60598-2-9:1987, *Luminaires – Part 2: Particular requirements – Section 9: Photo and film luminaires (non-professional) Amendment 1 (1993)*
- [9] IEC 60598-2-17:1984, *Luminaires – Part 2: Particular requirements – Section 17: Luminaires for stage lighting, television and film studios (outdoor and indoor) Amendment 2 (1990)*
- [10] IEC/TR3 60664-4:1997, *Insulation coordination for equipment within low-voltage systems – Part 4: Consideration of high-frequency stress*
- [11] IEC 60695 (all parts), *Fire hazard testing*
- [12] IEC 61040:1990, *Power and energy measuring detectors, instruments and equipment for laser radiation*
- [13] IEC 61558-2-1:1997, *Safety of power transformers, power supply units and similar – Part 2: Particular requirements for separating transformers for general use*
- [14] IEC 61558-2-4:1997, *Safety of power transformers, power supply units and similar – Part 2: Particular requirements for isolating transformers for general use*
- [15] IEC 61558-2-6:1997, *Safety of power transformers, power supply units and similar – Part 2: Particular requirements for safety isolating transformers for general use*
- [16] IEC Guide 108:1994, *The relationship between technical committees with horizontal functions and product committees and the use of basic publications*
- [17] IEC Guide 109:1995, *Environmental aspects – Inclusion in electrotechnical product standards*

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

- [18] IEC Guide 112:2000, *Guide on the safety of multimedia equipment*
- [19] ISO/IEC Guide 37:1995, *Instructions for use of products of consumer interest*
- [20] ISO/IEC Guide 51:1999 – *Safety aspects – Guidelines for their inclusion in standards*
- [21] ISO 1043-1:1997, *Plastics – Symbols and abbreviated terms – Part 1: Basic polymers and their special characteristics*
- [22] ISO 2859-1:1999, *Sampling procedures for inspection by attributes – Part 1: Sampling schemes indexed by acceptance quality level (AQL) for lot-by-lot inspection*
- [23] ISO 9000 (all parts), *Quality management and quality assurance standards*
- [24] ICRP 15:1969, *Protection against ionizing radiations from external sources – Published by the International Commission on Radiological Protection*
- [25] ITU-T Recommendation K.11:1993, *Principles of protection against overvoltages and overcurrents*

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Annex Q DU
(normative)

Safety requirements for video apparatus for use in health care facilities

The requirements of this standard supplemented or replaced by those contained in this annex apply to video apparatus intended for use in health care facilities.

Q.1.1.1 Signaling and nurse-call feature

A signaling and nurse-call feature, when provided, shall comply with the applicable requirements in UL 1069.

Q.2.2.14

HEALTH CARE FACILITY APPARATUS

An apparatus intended for entertainment purposes for use in a hospital, a nursing home, a medical-care center, or a similar health-care facility in which installation is limited to a nonhazardous area in accordance with the National Electrical Code, ANSI/NFPA 70. It is not intended for use in a critical-care area in which a patient is treated with an externalized electrical conductor, such as a probe, a catheter, or other electrode, connected to the heart; however, the apparatus will be contacted by a patient during his stay in a health-care facility.

Q.4.3.2.1 Burnout test

There shall be no emission of flame or molten metal or other adverse effects when all leads of an external cord of a pendant control, pillow speaker, or similar device, which will be subjected to abnormal abuse, are short-circuited. Immediately following the test the touch current is to be measured to determine compliance with the touch current requirements in Q.9.1.1.1.

For this test, the supply circuit of the system is to be connected to a source of rated voltage and frequency and the external cord leads short-circuited. The supply circuit is then to be energized and operated until either burnout occurs or steady-state temperatures are obtained.

Q.5.2 (d) Receptacle marking

A receptacle of the conventional parallel-slot type that is not utilized for the connection of a part of an apparatus intended for use in a health care facility shall be marked, where readily visible, to indicate the specific permitted accessory for which it is intended.

Q.5.4.4 Cleaning and disinfecting

An apparatus shall be constructed so that it is capable of being cleaned or disinfected in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions without increasing the risk of fire, electric shock, or injury to persons.

Unless it is obvious that the enclosure's construction and materials are capable of being used for the cleaning and disinfecting operation called for, a sample of the apparatus shall be subjected to the touch current test described in Q.9.1.1.1.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Q.5.4.5 DOUBLE INSULATION marking

When the apparatus includes an earthing means in accordance with Q.15.2.1, additional wording shall be provided in the marking stating "When grounding of the accessible metal parts is required, a separate grounding lead is to be used."

An apparatus that complies with the requirements for DOUBLE INSULATION and is provided with an earthing conductor in the flexible supply cord in accordance with Q.15.2.1 is capable of being permanently marked with the words "DOUBLE INSULATION – EXTERNAL METAL GROUNDED – CAUTION– when servicing use only identical replacement parts."

Q.5.4.6 Installation and operation instructions

Operation instructions and installation instructions (when applicable) shall be provided with each apparatus intended for use in a health care facility. The instructions shall include the following information where applicable.

- a) Instructions, including wiring diagrams when required, showing installation of each apparatus. The instructions shall specify that the antenna or cable system connected to an apparatus is to be grounded in accordance with the National Electrical Code, ANSI/NFPA 70.
- b) Specifications on periodic maintenance and servicing of the apparatus.
- c) Cleaning and disinfecting instructions.

Q.5.4.7 Unearthed (isolated) parts marking

When an apparatus includes a combination of unearthed – isolated – exposed dead metal parts and earthed dead metal parts that are not exposed during normal use or user servicing, it shall be marked with the word: "CAUTION" and the following or the equivalent: "Accessible metal parts of this apparatus are electrically isolated from the grounding conductor of the supply cord. When grounding of the accessible metal parts is required, a separate grounding lead shall be used."

Q.5.4.8 Pendant control

Only a pendant control or call cord that has been investigated and found suitable for use in oxygen-enriched atmospheres is permitted to have the following marked on the device: "Note – May Be Used by Patients Undergoing Oxygen Therapy – Hang On Hook (In Holder) When Not In Use." The letter height shall be no less than 2.4 mm for the notice.

- 1) The signal word "CAUTION":
 - i) Shall appear in black, upper-case letters in a sans serif font of Folio Medium, New Gothic Bold, Helvetica Bold, or equivalent fonts, on a yellow background;
 - ii) Shall be at least 50 percent larger than the remaining text of the marking, and be of a size that is sufficient to be seen from a distance allowing a user/service person an adequate amount of time to take action to avoid the hazard specified in the marking after viewing the label;
 - iii) Is to appear in a separate, distinct area within the marking label.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

2) The Safety Alert Symbol Δ is to appear next to the signal word and is to be no smaller than the height of the signal word with the base of the triangle on the same horizontal line as the base of the signal word. The solid portion of the triangle (within the lines of the triangle, around the exclamation mark) shall be the same color as the signal word letters, and the exclamation mark shall be the same color as the signal word background.

The suitability of a pendant control for use in oxygen-enriched atmospheres is determined by UL 1069.

Q.7.1.1 Normal temperature test

Supplements 7.1.1

An apparatus intended for use in a health care facility shall not reach temperature rises greater than 25 °C on an appendage that will be taken into a patient's bed.

Q.8.18 Parts touched by patient

Where one or more electrical insulation breakdowns between adjacent conductive parts – wires, TERMINALS, structural metal, and similar parts – of an apparatus results in available touch current in excess of the limits, the construction shall comply with at least one of the following:

- a) For insulated conductive parts, each insulation used shall be rated for the maximum voltage possible – for example, the highest voltage on a part with regard to any exposed conductive part either with or without the introduction of any random breakdown of an insulation involved. A spacing over surface or through air between parts that is not less than 1,5 mm for potentials of 125 V r.m.s. or no less than 2,5 mm for potentials of 126 – 250 V r.m.s. is capable of being used in place of a single insulation.
- b) For two uninsulated conductive parts a spacing between parts that is not less than twice that required in (a) is capable of being used.
- c) When not insulated or spaced apart as in (a) or (b), the parts shall be separated by means of a solid insulating (unpierced) barrier, permanently secured in place, properly located, and of integrity such that the barrier is capable of being used as a supplement to conductor insulation, or in the case of a barrier between two uninsulated parts, satisfies the requirements for REINFORCED INSULATION thereby affording a degree of protection against the risk of electric shock equivalent to that afforded by DOUBLE INSULATION.

In evaluating the required separation of the patient-touched parts from internal circuits, consideration shall be given to the effects of deterioration of insulation, abnormal operation, overload, short-circuit, or component-breakdown conditions.

The patient-touched parts specified above are those parts that will be contacted by the patient while the patient is in bed – for example, a pillow speaker or pendant control for an apparatus taken into bed and operated by the patient, or an apparatus placed near or above the bed and operated by the patient.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Q.9.1.1.1 Touch current test

All apparatus intended for use in health care facilities shall be evaluated for touch current using the probe in figure 18. The available touch current of an apparatus, based upon its use, shall not exceed the values shown in table Q.1.

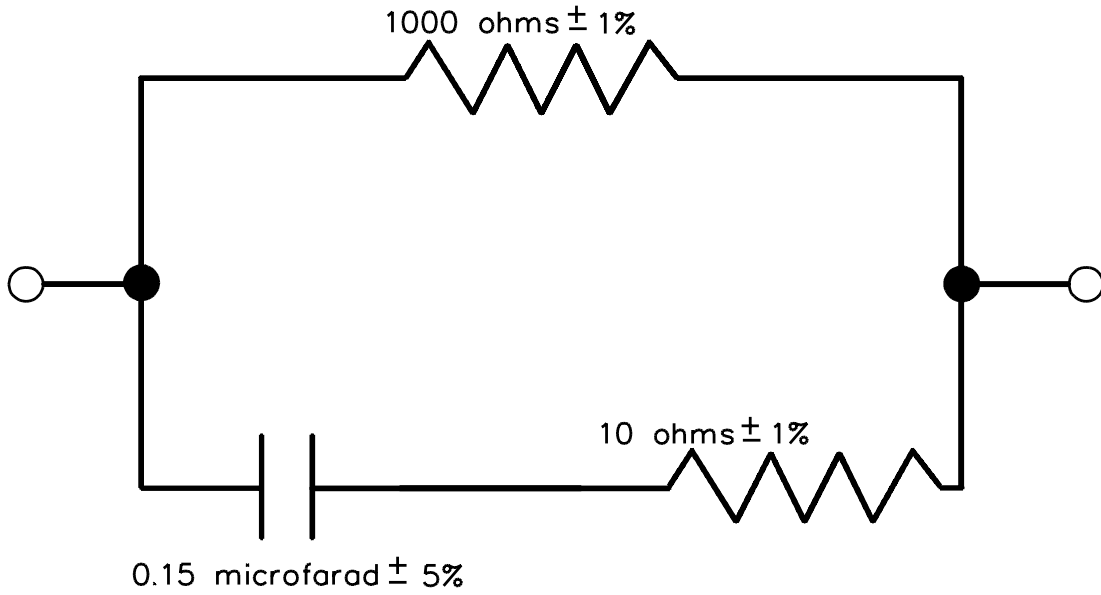
The touch current values specified in table Q.1 are r.m.s. values for dc (nonfiltered rectified ac) and sinusoidal waveforms up to 1 kilohertz. For frequencies above 1 kilohertz the touch current shall not be more than the applicable value specified in table Q.1 multiplied by the frequency in kilohertz up to a maximum multiplier of 100.

The test meter employed to measure the touch current shall be a high impedance voltmeter with a test circuit that includes the test load, as described in figure Q.1, connected across the input TERMINALS. Figure Q.2 indicates the frequency response characteristics of such a meter-test load combination.

Table Q.1 – Maximum touch current (mA)

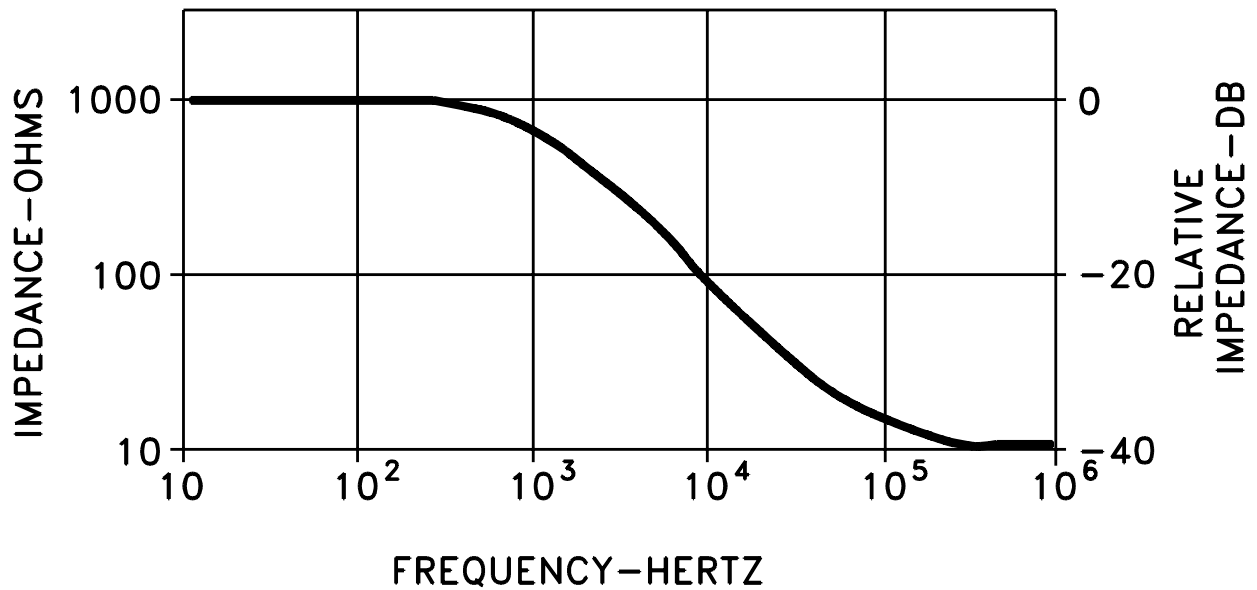
Type of apparatus	Apparatus construction			
	Earthed		Double insulated	
	AC (r.m.s.)	DC	AC (r.m.s.)	DC
<u>Apparatus touched by patient, for example, pillow speaker, pendant control, or apparatus located near bed</u>	<u>0.1^a</u>	<u>0.1^a</u>	<u>0.5^a</u>	<u>0.050^a</u>
<u>Apparatus not touched by patient, for example, wall-mounted apparatus</u>	<u>0.5^b</u>	<u>0.7^b</u>	<u>0.25^b</u>	<u>0.35^b</u>
<p><u>NOTE When an insulating material is used for the enclosure or part of the enclosure, the touch current is to be measured using a metal foil with an area not exceeding 10 by 20 cm in contact with accessible surfaces for the insulating material. Where the accessible surface of insulating material is less than 10 by 20 cm, the metal foil is to be the same size as the surface.</u></p> <p><u>^a These touch-current limits apply regardless of the voltage.</u></p> <p><u>^b These touch-current limits apply only when the open-circuit voltage between the parts in question exceeds 42.4 V peak (30 V r.m.s. when the wave form is sinusoidal).</u></p>				

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**



S2472

Figure Q.1 – Test load



S2473

Figure Q.2 – Impedance-frequency characteristics

*UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL*

Q.9.1.8 Entry of spilled materials

Except for wall- or ceiling-mounted type apparatus, an apparatus shall have no opening in any nonvertical surface (top, sloping, and similar surfaces) unless the opening is protected by a barrier that prevents the entrance of a liquid that falls on the area in question from a vertical direction.

Q.10.2.1 Cleaning test

Each apparatus or portion of an apparatus that is intended to be cleaned by wiping is to be wiped thoroughly with a folded cheesecloth applicator saturated in the cleaning agent specified by the manufacturer. The complete wiping procedure is to be repeated until a total of 5 operations has been completed after which the touch-current test described in Q.9.1.1.1 is conducted.

Q.10.2.2 Immersion test

An apparatus or appendage of an apparatus that is intended to be taken into the patient's bed shall comply with the touch-current requirements in Q.9.1.1.1 and the dielectric voltage-withstand requirements in Q.10.3 after being subjected to the immersion test described below

Each of three samples of the apparatus or appendage is to be immersed for a period of 24 hours in a solution containing 1/2 gram of common table salt per liter of distilled water. Immediately thereafter, the samples are to be subjected to the tests described above.

Q.10.3 Dielectric voltage-withstand test

The insulation and spacings for an apparatus shall be capable of withstanding without breakdown for 1 minute the application of the test potentials described below unless an investigation shows that such breakdown does not introduce a risk of fire or electric shock

A 60-Hz sinusoidal potential is to be applied between current-carrying parts conductively connected to the supply circuit and noncurrent-carrying conductive parts, and across each capacitor, winding separation, or other insulation in the primary circuit that is required to reduce the risk of electric shock or, when short-circuited introduces, directly or indirectly, a risk of fire. The test potential is to be:

- a) 1 000 V for an apparatus rated 250 V or less and not touched by a patient.
- b) 1 000 V plus twice the maximum rated voltage for an apparatus rated more than 250 V or touched by a patient.

When an isolating type of power transformer is used (primary and secondary windings not conductively connected), a 60-Hz sinusoidal potential is to be applied between any current-carrying parts of the primary or power-supply circuit and any current-carrying parts of the secondary circuits. The potential is to be twice maximum rated primary voltage plus 1 000 V.

Q.12.1.3 Impact test

Supplements 12.1.3

The top, sides, back, and front of an overall enclosure of a table-, floor-, or wall-mounted apparatus intended for use in a health care facility and used to render LIVE PARTS inaccessible, or to complete the enclosure of parts involving a risk of fire or electric shock, shall withstand a single impact of 7 Joules without developing openings larger than those permitted for fire and electric-shock requirements, resulting in a fire, or causing the apparatus to exceed the touch-current requirements described in Q.9.1.1.1.

UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL

Q.12.1.4 Drop test**Supplements 12.1.4**

An apparatus or appendage of an apparatus that is intended to be hand-supported shall withstand the drop test described below without exposing LIVE PARTS. Following the drop test, the apparatus shall comply with the touch-current requirements in Q.9.1.1.1.

Each of three samples is to be dropped three times from a height of 1.2 m onto a tile covered concrete surface in the position that will produce adverse results.

Q.14.3.4 A transformer connected in the primary circuit intended to supply energy to the low-voltage pendant control shall comply with the requirements for transformers for use with hospital-apparatus pendant controls in UL 2601-1.

The transformer core shall be earthed unless the insulation between the primary winding and the secondary windings consists of BASIC and SUPPLEMENTARY OR OF REINFORCED INSULATION and if the transformer core is electrically isolated from all secondary windings, secondary circuits, and conductive parts connected to secondary circuits (such as heat sinks and the like).

Q.14.6.1.1 All-poles switch

Any switch connected in the supply circuit and used as the on-off device shall open all supply circuit conductors simultaneously.

Q.14.6.3 The on-off positions on the switch shall be clearly indicated.

Q.14.12 A hook or holder shall be provided on the plate to which the pendant control is connected for its support when not in use. An equivalent supporting arrangement is also capable of being used. The hook or holder shall be located on the outside of the bed.

Q.15.1.1**Supplements 15.1.1**

Unless an apparatus is CLASS II, an apparatus intended for use in a health care facility shall be provided with a conventional 2-blade with grounding pin attachment plug designated "Hospital Grade".

Q.15.2.1 A CLASS I apparatus and its auxiliary equipment also having isolated accessible conductive surfaces that will not become energized from within shall have provision for the earthing of such surfaces by a separate TERMINAL consisting of either a pressure-wire connector or a wire-binding screw. The pressure-wire connector or the wire-binding screw shall be capable of securing a No. 10 AWG (5.3 mm²) or smaller earthing conductor.

CLASS II apparatus shall provide a means for earthing accessible conductive surfaces as part of the power supply cord, or by a separate TERMINAL consisting of a pressure-wire connector or a wire-binding screw. The pressure-wire connector or the wire-binding screw shall be capable of securing a No. 10 AWG (5.3 mm²) or smaller earthing conductor.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Q.16.1**Supplements 16.1**

The flexible cord shall be Type SJ, SJO, SJT, SJTO, or the equivalent jacketed cord. An oil-resistant cord shall be provided when the apparatus will be subjected to grease or oil. It shall be of a type intended for use at a voltage no less than the rated voltage of the apparatus and shall have an ampacity no less than the current rating of the apparatus.

The length of the supply cord shall not be less than 1.5 m unless installation instructions indicate installation adjacent to a receptacle.

Q.16.5**Supplements 16.5**

A pendant control cord shall be provided with strain relief at each end; for example, at the point of connection to the control and to the plug.

Q.17.8 Wheels and casters

The wheels or casters on an apparatus or on a cart intended for use with a specific apparatus shall have a minimum diameter of 10 cm.

Q.20.2.4 Pendant-control enclosure

In a pendant control intended for patient use, current-carrying parts that involve a risk of fire or exceed the touch current limits shall be totally enclosed in an insulated material. The insulating material shall withstand the drop test specified in 12.1.4 and have a flammability classification of V-1 or better as described in UL 94. This requirement does not apply to the openings of the enclosure that accommodate functional devices such as switches, speakers, and control-switch knobs. The enclosure shall be marked to caution the user against using the apparatus in an oxygen-enriched atmosphere unless it has been investigated and determined to be capable for that use.

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

Annex R DU
(normative)

Safety requirements for undercabinet apparatus

The requirements of this standard, supplemented or replaced by those contained in this annex, apply to apparatus intended for undercabinet installation.

R.2.2.14

UNDERCABINET APPARATUS

An apparatus intended to be secured to the bottom surface of a cabinet mounted over a countertop.

R.4.1.4 *For the undercabinet temperature test, elevated ambient test, increased moisture test, and mounting security test, the apparatus shall be mounted in an alcove, as shown in figure R.1, to simulate a typical undercabinet mounting arrangement. The alcove is to be constructed using nominal 19-mm outdoor grade plywood. The underside of the cabinet surface is to be 40 cm above the countertop surface.*

The apparatus is to be secured to the cabinet surface in accordance with the manufacturer's installation and operating instructions, using tools such as a Phillips or flathead screwdriver or pliers and the required hardware provided by the manufacturer. If special tools are required they are to be supplied by the manufacturer. However, the apparatus is to be located so that it is 30 cm from the side wall (measured from the closest edge of the apparatus). The apparatus is to be located so as to produce the most severe operating condition that the supplied hardware allows.

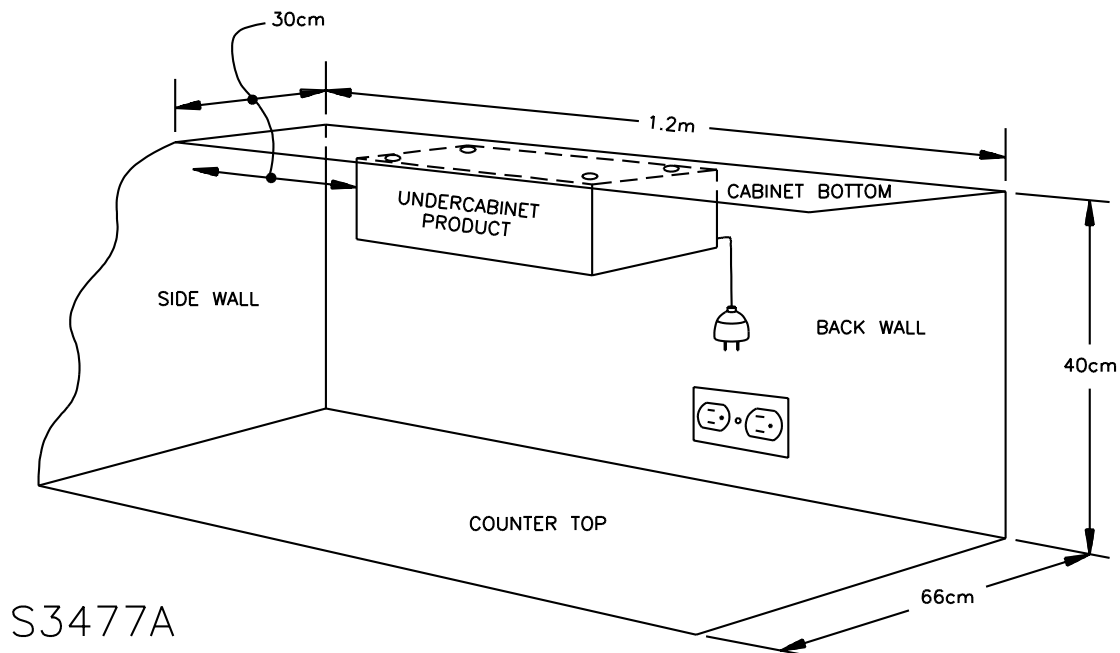


Figure R.1 – UNDERCABINET APPARATUS test set-up

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

R.5.4.3 An UNDERCABINET APPARATUS shall be provided with the following marking in the operation and installation instructions: the signal word "CAUTION" and the following or equivalent wording "To reduce the risk of fire, do not place any heating or cooking apparatus beneath this unit."

R.10.2 Revise subclause to include the following:

Undercabinet increased moisture and humidity treatment

R.10.2.1 Undercabinet increased moisture

Following the conditioning described below, an UNDERCABINET APPARATUS shall comply with the requirements specified for apparatus touch current as specified in 9.1.1.1, and the dielectric strength test described in 10.3.

R.10.2.2 *With the UNDERCABINET APPARATUS mounted as described in R.4.1.4, the apparatus is to be fed by its RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE; and the apparatus is not to be energized during the test. Touch current measuring equipment is to be connected between accessible metal and earth ground, and adjusted to produce the maximum touch current value. Touch current is to be monitored throughout the duration of the test. An electric kettle is to be used for this test. The kettle is to have a minimum capacity of 1.5 L, a spout opening of 12 – 17 cm², and the spout opening located 12 – 14 cm above the countertop surface. The electric kettle is to be connected to a 60 Hz variable supply circuit adjusted to produce 1 500 W of input power and the kettle is to be filled with 1,5 L of tap water. The spout is to be positioned to direct steam towards the bottom center portion of the apparatus, allowing the kettle to boil dry. A final touch current measurement is to be made with the apparatus both energized and unenergized, and recorded when the kettle has boiled off the water. The dielectric strength tests, 10.3, are to be conducted immediately after the final touch current measurement.*

R.11.1.1 Undercabinet elevated ambient

Following the conditioning described below, an UNDERCABINET APPARATUS shall comply with the applicable requirements specified for ACCESSIBLE PARTS in 9.1.1.2 and the dielectric strength test described in 10.3.

R.11.1.2 *An UNDERCABINET APPARATUS is to be mounted as described in R.4.1.4. When the distance between the bottom surface of the apparatus and the countertop surface is less than 250 mm, the countertop surface is to be adjusted downward so that the distance is 250 mm. When the distance is greater, no adjustment is required.*

R.11.1.3 *The apparatus is to be fed by its RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE and energized. An electric fry pan is to be used as the source of heat for this test. The fry pan is to be rated 1 200 W, to have a cooking surface area of 800 – 1 000 cm², and to have the cooking surface area located 5.0 – 7.0 cm above the countertop surface. The thermostatic control of the fry pan is to be bypassed and a thermocouple is to be placed in the center of the cooking area of the fry pan with the fry pan located away from the alcove. The fry pan is to be connected to a variable 60 Hz supply circuit adjusted to produce a temperature of 200 ± 5 °C at the center of the fry pan as measured by the thermocouple. When the temperature has stabilized, the fry pan is to be positioned directly below the UNDERCABINET APPARATUS with the back edge of the fry pan spaced 25 mm from the back wall of the alcove. The fry pan power supply is then to be readjusted to maintain the 200 ± 5°C temperature. The test is to be continued for 1-1/2 hours at which time the dielectric strength test is to be conducted while the apparatus is still in the heated condition.*

UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL

R.12.1.5.1 Temperature stability test

An UNDERCABINET APPARATUS shall be mounted to the alcove described in R.4.1.4 and the entire alcove is to be placed in the oven.

R.12.9 Undercabinet mounting stability

An UNDERCABINET APPARATUS shall withstand a downward vertical force of 90 N for 1 minute following the enclosure temperature stability test described in 12.1.5 when mounted as described in R.4.1.4. Adhesive alone shall not be used to secure the apparatus.

Add to clause 16 – External flexible cords, the following:

R.16.8 Undercabinet flexible cord routing

An UNDERCABINET APPARATUS shall be provided with means for routing the power-supply cord and with cord storage or a means so that excess cord does not hang down.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Annex S DU
(normative)
Safety requirements for in-wall mounted apparatus

The requirements of this standard, supplemented by those contained in this annex, apply to apparatus intended for in-wall mounting.

S.2.2.13

IN-WALL MOUNTED APPARATUS

An apparatus that appears intended for mounting in a wall, has provisions for mounting ears or flanges, or is provided with instructions for mounting in an unfinished wall cavity. The apparatus is placed inside an unfinished wall cavity with some part of the apparatus located behind the plane of the front wall of the wall cavity and in front of the plane of the rear wall of the wall cavity.

Add to clause 5 – Marking and instructions, the following:

S.5.4.4 An IN-WALL MOUNTED APPARATUS shall be provided with installation and mounting instructions.

S.5.4.4.1 An apparatus that by construction appears to be intended for in-wall mounting and that is not investigated in accordance with the requirements for IN-WALL MOUNTED APPARATUS shall be marked “Not Suitable For In-Wall Mounting.”

S.15.5 An IN-WALL MOUNTED APPARATUS intended for connection to the MAINS shall have a means for permanent connection to a wiring system in accordance with the National Electrical Code, ANSI/NFPA 70.

S.15.5.1 Enclosure requirements for conduit entry

A metal enclosure for an IN-WALL MOUNTED APPARATUS shall have a minimum thickness of 1.35 mm uncoated.

Add to clause 20 – FIRE ENCLOSURE:

S.20.2.4 The enclosure of an IN-WALL MOUNTED APPARATUS that is located within the wall cavity shall not be provided with unused openings.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Table S14 – Flammability categories for FIRE ENCLOSURES

Enclosure material/application	Flammability category
Polymeric	5VA

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Annex T DU
(normative)
Safety requirements for apparatus with projection lamps

T.2.7.14CONDITIONED LAMP

A lamp that has been operated for a minimum of 100 hours.

T.2.7.15DEACTIVATED LAMP

A lamp end-of-life failure mode in which the depletion of the filament emission material is such that the lamp gasses are not capable of being ionized. A DEACTIVATED LAMP is to be simulated as follows:

- a) For a rapid-start lamp, two lamps are utilized, each with one end connected to one of the lampholders, and the other end open circuited.
- b) For an instant-start lamp using a circuit-interrupting lampholder, the lamp is removed and the circuit-interrupting lampholder TERMINALS are short-circuited.

T.2.7.16HIGH PRESSURE LAMP

A lamp in which the CONTAINED ATMOSPHERIC ENERGY (CAE) equals or exceeds 5 Joules cold (de-energized 50 degrees C or less).

T.2.7.17MEDIUM PRESSURE LAMP

A lamp in which the CONTAINED ATMOSPHERIC ENERGY (CAE) is greater than 0,5 Joule and less than 5 Joules.

T.2.8.13CONTAINED ATMOSPHERIC ENERGY (CAE)

The amount of energy resulting from the gas contained within a lamp. The CAE is calculated as follows:

$$CAE = 0,15 (PC - PE) V$$

in which:

PC is the contained pressure in atmospheres.

PE is the external pressure in atmospheres, and

V is the volume in cubic centimeters.

T.2.8.14INSTANT-START LAMP CIRCUIT

A circuit that uses a high open-circuit voltage to start lamps that usually have a single contact at each end.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

T.2.8.15LAMP COMPARTMENT

A compartment that encloses a projection lamp. The housing is capable of being metallic or polymeric, and including a lamp diffuser or lens, a metal canopy, a screen, or similar components.

T.2.8.16PREHEAT LAMP CIRCUIT

A lamp connected in series with a reactance ballast and the combination in parallel with a manual or automatic starter.

T.2.8.17RAPID-START LAMP CIRCUIT

A circuit using continuously heated lamp filaments, along with an open-circuit voltage for the ballast to start the lamp without a starter.

T.4.3.6 There shall be no evidence of a risk of fire, electric shock, or injury to persons as a result of separately:

- a) Simulating belt or blade breakage of a fan or blower assembly that ventilates the lamp.
- b) Stalling the rotor of a drive motor, fan motor, or similar component.
- c) Blocking the ventilation path. Ventilating openings that are subject to the accumulation of dust, being placed on a rug, being positioned against drapes, or other similar circumstances are to be covered, one surface at a time, with three layers of cheesecloth loosely draped over the openings, such that the cheesecloth covers 100 % of the opening areas.

When conducting the tests described above, apparatus that include a projection lamp that is capable of being independently switched on and off shall be tested with the lamp both energized and de-energized. When the lamp burns out during the test, the test is to be continued without replacement of the lamp. A new lamp is to be used for each test.

T.4.3.16 Fault tests

An electric discharge lamp supply circuit shall be subjected to the following tests:

- a) For a rapid- or instant-start circuit, the test is to be conducted with a DEACTIVATED LAMP.
- b) For a preheat circuit, the test is to be conducted with either the starter short-circuited, or with a lamp deactivated, so that maximum heating results.

T.4.3.16.1 In the case of a semiconductor component that is capable of being short-circuited and having the lamp supply appear to operate normally, the component shall be separately shorted.

T.5.4.4 Cautionary and warning markingsHIGH PRESSURE LAMP

A compartment that houses a HIGH PRESSURE LAMP shall be marked with the word "DANGER" and the following or the equivalent: "High Pressure Lamp Involves A Risk Of Explosion And Shall Be Handled In Accordance With Manufacturer's Use Or Installation Instructions. Refer Servicing To Qualified Service Personnel." The marking shall be readily visible during any approach to entering the compartment.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

T.5.4.5 Hot surface

An apparatus having a surface that exceeds the temperature limits of table 2 as specified in T.7.1 shall be marked where readily visible when the surface is exposed to touch with either the word "CAUTION" and the following or the equivalent: "HOT SURFACE" or with one of the symbols shown in figure 25.

T.5.4.5 revised January 24, 2006

Figure T.1 – "HOT SURFACE" symbols

Figure T.1 deleted January 24, 2006

T.5.4.6 Lamp ultraviolet radiation

A compartment that houses a user serviceable lamp that produces ultraviolet radiation in excess of the limits specified in T.6.3 shall be marked with the word "WARNING" and the following or the equivalent: "Eye Damage May Result From Directly Viewing The Light Produced By The Lamp Used In This Apparatus. Always Turn Off Lamp Before Opening This Cover." The marking shall be readily visible during any approach to entering the compartment. A compartment provided with an interlock that de-energizes the lamp when the cover is opened is not required to be provided with this marking.

T.5.4.7 Ultraviolet radiation under servicing conditions

An apparatus that produces ultraviolet radiation in excess of the limits specified in T.6.3 under service personnel servicing conditions shall have the following marking located where readily visible during servicing: "Service Personnel – WARNING" and the following or the equivalent: "Eye Damage May Result From Directly Viewing The Light Produced By The Lamp Used In This Apparatus. Always Turn Off Lamp Before Opening This Cover. Ultraviolet Radiation Eye Protection Required During Servicing."

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

T.5.4.8 Interlocks

Apparatus that incorporate an interlock device to reduce the risk of ultraviolet radiation shall be marked where readily visible during any approach to defeat the interlock and with the general location of the interlock indicated. The notice shall consist of the word "WARNING" and the following or the equivalent: "This Cover Is Provided With An Interlock To Reduce The Risk Of Excessive Ultraviolet Radiation. Do Not Defeat Its Purpose Or Attempt To Service Without Removing Cover Completely."

T.5.4.9 Lamp servicing

A marking shall be provided that identifies the lamp and instructs the user in the proper method of access, removal, installation and provides a user serviceable projection or illumination lamp. Such instructions shall be located where readily visible to the person attempting to use an unintended method of user-servicing. Instructions are not required when the intended method is obvious.

T.6.3 Ultraviolet radiation test

Apparatus that produce ultraviolet radiation shall comply with the specified guidelines for ultraviolet radiation as specified in the current edition of the Threshold Limit Values and Biological Exposure Indices issued by the American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists.

When determining compliance, all removable parts, such as lenses and filters, that are user serviceable are to be removed from the apparatus when their removal results in an increase in the amount of ultraviolet radiation exposure to the user.

T.7.1 Normal temperature test

An apparatus shall not display temperature rises on surfaces that are exposed to the user, either during normal operation or lamp servicing, greater than those indicated in table 2. The temperature rise limits of table 2 are capable of being exceeded on surfaces within the apparatus that are exposed only during user servicing of a projection lamp when the apparatus is provided with a warning marking as indicated in T.5.4.5.

T.9.1.1 Electric shock test

During relamping, a user-serviceable fluorescent lamp shall comply with the electric shock requirements in UL 935.

T.14.5.1.2 Overtemperature-protective devices

Overtemperature protection that is provided for compliance with the Fault Tests shall consist of one of the following:

- a) Thermal protection complying with the applicable requirements for fluorescent-lamp-ballast protectors in UL 873.
- b) A thermal cutout complying with the requirements in UL 60691.
- c) Another protective device that is investigated and determined to provide equivalent protection.

T.14.5.1.2 revised March 20, 2006

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

T.18.1 Lamp rupture test

An apparatus using a medium or HIGH PRESSURE LAMP shall withstand a test (for example, by water or impact) that results in lamp rupture without emission of glass particles other than dust.

When conducting the lamp rupture test, the apparatus is to be mounted in its intended operating position.

T.20.2.1 LAMP COMPARTMENT

An apparatus intended for use with a medium or HIGH PRESSURE LAMP shall be provided with a LAMP COMPARTMENT. The LAMP COMPARTMENT shall have no holes with any dimension greater than 3.0 mm.

The surface of the LAMP COMPARTMENT, where particles from the ruptured lamp will drop to and rest, shall be either:

- a) Metal or metal screen with open holes of maximum 3.0 mm diagonally or in diameter.
- b) Minimum 3.0 mm thick tempered or borosilicate glass.
- c) Glass material other than tempered or borosilicate glass complying with the Glass Thermal Shock/Containment Test described in UL 1598, or
- d) Polymeric material complying with the Polymeric Lamp Containment Barrier Test described in UL 1598.

A lamp containment barrier at points other than where particles from a ruptured lamp will drop and rest is not prohibited from being provided with open holes greater than 3.0 mm diagonally or in diameter when additional barriers are located such that there is no line-of-sight opening between the arc tube of the lamp and any point external to the apparatus.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Annex U DU
(normative)

Safety requirements for permanently connected apparatus

U.21.1 Supply connections

U.21.1.1 Permanently connected apparatus shall be provided with means for permanent connection to the MAINS supply. Cord connected equipment that is intended to be fastened in place or located in a dedicated space shall be provided with means for permanent connection to the MAINS supply unless connection by means of a supply cord is required to facilitate the interchange of units or removal is required for maintenance and repair, in which case, the shortest feasible length of cord shall be used.

U.21.1.2 A sheet-metal member to which a wiring system is to be connected in the field shall have a thickness not less than 0.85 mm when of uncoated sheet steel, not less than 0.90 mm when of galvanized sheet steel, not less than 1.15 mm when of sheet aluminum, or not less than 1.10 mm when of sheet copper or sheet brass.

U.21.1.3 A TERMINAL box or compartment shall be provided in which MAINS supply connections are to be made and shall be such that these connections are capable of being readily made and inspected without disturbing the wiring or the apparatus after the unit is installed as intended.

U.21.1.4 The volume of a field wiring compartment provided with pigtail leads for connection to the MAINS supply shall not be less than indicated in table U.1.

Table U.1 – Minimum size of field wiring compartment

AWG	Size of lead		Wire space within compartment for each lead
	(mm ²)		(cm ³)
14	2.1		35
12	3.3		40
10	5.3		45
8	8.4		50
6	13.3		85

U.21.1.5 A pigtail lead shall not be more than two wire sizes smaller than the MAINS supply conductor to which it will be connected.

NOTE For example, when No. 14 AWG (2.1 mm²) MAINS supply conductors are used, the pigtail leads provided shall not be smaller than No. 18 AWG (0.82 mm²).

U.21.1.6 No electrical component shall be mounted on a part, such as the cover of a wiring TERMINAL compartment, that must be removed for the connection or inspection of field wiring. However, this requirement does not apply to a unit in which the power supply circuit wires are intended to be connected to an attachment plug receptacle.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

U.21.1.7 A TERMINAL compartment intended for connection of a supply raceway shall be attached to the unit so that it is resistant to turning.

U.21.2 Separation of circuits

U.21.2.1 Field installation of conductors of any circuit shall be separated by barriers:

- a) From field- and factory-installed conductors connected to any other circuit, unless the conductors of both circuits are insulated for the maximum voltage in either circuit, and
- b) From an uninsulated part of any other circuit in the unit and from any uninsulated live part, the short circuiting of which results in a risk of fire or electric shock.

A barrier used to separate the wiring of field and factory wiring shall be held in place and shall be metal or of an insulating material of such strength as to withstand exposure to mechanical damage.

NOTE Separation of some field-installed conductors from others and from uninsulated live parts connected to different circuits is capable of being accomplished by arranging the location of openings in the enclosure for the various conductors (with regard to the TERMINALS or other uninsulated live parts) so that the conductors or parts of different circuits are not intermingled.

U.21.3 Wiring TERMINALS

U.21.3.1 Apparatus intended for permanent connection to the MAINS supply source shall be provided with wiring TERMINALS or leads for the connection of the apparatus to the MAINS supply source. Wiring TERMINALS provided for the connection of conductors shall have a current rating no less than the current rating of the apparatus. A wiring TERMINAL shall be provided with a soldering lug or pressure wire connector, firmly bolted or held by a screw. A fixed wiring TERMINAL shall be prevented from turning.

A wire binding screw is capable of being used at a wiring TERMINAL intended to accommodate a No. 10 AWG (5.3 mm²) or smaller conductor when an upturned lug or the equivalent is provided to hold the wire in position.

An upturned lug or a cupped washer shall be capable of retaining a supply conductor not smaller than No. 14 AWG (2.1 mm²) under the head of the screw.

U.21.3.2 A field wiring TERMINAL shall be prevented from turning or shifting in position by means other than friction alone. For example, by two screws or rivets, square shoulders, dowel pins, lug offsets, connecting straps or clips fitted into an adjacent part, or some equivalent method.

U.21.3.3 A No. 14 AWG (2.1 mm²) conductor is the smallest that is capable of being used for branch-circuit wiring and thus is the smallest conductor that is to be anticipated at a TERMINAL for connection of a branch-circuit conductor.

U.21.3.4 A TERMINAL plate for a wire-binding screw shall be of metal no less than 1.5 mm in thickness and shall have no less than two full threads in the metal.

A TERMINAL plated formed from stock having the minimum required thickness as given above is capable of having the metal extruded at the tapped hole for the binding screw so as to provide two full threads.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

U.21.3.5 The free length of a lead inside an outlet box or wiring compartment shall be 150 mm or more when the lead is intended for field connection to an external circuit.

U.21.3.6 PERMANENTLY CONNECTED APPARATUS rated at 125 or 125/250 V (3-wire) or less shall have one TERMINAL or lead identified for the connection of the grounded circuit conductor (neutral) of the power supply circuit.

A field-wiring TERMINAL intended for the connection of a grounded circuit conductor (neutral) shall be identified by means of a metallic coating that is substantially white in color and be easily distinguishable from the other TERMINAL; or proper identification of the TERMINAL for the connection of the grounded TERMINAL shall be clearly shown in some other manner, such as an attached wiring diagram. When wire leads are provided instead of TERMINALS, the identified lead shall have a white or gray color and shall be easily distinguishable from the other leads.

When a lampholder is provided, the identified TERMINAL or lead shall be connected to the screw shell of the lampholder. A fuse or single-pole switch, circuit breaker, or automatic control shall not be connected to the identified grounded circuit conductor (neutral).

U.21.3.7 The distance between any pressure TERMINAL connector intended for field wiring and the wall of the enclosure toward which the conductor is directed or through which the conductor is intended to pass shall be as indicated in table U.2. However, the distance is capable of being less where the wall or other obstruction lies outside of the area occupied by the conductor that is bent or deflected to a radius not less than the distance given in the table.

Table U.2 – Minimum wire bending space

Size of wire,		Minimum bending space – TERMINAL to wall,
AWG	(mm²)	mm
14 – 10	2.1 – 5.3	Not specified
8 – 6	8.4 – 13.3	40
4 – 3	21.2 – 26.7	55
2	33.6	65
1	42.4	80

U.21.3.8 A field-wiring TERMINAL or lead for the connection of an apparatus grounding conductor shall be provided.

U.21.3.9 A field-wiring TERMINAL or lead for the connection of an apparatus grounding conductor shall be a screw type connector capable of securing a conductor of the proper size.

U.21.3.10 A wire-binding screw or screw-type wire connector shall be located so that it will not be removed during the intended servicing of the apparatus, and the wire-binding screw intended for the connection of the apparatus grounding conductor shall have a green colored head that is hexagonal, slotted, or both. A screw-type pressure-wire connector intended for such a conductor shall be plainly marked with the symbol ⊕.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

U.21.3.11 The surface of an insulated lead intended solely for the connection of an apparatus grounding conductor shall be either green or green with or without one or more yellow stripes, and no other lead shall be so color coded.

The requirement above covers the color coding of grounding leads of internal wiring which is visible in a wiring compartment in the area in which field connection are to be made. The requirement does not apply to leads or wiring of low voltage circuits that are intended to be field connected to CLASS 2 wiring and that are separated or segregated from high voltage circuit field wiring connections by barriers.

U.21.4 Spacings at field-wiring TERMINALS

U.21.4.1 The spacing between field wiring TERMINALS of opposite polarity, and the spacing between a wiring TERMINAL and any other uninsulated metal part not of the same polarity, shall not be less than that specified in table U.3.

Table U.3 – Spacings at wiring TERMINALS

Potential involved, volts	Minimum spacings		
	Between wiring TERMINALS, through air or over surface	Between TERMINALS and other uninsulated metal parts not always of the same polarity ^a	
		Over surface	Through air
	mm	mm	mm
250 or less	6.5	6.5	6.5
more than 250	13	13	10

^a Applies to the sum of the spacings involved where an isolated dead metal part is interposed.

U.21.5 Earth connections in PERMANENTLY CONNECTED APPARATUS

U.21.5.1 A screw-type pressure-wire connector intended for connection of the apparatus earthing conductor shall be plainly identified by the marking "G", GR", Ground", GND", Grounding" or the symbol ⊕, or a similar designation, or by a marking on a wiring diagram provided on the apparatus.

U.21.6 Supply wire temperature ratings

U.21.6.1 Apparatus for which, during the temperature test, the wires within a TERMINAL BOX OR MAINS wiring compartment attain a temperature higher than 60 °C, shall be marked with the following or the equivalent: "For supply connections use wires rated for _____ °C minimum." The temperature to be used in the marking shall be 75 or 90 as appropriate.

U.21.7 Different conductor materials

U.21.7.1 Apparatus incorporating MAINS field wiring TERMINALS shall be marked where visible during and after installation with "Use Aluminum Conductors Only" when the TERMINAL is intended only for connection to aluminum wire or "Use Copper or Aluminum Conductors" when the TERMINAL is intended for connection to both copper and aluminum wire.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Annex V DU
(normative)

Safety requirements for carts, stands, and similar apparatus for use with specific apparatus covered by this standard

V.5.1 A cart or stand that is specified by the manufacturer for use with an apparatus and that is packaged and marketed separately from the apparatus shall be marked with the cart or stand manufacturer's name, a distinctive catalog designation, and with the word "CAUTION" and the following or the equivalent: "This cart (or stand) intended for use only with (manufacturer's name) model number (or series) (apparatus name). Use with other apparatus is capable of resulting in instability causing possible injury."

V.5.4 When it is not feasible to include a specific apparatus model number series designation in the cart or stand marking as required in V.5.1, the cart or stand shall be marked as follows: "CAUTION – This cart (or stand) for use only with specific (manufacturer's name) (apparatus). See apparatus instructions. Use with other models is capable of resulting in instability causing possible injury."

In conjunction with the markings described above, an apparatus intended for use with this cart or stand shall be marked as follows: "CAUTION – This (apparatus name) for use only with (cart or stand manufacturer's name and model number) cart (or stand). Use with other carts (or stands) is capable of resulting in instability causing possible injury." This marking shall be located on a readily visible part of the apparatus or on literature packed with it.

V.12.9 Injury to persons tests

All apparatus shall be subjected to the applicable tests described in the following subclauses. An apparatus shall be subjected to the applicable tests alone and again while placed on any cart or stand that is provided or specified by the apparatus manufacturer.

When polymeric materials are involved in the construction, the applicable tests described in V.12.9.2 – V.12.9.5 shall be conducted both before and after the test described in V.12.9.1.

V.12.9.1 Apparatus, cart, or stand temperature stability

An apparatus, cart, or stand using polymeric materials in its construction shall withstand either of the conditions described in 12.1.5 without any shrinkage, warpage, or other distortion of the polymeric materials that results in the apparatus, cart, or stand not complying with requirements in this subclause.

During the test, an apparatus intended for use with a companion cart or stand shall be tested with the apparatus placed on the cart or stand in accordance with the instructions provided by the manufacturer.

V.12.9.2 Wheel or caster securement

A wheel or caster shall be capable of withstanding a pull of 20 N without being damaged or pulled free from its securing means.

The pull force is to be applied by a weight, or a steady pull, for a period of 1 minute in any direction made possible by the construction.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

V.12.9.3 Cart or stand loading

A cart or stand shall be constructed so that permanent deformation or damage that is capable of resulting in injury to persons does not occur when it is subjected to a weight that exerts a force of 220 N applied for 1 minute to any appurtenance accessible to a child.

To determine compliance, the force is to be applied through the end of a 5-cm diameter right circular cylinder. The force is to be applied to a shelf, drawer, dowel rung support, or equivalent part that is within 75 cm of the floor and will support some or all of a child's weight. The force is to be applied for 1 minute with the cart or stand at room temperature. The part is not to collapse or break so as to expose sharp edges or produce pinch points that are capable of resulting in injury.

In addition, a cart or stand shall be constructed so that permanent deformation or damage that is capable of resulting in injury to persons does not occur when each supporting surface is individually loaded with:

- a) Two times the load specified in table V.1 plus 440 N for the surface intended to support a television.
- b) Four times the manufacturer's intended load or 108 N, whichever is greater, but not to exceed 440 N, for all other supporting surfaces.
- c) A dedicated storage area intended to accommodate specific accessories such as media tapes, discs, etc. shall be fully loaded with its intended load.

The weight is to be applied for 1 minute on each supporting surface with the other supporting surfaces unloaded and when each supporting surface is simultaneously loaded.

Table V.1 – Simulated television load parameters

Maximum screen diagonal measurement recommended for use with surface, cm	Total weight ^a, N	Height above supporting surface to center of support rod, cm	Angle of unstable equilibrium ^b
Up to 33	110	17	25°
34 – 41	155	19	25°
42 – 52	220	23	22°
53 – 62	310	25	21°
63 – 70	420	28	20°
71 – 82	600	33	15°
83 – 90	780	38	15°
91 – 102	1070	43	13°

^a Includes weight of test fixture.

^b The fixture shall be stable in the forward direction at the angle specified and become unstable (tip over) when the angle is increased by 1 degree.

V.12.9.4 Cart or stand impact test

When tested as described below, a cart or stand shall not produce a risk of injury to persons.

A single 7.0 Joule impact is to be applied to any part of the cart or stand and the test method is to be as described in 12.1.3.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

V.12.9.5 Cart or stand handle strength test

When tested as described in 12.1.6, a handle or support system of a cart or stand shall not break nor shall there be any breakage of the securing means, including that portion of the enclosure to which the handle or support system is attached.

A cart or stand handle or support system shall withstand a force of twice the combined weight of the cart or stand and the apparatus.

V.12.9.6 Mounting means test

The rack, wall, ceiling, or other mounting provisions and hardware supplied with the apparatus shall be subjected to a force four times the weight of the apparatus. There shall be no cracking, breaking, or detaching of the securing means or of the portion of the enclosure to which the mounting means are attached when tested as described below.

V.19 Mechanical stability

A cart or stand, or a cart or stand used in combination with its intended apparatus shall be subjected to the applicable tests described in the following subclauses.

During these tests, the apparatus or the cart or stand shall not overbalance, nor shall the apparatus be dislodged when tested in combination with the cart or stand.

V.19.1 The cart or stand alone, and the cart or stand in combination with its intended apparatus is placed in its normal position of use on a plane inclined at an angle of 10° to the horizontal and rotated slowly through an angle of 360° about its normal vertical axis.

V.19.1.1 For the test, the cart or stand alone, and the apparatus in combination with the cart or stand is to be placed on a non-skid surface and arranged in its intended position with all doors, drawers, casters, wheels, adjustable feet (levelers) and other appurtenances positioned in any combination that results in the least stability. Legs and other means of support are not prohibited from being blocked to keep the cart or stand from sliding.

V.19.2 When positioned as described in V.19.1.1, a force of 100 N directed vertically downwards is applied in such a way as to produce the maximum overturning moment, to any point of any horizontal surface, protrusion or recess, provided that the distance of that point to the floor does not exceed 75 cm.

V.19.3 When positioned as described in V.19.1.1, an apparatus that is used in combination with a cart or stand is subjected to a horizontal force as described in table 20A. The force is to be applied in a horizontal direction to that point on the apparatus that will result in the least stability of the apparatus.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Annex W DU
(informative)

A 0.02-ohm shunt for use in the peak inrush-current measurement described in 14.6.6.1

W.21.1 Purpose

W.21.1.1 This annex provides the construction details for a 0.02-ohm, high-frequency, current-viewing, resistive shunt that complies with the specifications given in table W.1 and is capable of being used for conducting the peak inrush-current test, 14.6.6.1. It is capable of being fabricated with ordinary tools, and uses readily available parts. Commercial shunts having the prescribed characteristics are also available.

Table W.1 – Specifications for the high-frequency, current-viewing, resistive shunt used for measuring apparatus peak inrush current

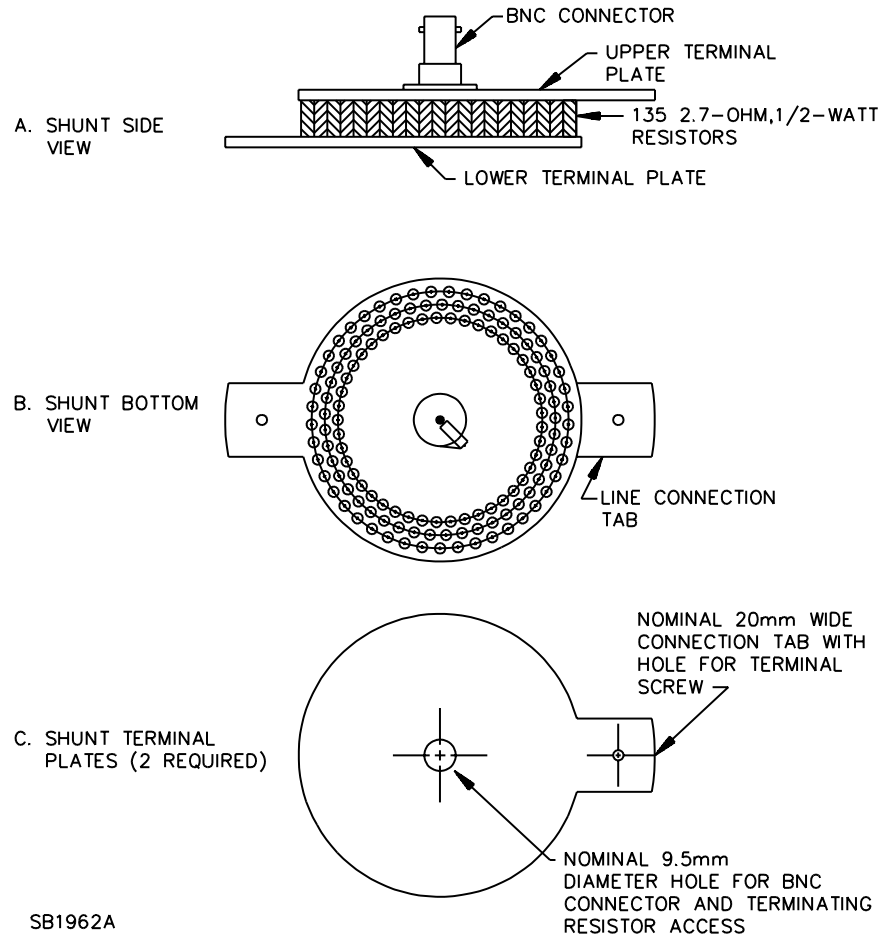
<u>Parameter</u>	<u>Specification</u>	<u>Tolerance</u>
<u>Resistance</u>	<u>0.02 ohms</u>	<u>± 2.5 percent</u>
<u>Rise Time</u>	<u>30 nanoseconds^a</u>	<u>plus 0; minus not specified</u>
<u>^a When a peak-to-peak pulse of any convenient value having a rise time of 30 nanoseconds or less is applied, there is to be no discernible rise-time degradation of the applied waveform when viewed from the current-viewing connector.</u>		

W.21.2 General

W.21.2.1 The construction details for the 0.02-ohm shunt are given in figure W.1 and its accompanying text.

W.21.2.2 When using the shunt for the measurement of the peak inrush-current test, the exact resistance of the finished shunt is to be used, as determined by resistance-measurement equipment accurate to at least 0.001 ohm, in all calculations and calibrations.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**



PARTS LIST AND ASSEMBLY SPECIFICATIONS

1. One hundred and thirty-five 2,7-ohm, 1/2-W carbon composition resistors, $\pm 5\%$ tolerance.
2. Two 86-mm diameter, nominal 1,0-mm thick sheet-copper plates cut as shown in item C.
3. Resistors mounted between the two plates on three concentric circles as shown in items A and B.
 - I) Outer circle 8 cm diameter.
 - II) Center circle 7 cm diameter.
 - III) Inner circle 6 cm diameter.
4. One BNC-type coaxial cable connector mounted in a hole in the upper terminal plate as shown in item A.
5. The cable-connector shield is fastened to one plate. The center contact of the connector is fastened to the other plate through a terminating resistor matching the cable impedance (33 – 50 ohms).

Figure W.1 – Construction details for a high-frequency, current-viewing, resistive shunt satisfying the specifications in table W1

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Annex X DU
(normative)
Manufacturing and production-line tests and verifications

The following tests are to be conducted by the manufacturer during or at the end of production.

X.21.1 Production-line dielectric voltage-withstand test

Each apparatus shall withstand as a routine production-line test the application of a potential not less than that shown in either table X.1 for CLASS I apparatus or table X.2 for CLASS II apparatus without an indication of noncompliance. It is also acceptable for the manufacturer to conduct the routine production-line test at an a.c. test potential that is 5/6 of the voltage specified with the duration of the application increased to 60 s.

The test is not required to be made on speakers and similar components mounted in cabinets made of wood or other nonconductive material when the components are not touched or handled in the use of the apparatus and when their mounting screws, or the equivalent, are not exposed on the exterior of the cabinet.

The test is to be conducted when the apparatus is complete and ready for packing, or when it is complete except for parts such as snap covers or friction-fit knobs that interfere with the performance of the test. For the test, the apparatus is capable of being in the heated or unheated condition.

The test equipment is to include:

- a) A means for indicating the test voltage that is being applied to the apparatus being tested. This is to be accomplished by sensing the voltage at the test leads, or by an equivalent means.*
- b) A means for effectively indicating noncompliance. The indication is to be auditory when it is capable of being readily heard above the background noise level, visual when it commands the attention of the operator, or a device that automatically rejects noncompliant apparatus. When the indication of noncompliance is auditory or visual, the indication is to remain active and conspicuous until the test equipment is reset manually.*

There is to be no transient voltage applied to the apparatus being tested that results in an instantaneous voltage to the apparatus exceeding 120 % of the peak value of the test voltage that the manufacturer specifies for this test. This requirement applies for the entire duration of the test, including the time that the voltage is first applied to the apparatus and the time that the voltage is removed from the apparatus.

The control of the applied voltage specified in these requirements, whether manual or automatic, is to be maintained under conditions of varying line voltage. Higher test potentials are to be used only when the higher dielectric stress will not adversely affect the insulating systems of the apparatus.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Table X.1 – Dielectric voltage-withstand test potentials for CLASS I (earthed) apparatus

Apparatus voltage rating	Test potential, V (40 – 70 Hz)	Test potential, V dc	Time, s
130 V r.m.s. (184 V dc) or less	800	1 130	1
Greater than 130 V r.m.s. (184 V dc)	1 500	2 120	1

Table X.2 – Dielectric voltage-withstand test potentials for CLASS II (double insulated) apparatus

Apparatus voltage rating	Test potential, V (40 – 70 Hz)	Test potential, V dc	Time, s
130 V r.m.s. (184 V dc) or less	1 500	2 120	1
Greater than 130 V r.m.s. (184 V dc)	2 500	3 540	1

X.21.2 AC production-line test

When adjusted for production-line testing, an ac tester is to have the following features and characteristics:

a) The test equipment is to produce an output voltage that has a sinusoidal waveform, a frequency that is within the range of 40 – 70 Hz, and a peak value of the waveform that is no less than 1.3 and no more than 1.5 times the root-mean-square value.

b) The test equipment is to produce an output voltage that is no less than the value specified, nor is the magnitude of the test voltage to be greater than 120 % of the specified potential when the tester is used in each of the following conditions:

1) When the test duration is 1 s, the output voltage is to be maintained within the specified range when only a voltmeter having an input impedance of at least 2 M Ω and a specimen of the apparatus being tested are connected to the output TERMINALS, and when a resistance of no less than 2 M Ω is connected in parallel with the voltmeter and the apparatus being tested, and the value of the resistance is reduced in increments that are no greater than 25 % of the preceding value to the point at which an indication of unacceptable performance just occurs.^b

2) When the test duration is 1 min, the output voltage is to be increased from zero at a uniform rate so as to arrive at the specified potential in 5 s. The output voltage is to be maintained within the specified range, by manual or automatic means, throughout the 1 min duration of the test or until there is an indication of noncompliance.

c) When the test equipment is adjusted to produce the specified voltage, and a resistance of 120 k Ω is connected across the output, the test equipment is to indicate noncompliance within 0.5 s. A resistance of more than 120 k Ω is to be used to produce an indication of noncompliance when the manufacturer elects to use a tester having higher sensitivity.

^b The details for a test device which is to be constructed to perform the resistance reductions are in X.21.8.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

X.21.3 DC production-line test

When adjusted for production-line testing, a dc tester is to provide a means for indicating noncompliance. For the purpose of these requirements, noncompliance is defined as:

- a) An abrupt decrease or nonlinear advance of voltage as the test voltage is increased, or similarly,
- b) An abrupt increase in current.

X.21.4 Polarization verification

Electrical-continuity is to be verified as a routine production-line procedure between the grounded supply-circuit conductor of the attachment plug (wide blade of a two-wire plug) and externally ACCESSIBLE PARTS of the apparatus that are intended to be connected in the earthed supply-circuit, such as the identified contact (wide slot) of a parallel-slot receptacle, the screw shell of an Edison-base lampholder or plug fuseholder, and the accessible contact of an exterior fuseholder. The continuity is to be verified either visually or through the use of an electrical test. See X.21.6.

X.21.5 Continuity of earthing connection

When an apparatus is provided with an earthing-type attachment plug, electrical continuity between the earthing blade of the attachment plug and all conductive parts that are accessible (only those parts that result in electric shock) shall be maintained and verified as a routine production-line test. The continuity is to be determined either visually or through the use of an electrical test. See X.21.6.

X.21.6 Electrical indicating device

Any indicating device (such as an ohmmeter or a low-voltage battery-and-buzzer combination) is capable of being used in the tests described in X.21.4 and X.21.5.

X.21.7 X-Radiation measurement verification

Periodic production line sampling measurements of X-Radiation shall be conducted on apparatus employing cathode-ray-tubes (CRTs) in accordance with Federal Regulations 21CFR 1002.10 and 1002.12. The results of the recorded measurements shall be made available for audit. Test records shall include corrective action for any nonconforming results.

X.21.8 Variable resistance load for the voltage output check described in X.21.2.

X.21.8.1 Purpose

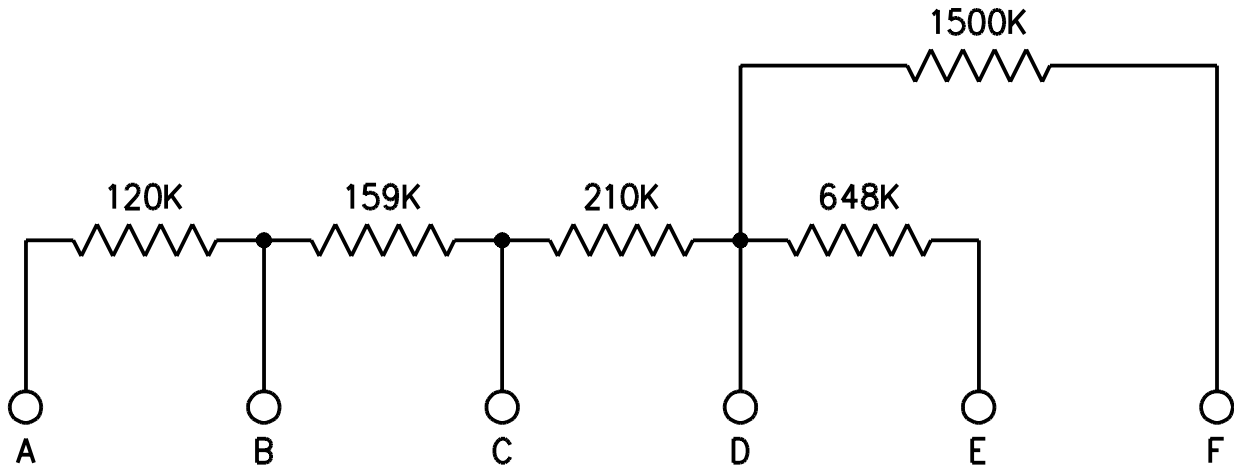
X.21.8.1.1 Figure X.1 provides an example of a variable resistance load which is capable of being simply constructed to accomplish the varying resistance loading [in 25 % steps as outlined in X.21.2(b)(1)].

X.21.8.2 General

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

X.21.8.2.1 The details of a step-type variable resistance load using commonly available resistors are shown in figure X.1 and table X.3.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**



S2292

<u>Terminals</u>	<u>Resistance (ohms)</u>	<u>Current (mA) at 1200 V</u>
<u>AB</u>	<u>120 K</u>	<u>10.00</u>
<u>BC</u>	<u>159 K</u>	<u>7.55</u>
<u>CD</u>	<u>210 K</u>	<u>5.71</u>
<u>AC</u>	<u>279 K</u>	<u>4.30</u>
<u>BD</u>	<u>369 K</u>	<u>3.25</u>
<u>AD</u>	<u>489 K</u>	<u>2.45</u>
<u>DE</u>	<u>648 K</u>	<u>1.85</u>
<u>CE</u>	<u>858 K</u>	<u>1.40</u>
<u>AE</u>	<u>1 137 K</u>	<u>1.05</u>
<u>DF</u>	<u>1 500 K</u>	<u>0.80</u>
<u>AF</u>	<u>1 989 K</u>	<u>0.60</u>
<u>EF</u>	<u>2 148 K</u>	<u>0.56</u>

Figure X.1 – Details for a typical step-type variable-resistance-load

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Table X.3 – Power consumed in watts

Resistor in ohms	Applied voltage			
	1 200 V	1 500 V	2 700 V	4 500 V
<u>120 K</u>	<u>12</u>	<u>19</u>	<u>61</u>	<u>169</u>
<u>159 K</u>	<u>9.1</u>	<u>14</u>	<u>46</u>	<u>127</u>
<u>210 K</u>	<u>6.9</u>	<u>11</u>	<u>35</u>	<u>96</u>
<u>648 K</u>	<u>2.2</u>	<u>3.5</u>	<u>11</u>	<u>31</u>
<u>1 500 K</u>	<u>0.96</u>	<u>1.5</u>	<u>4.9</u>	<u>14</u>

NOTE Represents the maximum watts consumed by the resistor when used as shown in figure X.1 at the voltages indicated.

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

Annex Y DC
(normative)
Standards for components

Standards under which components of the products covered by this standard are evaluated include the following:

Title of Standard – UL Standard Designation

Attachment Plugs and Receptacles – UL 498

Batteries, Lithium – UL 1642

Class 2 Power Units – UL 1310

Communication Circuit Accessories – UL 1863

Flexible Cord and Fixture Wire – UL 62

Fluorescent-Lamp Ballasts – UL 935

Fuseholders – UL 512

High-Intensity-Discharge Lamp Ballasts – UL 1029

Information Technology Equipment (Third Edition) – UL 1950

Lampholders, Edison-Base – UL 496

Lampholders, Starters, and Starter Holders for Fluorescent Lamps – UL 542

Signaling and Nurse Call Equipment, Hospital – UL 1069

Time-Indicating and -Recording Appliances – UL 863

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

Annex Z DE
(informative)
Index

NOTE – Underlining to indicate text added to IEC 60065 is not used in this annex.

A

a.c. test voltage, N.2.1

AC production-line test, X.21.2

accessibility control shafts, 9.1.2

ACCESSIBLE parts, 7.1.1, 11.2.2

ACCESSIBLE, defined, 2.8.3

accessories, 17.11

ACCESSORY installation by SKILLED PERSON, 17.11.1

ACCESSORY, defined, 2.8.13

additional requirements for apparatus for outdoor use and wet locations, annex A

adhesive label test, Clause 5

all windings, 14.3.3.1

all-poles switch, Q.14.6.1.1

aluminum conductors, 17.10

antenna

end piece removal prevention, 12.6.1

end piece securement test, 12.6.1

rod, 12.6

telescoping, 12.6

antenna coaxial socket

endurance test, 12.5

impact test, 12.5

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

torque test, 12.5

mounted on the apparatus, 12.5

antenna jack tests, 12.5

antenna positioners, 4.2.9.1

apparatus

during temperature test marking, U.21.6.1

installation and operation instructions, Q.5.4.6

stability, Clause 19

temperature stability, V.12.9.1

apparatus stability tests, 19.1 – 19.2.1

arcing test, high voltage, 14.4.1

AUDIO AMPLIFIER

defined, 2.2.1

normal operating condition, 4.2.4

tone-generator unit, 4.2.4

audio amplifier

permanently connected, 15.1.3.1

test conditions, 4.2.4

audio output marking, 5.2

autotransformer, 4.3.2

AVAILABLE POWER, defined, 2.3.7

B

band-pass filter, annex C

BASIC INSULATION, annex B

BASIC INSULATION, defined, 2.6.3

batteries, 14.1, 14.10

conditions, 14.10.3

*UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL*

exceeding permissible values of manufacturer, 14.10.3

lithium replacement, 14.10.3

lithium safety, 5.4.1

overcurrent protective device, 14.10.6

replacing, 14.10.2

reversed polarity, 4.3.11

battery drop, 14.10.5

battery tests, 14.10.3

battery, lithium, marking, 5.4.1

bump test, 12.1.1

burnout test, Q.4.3.2.1

BY HAND, defined, 2.8.4

C

capacitors and RC-units, 14.2

cart

floor mounting, V.12.9.3

handle strength test, V.12.9.5

impact test, V.12.9.4

injury to persons test, V.12.9

mechanical stability test, V.19.1, V.19.1.1, V.19.2, V.19.3

overbalance, V.19

safety marking, V.5.4

safety requirements, annex V

temperature stability, V.12.9.1

cart loading, V.12.9.3

cart or stand marking, V.5.1, V.5.4

cart with an apparatus, marking, V.5.1

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

caster securement, V.12.9.2

cautionary and warning markings, T.5.4.4

circuit breakers, 14.5.4

citizen's band apparatus, 4.3.12

CLASS I

apparatus, insulation, 8.5

constructional requirements, 8.5

defined, 2.6.1

with metal barrier, N.1.3

with screen barrier, N.1.3

CLASS II

apparatus, insulation, 8.6

constructional requirements, 8.6

defined, 2.6.2

double insulation apparatus, 8.1

cleaning and disinfecting, Q.5.4.4

cleaning test, Q.10.2.1

clearance distance, 13.1, annex E

CLEARANCE, defined, 2.6.11

CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES, Clause 13

measuring, annex E

dimensions, 13.1

complete apparatus, 12.1

components, 2.7, Clause 14

components and parts not covered by 20.1.1, 20.1.2, 20.1.3 and FIRE ENCLOSURES, 20.1.4

components part flame test, 14.4.3

CONDITIONED LAMP, T.2.7.14

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

conditions

- fault tests, 4.3

- normal operating tests, 4.2

- test, 4.1

conduct of tests, 4.1

conductive label test, Clause 5

conductive material label conditions, Clause 5

conductive parts compliance test, 17.4

CONDUCTIVE PATTERN, defined, 2.7.13

conductive probe, 14.4.1

CONDUCTIVITY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS, defined, 2.4.4

conductor

- No. 14 AWG, U.21.3.3

- supply, U.21.3

conductors

- aluminum, 17.10

- of flexible cords, 17.6

constructional requirements with regard to the protection against electric shock, Clause 8

CONTAINED ATMOSPHERIC ENERGY (CAE), T.2.8.13

continuity of earthing connection, X.21.5

constructional requirements, 14.3.3

correct fit of internal plug connections, N.1.5

correct mounting of mechanical parts, N.1.7

correct polarity and connection of components or subassemblies, N.1.1

correct position of internal wiring, N.1.4

correct values of components, N.1.2

cover latch torque test, 17.7

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

cover-fixing devices, compliance test, 17.7

covers, protective, 9.2

creepage distance, 13.1, annex E

CREEPAGE DISTANCE, defined, 2.6.12

CRT implosion protection, 18.1

current rating, 14.6.6

D

d.c. test voltage, N.2.1

date code, 5.1

DC capacitors and RC-units

 flammability category, 14.2.5

 terminations connected to mains, 14.2.2

DC production-line test, X.21.3

DEACTIVATED LAMP, T.2.7.15

definitions, Clause 2

degaussing coil, 14.3.2

designs with more than one winding, 14.3.3.2

devices forming a part of the MAINS plug, 15.4

dielectric strength test, N.2.1

dielectric voltage withstand test, 10.3, 14.4.4, Q.10.3

different conductor materials, U.21.7

DIRECTLY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS, defined, 2.4.4

double insulation, 8.8

DOUBLE INSULATION

 defined, 2.6.4

 marking, Q.5.4.5

double-pole switch, 14.6.7

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

drawers, 12.4

drop test, 12.1.4, Q.12.1.4

E

earth connections in PERMANENTLY CONNECTED APPARATUS, U.21.5

earthing, 15.2

electric shock hazard, 11.1

under normal operating conditions, Clause 9

projection lamps, T.4.3.6

electric shock test, T.9.1.1

electrical components, 20.1, 20.1.1

and mechanical parts, 20.1

flammability requirement, Clause 14

electrical connections and mechanical fixings, Clause 17

electrical indicating device, X.21.6

electronic gaming, 1.1.1

ELECTRONIC MUSICAL INSTRUMENT, defined, 2.2.2

enclosure

conduit entry, S.15.5.1

IN-WALL MOUNTED APPARATUS, S.15.5.1, S.20.2.4

OUTDOOR LOCATION, A.20.2.1

pendant control, Q.20.2.4

entry of spilled materials, Q.9.1.8

external flexible cords, Clause 16

types, Q.16.1

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

F

fault conditions, 4.3, Clause 11

fault testing, 11.1

fault tests, T.4.3.16

field-wiring TERMINAL, U.21.3.9

field-wiring TERMINAL identification, U.21.3.6

filter, annex C

fire enclosure, 20.2

FIRE ENCLOSURE, defined, 2.8.10

FIRE ENCLOSURE, defined flammability category, 20.2.1

FIRE ENCLOSURE, defined ventilation openings, 20.2.2

fire hazard

 defined, 14.4.3

 projection lamps, T.4.3.6

fixing of actuating elements, 12.2

flame test, 5 inch, 14.4.3

fragmentation test, 19.5.1

fuse-link, 11.2.1

 heating test, 11.2.1

 marking, 14.5.2.2, 14.5.4

fuse-links and fuse holders, 14.5.2

fusing resistors, 14.5.4

G

general requirements, Clause 3

general test conditions, Clause 4

glass, 19.5

glass impact test, 19.5

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

graphical symbol marking, 5.1

graphical symbol, explanation, 5.3

grounding leads, color code, U.21.3.11

H

handle strength test, 12.1.6

HAZARDOUS LIVE TERMINAL test, 9.1.1

HAZARDOUS LIVE, defined, 2.6.10

hazardous radiations, Clause 6

health care facility apparatus, Q.2.2.14

HEALTH CARE FACILITY APPARATUS, defined, Q.2.2.14

heat resistance of insulating material, 7.2

heating, 11.2

 requirements, 11.2

 test, normal operating, 4.2.4, 7.1

heating under normal operating conditions, Clause 7

high impedance voltmeter, Q.9.1.1.1

HIGH PRESSURE LAMP MARKING, T.2.7.16, T.5.4.4, T.20.2.1

high-voltage, 14.4

 arcing test, 14.4.1

 circulating-air oven, 14.4.4

 component flame test, 14.4.3

 components and assemblies, 14.4

 conditioning, 14.4.4

 flame test, 14.4.3

 isolating components, 14.4.4

 withstand test, 14.4

hospital grade, Q.15.1.1

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

hot surface, marking, T.5.4.5

humidity treatment, 10.2

hyphen, 5.1

I

identification and supply ratings, 5.1

identified grounded circuit conductor, 15.1.1

IMAGERY, defined, 2.2.8

immersion test, Q.10.2.2

impact test, 12.1.3, Q.12.1.3

inductors and windings, 14.3

injury hazard, projection lamps, T.4.3.6

injury to persons tests, V.12.9

inrush current test, 14.6.6

installation and operation instructions, Q.5.4.6

INSTANT-START LAMP CIRCUIT, T.2.8.14

INSTRUCTED PERSON, defined, 2.8.6

instructions, 5.4

insulation

 between HAZARDOUS LIVE parts and ACCESSIBLE parts, 14.3.5

 CLEARANCES AND CREEPAGE DISTANCES, Clause 13

 dielectric strength test, 10.3.2

 double and reinforced, 8.8

 internal wiring, 20.1.2

 jointed, 13.6

 lead, color code, U.21.3.11

 protective earth conductors, 15.2

 requirements, Clause 10

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

- resistance and dielectric strength, 10.3
- resistance test, 10.3
- screws, 17.1
- thickness, 8.8
- winding separations, 4.2, 14.3
- wire, 8.9
- insulators, 7.2
 - rating, 7.2
 - reinforced, 8.6, 8.8
 - temperature rise shock hazard test, 11.2.3
 - thermoplastic, 7.2
- interlocks, T.5.4.8
- internal connections pluggable, 17.9
- internal wiring, 20.1.2
- intrinsically protected picture tubes, including those having integral protective screens, 18.2
- IN-WALL MOUNTED APPARATUS, S.2.2.13
 - marking, S.5.4.4, S.5.4.4.1
- ionizing radiation, 6.1
 - compliance test, 6.1
- ISOLATING TRANSFORMER, defined, 2.7.1
- J**
- jointed insulation, 13.6
- L**
- label, adhesive, test, Clause 5
- LAMP COMPARTMENT, T.2.8.15, T.20.2.1
- lamp rupture test, T.18.1
- lamp servicing, T.5.4.9

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

lamp ultraviolet radiation, T.5.4.6

lamps fault tests, T.4.3.16

lamps tests, T.4.3.6

laser radiation, test, 6.2

LASER SYSTEM, 2.2.6, 6.2

LASER, defined, 2.2.7

latch, cover, torque test, 17.7

lithium battery marking, 5.4.1

lithium battery, 14.10.3

LOAD TRANSDUCER, defined, 2.5.4

M

MACRO-DISCONNECTION, defined, 2.7.7

mains

CLEARANCES AND CREEPAGE DISTANCE, 15.3.7

design, 15.3.3

plug shock hazard test, 9.1.6

requirements, 15.3.4

socket outlet, 4.3.9

supply cord, 16.1

supply cords non-detachable, 15.3.2

switch all-pole, Q.14.6.1.1, Q.14.6.3

switch audio and video apparatus test, 14.6.1

voltage marking, 5.1

MAINS, defined, 2.4.1

MAJOR ENCLOSURE PART, defined, 2.8.12

MANUALLY OPERATED MECHANICAL SWITCH, defined, 2.7.10

marking, Clause 5, 14.3.1

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

compliance test, Clause 5

double insulation, Q.5.4.5

inductors, 14.3.1

isolating transformer requirements, 14.3.3, 14.3.4, 14.3.4.2, 14.3.5, 14.3.5.2

pendant control, Q.5.4.8

permanence, Clause 5

position, Clause 5

protective device (non-resettable), 14.5.4

separating transformer requirements, 14.3.3, 14.3.4.3, 14.3.5.1, 14.3.5.2

socket outlets, 5.2

unearthed parts, Q.5.4.7

pendant control, Q.5.4.8

TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK VOLTAGE, annex B

markings and instructions, Clause 5

measurement of temperature rises, 11.2.1

mechanical parts, 20.1

mechanical strength, Clause 12

picture tubes and protection against the effects of implosion, Clause 18

picture tubes, 18.2.3

MEDIUM PRESSURE LAMP, T.2.7.17

mid-band frequency, annex C

miscellaneous, 2.8

mold stress relief test, 12.1.5

motors, 4.3.6, 14.9, 14.9.1

compliance test, 14.9.1

continuous run test, 4.3.7

stall test, 4.3.6

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

mounting means test, V.12.9.6

N

NOISE SIGNAL, defined, 2.5.2

NON-CLIPPED OUTPUT POWER, defined, 2.3.4

non-intrinsically protected picture tubes, 18.3

normal operating conditions, 4.1.3, 4.2

unfavorable combinations, 4.2.1 – 4.2.4

normal temperature test, Q.7.1.1, T.7.1

normative references, 1.2

O

octave-band filter, annex C

openings of the enclosure, 9.1.3

OPERATING VOLTAGES, annex B

defined, 2.3.2

U, 10.3.2

optocouplers, 14.11

OUTDOOR and WET LOCATIONS

requirements, annex A

touch current, A.9.1.1.1

OUTDOOR LOCATION, A.2.8.14

enclosure, A.20.2.1

outdoor use marking, 5.4.1

output measuring equipment, 4.1.6

overtemperature-protective devices, T.14.5.1.2

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

P

parts

acting as a support or a mechanical barrier, 7.1.3, 11.2.4

not subject to a limit under 7.1.1 to 7.1.4 inclusive, 11.2.1 to 11.2.5 inclusive, 7.1.5, 11.2.6

parts touched by patient, Q.8.18

parts, other than windings, providing electrical insulation, 7.1.2, 11.2.3

patient-touched parts compliance test, Q.8.18

peak inrush current, 14.6.6, W.21.1.1

pendant control, Q.5.4.8

enclosure, Q.20.2.4

installation instructions, Q.5.4.8

marking, Q.5.4.8

strain relief, Q.16.5

PERMANENTLY CONNECTED APPARATUS

defined, 2.4.2

earth connections, U.21.5

petroleum spirit, Clause 5

physical securement, 12.6.1

picture tube implosion protection, 18.1

picture tubes

intrinsically protected, 18.1

non-intrinsically protected, 18.1

tests, 18.2, 18.3

pigtail lead, U.21.1.5

pink noise, 4.1.6

PINK NOISE, defined, 2.5.1

plugs and sockets, 15.1

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

polarity, N.1.1

polarization verification, X.21.4

polarized plug, 15.1.1

PORTABLE APPARATUS, defined, 2.2.10

POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE

defined, 2.8.11

flammability category, 20.2.1

PREHEAT LAMP CIRCUIT, T.2.8.16

pre-set controls, 9.1.5

PRINTED BOARD

defined, 2.7.12

flammability category, 20.1.3

PRINTED BOARDS, 20.1.3

printed board temperature rise, 11.2.3

printed wiring boards (PWB), 8.23, 20.1.3

production-line dielectric voltage-withstand test, X.21.1

protection against electric shock, insulations, 2.6

protective devices, 14.5

protective devices not mentioned in 14.5.1, 14.5.2, or 14.5.3, 14.5.4

protective earthing connection, N.2.2

protective earthing connection of screens and metal barriers, N.1.3

PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL, defined, 2.4.6

protective earthing, 15.2

compliance test, 15.2

PROTECTIVE SCREENING, defined, 2.6.7, 2.6.8

provisions for protective earthing, 15.2

PTC THERMISTOR, defined, 2.7.8

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

PTC THERMISTORS, 14.5.3

push back relief test, 16.5

PWB temperature test under fault , 11.2.3

R

r.m.s. values, 4.1.7

rack mounting test, 19.6

RAPID-START LAMP CIRCUIT, T.2.8.17

RATED CURRENT CONSUMPTION, defined, 2.3.6

rated load impedance, 4.2.8

RATED LOAD IMPEDANCE, defined, 2.3.5

rated supply voltage, 1.1.2, 4.2.1

RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE

marking, 5.1

defined, 2.3.1

ratings and electrical values, 2.3

receptacle

marking, Q.5.2

overload, 4.3.9

overload test, PWB foil, 4.3.9

rating marking, 5.2

references, 1.2, annex Y

REINFORCED INSULATION, 8.8

REINFORCED INSULATION, defined, 2.6.6

relay

coil, 14.3.2

continuous energize, 4.3.7

endurance test, 14.6.6.2

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

tv rated, 14.6.6

remote control compliance test, 12.3

REMOTE CONTROL

defined, 2.2.9

devices held in hand, 12.3

hand-held devices, 12.3

remote control mechanical strength test, 12.3

removal of protective covers, 9.2

resistance limits, N.1.3, N.2.2

resistance to external forces, 9.1.7

resistance to fire, Clause 20

resistive shunt, W.21.1.1

resistor

compliance test, 14.1

fusing, 14.5.4

short circuit requirements, 4.3.4

resistors, 14.1

damp heat test, 14.1

fusing, 14.5.4

internal end-lead termination, 14.1

rigid test finger, 9.1.7

RIPPLE FREE, defined, 2.3.3

ROUTINE TEST, defined, 2.8.2

S

safety graphical symbols, 5.3

safety instructions, 5.4, 5.4.1

SAFETY INTERLOCK, 6.2.1

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

defined, 2.7.9

SAFETY INTERLOCKS, 14.7

safety relevant markings

- inside the apparatus, N.1.6
- outside the apparatus, N.2.3

satellite antenna positioners, 4.2.9.2

scope, 1.1 – 1.1.5

screw torque test, 17.1

screw type pressure-wire connector, marking, U.21.3.10

screw

- back cover, 17.3
- captive, 17.3
- wire binding, U.21.3.10

screws

- fixing, 12.2
- insulating material, 17.1
- with non-metallic flexible threads fixing intentions, 17.3

screw-type

- pressure-wire connector, marking, U.21.5.1
- wire connector, U.21.3.10

semiconductor short circuit test, 4.3.3

SEPARATING TRANSFORMER, defined, 2.7.2

separation between windings, 14.3.4

separation of circuits, U.21.2

shafts of operating knobs, handles, levers and the like, 9.1.2

sheet metal member safety requirement, U.21.1.2

shock hazard

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

constructional requirements, Clause 8, annex B

defined, 9.1.1

mains plug test, 9.1.6

normal operating conditions, annex B

short circuit, 4.3.4, 4.3.5

short circuit across clearances, 4.3.1

signaling and nurse-call feature, Q.1.1.1

signals, sources, loads, 2.5

SKILLED PERSON, defined, 2.8.5

socket outlet loading, 4.3.9

sockets, 15.1.1

solder, 11.2

solidus, 5.1

spacings at field-wiring TERMINALS, U.21.4

special supply apparatus, 4.2.10

SPECIAL SUPPLY APPARATUS, defined, 2.2.5

stability and mechanical hazards, Clause 19

stand

- floor mounting, V.12.9.3
- handle strength test, V.12.9.5
- impact test, V.12.9.4
- injury to persons test, V.12.9
- loading, V.12.9.3
- mechanical stability test, V.19.1, V.19.1.1, V.19.2, V.19.3
- overbalance, V.19
- safety marking, V.5.1, V.5.4
- temperature stability, V.12.9.1

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

standards reference, 1.2, annex Y

STAND-BY, defined, 2.8.8

stands, safety requirements, annex V

STATIONARY APPARATUS, defined, 2.2.10.1

steady state, 7.1

SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION, defined, 2.6.5

supply and external connections, 2.4

supply

apparatus, 4.2.7

connections, U.21.1

source characteristics, 4.1.5

wire temperature ratings, U.21.6

SUPPLY APPARATUS FOR GENERAL USE, defined, 2.2.4

surge test, 10.1

switch

double pole, 14.6.7

marking, 14.6.3

tv rated, 14.6.6.2

switch mode power supply (smpls), 14.3.2

switches, 14.6, 14.6.1

symbol, graphical, explanation, 5.3

T

TELECOMMUNICATION network requirements, annex B

TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK

apparatus connection, annex B

defined, 2.4.7

marking, annex B

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

outside cable, A.20.2.1

ringing voltage, annex B

TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK VOLTAGE, annex B

separation, annex B

(TNV), annex B

(TNV) CIRCUIT, annex B

telescoping or rod antenna, 12.6

temperature rise, 7.1

temperature stability test, 12.1.5, R.12.1.5.1

temperature test

enclosure for, 4.1.4

PWB under fault, 11.2.3

transformer under fault, 11.2.5

under fault, 7.1, 11.2

TERMINAL

defined, 2.4.5

electric shock hazard test, 9.1.4, 11.1

insulation, 15.3.9

marking, 5.2

single-phase supply, 4.2.3

terminal box safety requirement, U.21.1.3

terminal compartment safety requirement, U.21.1.7

terminal screw

compliance test, 17.1

for external flexible cords, 15.3

specifications, 17.1

TERMINALS, 5.2, 9.1.4, Clause 15

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

TERMINALS for external flexible cords and for permanent connection to the MAINS supply, 15.3

test

conditions, 4.1.4

current, N.1.3, N.2.2

hook, 9.1.7

order, 4.1.2

pin, 9.1.3

probe, 9.1.5

voltage peak value, N.2.1

weight, V.12.9.3

testing on the outside, 9.1

tests

at the end of the production process, N.2

during the production process, N.1

thermal cutoff release, 14.5.1

THERMAL CUT-OUT, 14.5.1

defined, 2.7.4

THERMAL LINK, defined, 2.7.5

THERMAL RELEASE, defined, 2.7.3

THERMAL RELEASES, 14.5.1

tip stability

horizontal force test, 19

test, 19.1

vertical force test, 19.2

TNV CIRCUITS, test voltage, annex B

TOUCH CURRENT measuring network, annex D

touch current test, Q.9.1.1.1

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

TOUCH CURRENT, defined, 2.6.9

transformers, 14.3.2

transient overvoltage, 1.1.4

TRANSPORTABLE APPARATUS, defined, 2.2.11

TRIP-FREE, defined, 2.7.6

TYPE TEST, defined, 2.8.1

types of apparatus, 2.2

U

ultraviolet radiation lamp, marking, T.5.4.6

ultraviolet radiation test, T.6.3

ultraviolet radiation under servicing conditions, marking, T.5.4.7

UNDERCABINET APPARATUS, R.2.2.14

 marking, R.5.4.3

 RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE, R.10.2.2

 temperature stability test, R.12.1.5.1

 tests, R.4.1.4

 touch current test, R.10.2.2

undercabinet

 apparatus location, R.4.1.4

 elevated ambient test, R.11.1.1, R.4.1.4

 flexible cord routing, R.16.8

 increased moisture, R.10.2.1

 increased moisture test, R.4.1.4

 mounting security test, R.4.1.4

 mounting stability, R.12.9

 temperature test, R.4.1.4

unearthed (isolated) parts marking, Q.5.4.7

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

USER, defined, 2.8.7

V

variable resistance load for the voltage output check described in X.21.2, X.21.8

vibration test, 12.1.2

video apparatus for health care facilities

- all-poles switch, Q.14.6.1.1

- CLASS I, Q.15.2.1

- CLASS II plug, Q.15.1.1

- cleaning and disinfecting, Q.5.4.4

- cleaning test, Q.10.2.1

- dielectric voltage withstand test, Q.10.3

- double insulation marking, Q.5.4.5

- drop test, Q.12.1.4

- immersion test, Q.10.2.2

- impact test, Q.12.1.3

- installation instructions, Q.5.4.6

- operation instructions, Q.5.4.6

- spilled materials entrance, Q.9.1.8

- transformer, Q.14.3.4

- unearthed parts marking, Q.5.4.7

video apparatus safety requirement (health care use), annex Q

voltage setting devices and the like, 14.8

W

water spray test, A.11.1.1

WET LOCATION, A.2.8.15

wheel securement, V.12.9.2

wheels and casters, Q.17.8

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

winding aging temperature, 14.4.4

winding temperature rise limit, 11.2.5

windings, 7.1.4, 11.2.5

windings of CLASS I construction, 14.3.4.2, 14.3.5.2

windings of CLASS II construction, 14.3.4.1, 14.3.5.1

windings of separating construction, 14.3.4.3

wire binding screw, U.21.3.10

wire insulation, 8.9, 20.1.2

wiring TERMINALS, U.21.3

withdrawal of MAINS plug, 9.1.6

WOOD-BASED MATERIAL, defined, 2.8.9

X

x-radiation measurement verification, X.21.7

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***

**Superseded requirements for
the Standard for
Audio, Video and Similar Electronic Apparatus – Safety Requirements
UL 60065, Seventh Edition**

The requirements shown are the current requirements that have been superseded by requirements in revisions issued for this Standard. To retain the current requirements, do not discard the following requirements until the future effective dates are reached.

14.10.1 (14.10.1) Batteries shall be so mounted that there is no risk of the accumulation of flammable gases and that the leakage of electrolyte cannot impair any insulation.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

14.10.6 DU (14.10.6) External battery

An apparatus intended for use with an external battery shall be provided with an overcurrent protective device in the battery-supply circuit.

Table 21 DU – Flammability categories for components and parts

<u>Application</u>	<u>Flammability category ^a</u>
<u>Internal barriers for apparatus with voltages exceeding 4 kV peak</u>	<u>V-2, V-1, V-0, VTM-2, VTM-1, VTM-0</u>
<u>Polymeric or fiber parts in contact with a component located in a potential ignition source circuit</u>	<u>V-2, V-1, V-0, HF-2, HF-1, HF-0, VTM-2, VTM-1, VTM-0</u>
<u>Sound-deadening material in contact with speaker connections capable of producing greater than 240 W audio power</u>	<u>V-2, V-1, V-0, HF-2, HF-1, HF-0</u>
<u>Grille covering material, cloth, and reticulated foam</u>	<u>Tablet ^b</u>
<u>Polymeric and fiber materials used in applications other than those specified above</u>	<u>HB, V-2, V-1, V-0, HBF, HF-2, HF-1, HF-0, VTM-2, VTM-1, VTM-0</u>
<u>^a Does not apply to the internal insulating systems of components, except for inductors and windings. See .</u>	
<u>^b The part is to be supported so that its thinnest outside solid surface is in a horizontal position. A tablet comprised of hexamethylene-tetramine (C₆H₁₂N₄) having a burning time of at least 100 s, is to be placed on the thinnest section of the part. The tablet is then to be ignited with a match applied to the top of the tablet. The tablet is to be permitted to burn until it is completely consumed or until it burns through the part and falls to the surface below. The test is concluded when the part ceases to flame or glow. When all burning and glowing ceases, the part shall not have burned further than 5 cm from the center of the tablet.</u>	

**UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL**

No Text on This Page

***UL COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL –
NOT AUTHORIZED FOR FURTHER REPRODUCTION OR
DISTRIBUTION WITHOUT PERMISSION FROM UL***